

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 00368673 0









Morte Arthure.

280

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 53 MOHRENSTRASSE.  
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.  
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.



442

# Monte Arthure,

OR

## The Death of Arthur.

EDITED FROM

ROBERT THORNTON'S MS.

IN THE LIBRARY OF LINCOLN CATHEDRAL,

BY

EDMUND BROCK.

[A New Edition, 1871.]

38023  
6/10/96.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,  
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.

MDCCCLXV.

P.R.

1119

A2

no. 3

# CONTENTS.

---

	PAGE
PREFACE ... ..	vii
ON THE METRE OF THE POEM ... ..	ix
NOTES ... ..	xiv
MORTE ARTHURE ... ..	1
INDEX OF NAMES ... ..	129
GLOSSARIAL INDEX ... ..	136



## P R E F A C E.

---

THE present version of the *Morte Arthure* or *Death of Arthur* is mainly an account of the great war with Lucius Iberius, Emperor of Rome, and its sequel, the war with the traitor Modred, who, being left in charge of the kingdom, during Arthur's absence usurped the throne and married Queen Guinevere. In his combat with Modred, whom he slays, Arthur receives his death-wound, and shortly after dies. Among the incidents in the story not forming part of the wars, we may note the great feast at Carlisle, the king's dream of the dragon and bear, the slaughter of the great giant on Michael's Mount, and Arthur's dream of Fortune's wheel and the Nine Worthies. The love of Lancelot for the queen finds no place in this work.

*Morte Arthure* was probably written in the latter part of the fourteenth century, or early in the fifteenth. Of the author nothing whatever is known, not even his name. This is the more to be regretted as he must certainly be considered a poet of no mean order; the freshness of his descriptions of scenery<sup>1</sup>, the touching pathos of some of his passages<sup>2</sup>, and the rapid flow and thundering force of his diction in others<sup>3</sup>, mark him out as one of the greatest writers of his time. What, beside him, are Occleve, Lydgate, Awdelay, Hylton, Hawes, Lonelich, and like poetasters? What even Chestre and Skelton?

<sup>1</sup> See ll. 920—932, 2506—2512.

<sup>2</sup> See ll. 3790—3808, 3874—3894, 3949—3971.

<sup>3</sup> See ll. 2204—2217, 2541—2573, 2989—3000.

The poem is printed from the Thornton MS., in the library of Lincoln Cathedral; no other copy is known. The MS. is a collection of poems and treatises on various subjects, some in English, some in Latin; a list of the contents may be found in Sir Frederic Madden's *Syr Gawayne* (Bannatyne Club, 1839), or in the *Thornton Romances*, ed. Halliwell (Camden Soc. 1844). The MS. is named after Robert Thornton, who penned a great part of it. At the end of *Morte Arthure* we find, "*R. Thornton dictus qui scripsit sit benedictus. Amen.*" Thornton was "a native of Oswaldkirk in Yorkshire, and Archdeacon of Bedford, in the Diocese of Lincoln, about the middle of the fifteenth century. The date of Archdeacon Thornton and his connection with Lincoln Cathedral can be ascertained pretty accurately, as among the archives of the Cathedral there is preserved an instrument or deed of considerable importance, attested by him as Archdeacon, which bears date 1439."<sup>1</sup>

*Morte Arthure* was first printed in 1847, by J. O. Halliwell, but can hardly be said to have been published, since the impression was limited to 75 copies. In 1865 it was edited by the Rev. George G. Perry, for the Early English Text Society. The present edition appears instead of a reprint of Mr Perry's, but differs from it in several respects; the text has been carefully read throughout with the MS. at Lincoln, and corrections made, where needful; the side-notes are greatly altered, often replaced with new; a new Glossary has been written, and an index of names and some notes added.

I am greatly indebted to the Rev. W. W. Skeat for much valuable help, especially with the Glossary, also for kindly revising his paper on the metre of the poem.

E. B.

<sup>1</sup> From Mr Perry's Preface, p. vii.



## ON THE METRE OF THE POEM.

---

THE metre in which the "Morte Arthure" is written may best be understood by comparing it with "Piers Plowman," the accentuation and *swing* of the verse being much better marked in the last-mentioned poem. The principles which govern this peculiar metre may thus be more readily discerned, and, when once understood, may easily be applied to the present poem.

For a similar reason, it will be the simplest method to consider, first of all, a few lines (of "Piers Plowman") where the metre is most strongly marked, and, afterwards, some where it is, apparently, less regular.

It should first, however, be observed that each complete line in an alliterative poem consists generally of two *sections*, which were separated in old manuscripts by a dot, called the *metrical point* or *pause*, and which may conveniently be denoted by an inverted full stop, thus :—

"Schelde vs ffro schamesdede · and synfulle werkes ;"

or else by printing the lines thus :—

"Schelde vs ffro schamesdede,  
And synfulle werkes."

In reading aloud a pause may conveniently be made between the sections.

The two sections form, however, but one complete line ; and, as the metrical point is more necessary when the poem is to be sung or recited than when it is merely to be read, it has not been thought necessary to insert it in this edition, since the reader, when he has

once caught the rhythm of the verse, may always be tolerably sure as to where it must occur.

To begin, then ; consider the line—

“Ac Lucifer lowest · lith of hem allē.”

*Piers Plowman* (ed Skeat), B. i. 124.

If we use an asterisk to denote a strongly-accented<sup>1</sup> (or *loud*) syllable, the figure 1 to denote a *single* unaccented syllable, the figure 2 to mean *two* unaccented syllables immediately succeeding each other, and so on ; we may represent the above line by the scheme,

1 \* 2 \* 1 : \* 2 \* 1 ;

and this may be taken as a convenient type of alliterative lines, from which the scansion of very many others may be readily deduced. Some, however, as will be shewn presently, must be referred to a type somewhat different.

Now, we here observe (1) that each section contains two strong accents ; (2) that, of the strongly-accented syllables, three begin with a common letter, which has been called the *rime-letter* ; and (3) of these three, two occur in the first section, and one in the second. Such is the usual and normal arrangement. The *rime-letters* may be either consonants or vowels, and may consist of *single* letters, or of such combinations as *sc*, *bl*, *tr*, etc. If vowels, it is sufficient that they *are* so ; they need not be the *same* vowels, and, in practice, are generally *different*.

Again, the last strongly-accented syllable in the line does *not* begin with the rime-letter. This also is the usual and more correct arrangement.

Having once this typical form to refer to, it is easy to enumerate most of the changes which may arise. Let us now take the line,

“Here<sup>2</sup> messe and here matynes · and many of here oures.”

*Piers Plowman*, B. Prol. 97.

<sup>1</sup> I use the term *strongly-accented* advisedly, all accents not being equal. Thus, in the line—

“On the oát-grass and the swórd-grass, and the búlrush in the póol,” the syllables marked are *strongly-accented*.

<sup>2</sup> “*Hire* [or *here* = *their*] is a monosyllable.”—*Guest on English Rhythms* ; ed. 1838, p. 34.

We have here the arrangement

1 \* 2 \* 1 : 1 \* 3 \* 1

which shews (1) that an unaccented syllable may be introduced at the beginning of the second section ; and (2) that the number of intermediate unaccented syllables may be readily increased to *three*.

Now herein lies the peculiar freedom and elasticity of alliterative verse ; we shall soon find by observation that, under certain circumstances, as many as *four* short unaccented syllables (even if they contain among them one that *is* accented *slightly*) may be inserted at pleasure between the emphatic syllables without destroying the rhythm ; for it is one addressed to the *ear* only, and not to the *eye*. The chief point which the poet has to take care of is that when he introduces a larger number of unaccented syllables, they should be capable of rapid enunciation, lest the verse seem clogged and unmusical. An example may be seen in the lines,

“Fáyteden for here fóde · fouȝten attē álē ;”

*Piers Plowman* B. Prol. 42.

which may be denoted by

\* 4 \* 1 : \* 3 \* 1

It would take up too much space to explain here the true method of scanning the lines by division into feet ; it may suffice to say that the *general effect* of the metre is *dactylic*, supposing the term *dactyl* to be capable of application to an *English* foot, which, to speak strictly, it is not. Indeed, the nomenclature of English prosody is in sore need of alteration. Neither is there space to explain, and to account for, the curious variations which may further be made in the alliterative metre. The view here given is only an approximate one, which will be found useful in practice. A longer passage may exemplify it better—

“I lóked on my léft half · as þe ládý me taúghte,  
And was wár of a wómman · wóρθeli yclóthed,  
Púrfiled with pélure · þe fínest vpon érthe,  
Y-croúneþe with a córone · þe kýng hath non bétter ;  
Fétislich hir fýngres · were frétted with gólde wyre.”

*Piers Plowman*, B. ii. 7.

*Analysis :*

1	*	3	*	1	:	2	*	2	*	1
2	*	2	*	1	:		*	3	*	1
	*	3	*	1	:	1	*	3	*	1
1	*	3	*	1	:	1	*	2	*	1
	*	3	*	1	:	1	*	2	*	1

One variation, however, found oftenest in the first section, is too important to be passed over. It is that we sometimes find in a section a *third* strongly-accented syllable, thus giving to the line a rather unwieldy length ; as in,

“The móste mýschief on mólde · is mountyng wel fáste.”  
*Piers Plowman*, B. Prol. 67.

This third accent is often very awkwardly placed, as in the first line of “Morte Arthure,”

“Now grétt glórious Gódde · thurgh gráce of hym seluene.”

Other noticeable deviations from the strict type may be briefly indicated.

(1) The syllable beginning with the rime-letter is sometimes unemphatic ; as in “Morte Arthure,” l. 59,

“In Glamórgane with glée · thare gládechipe was éuere.”

(2) Sometimes there are but *two* rime-letters, as in l. 95,

“At prýme of the dáye · in páyne of 3our lýrys.”

(3) Sometimes there is *no* alliteration, as in l. 70. (4) Sometimes there are *four* rime-letters, as l. 32, where all belong to accented syllables,

“Scáthylle Scóttlande by skýlle · he skýftys as hym lýkys ;”

or as in l. 35, where one belongs to an unaccented syllable,

“Hólaund and Hénawde · they héldé of hyme bóthen.”

It will now be sufficient, perhaps, to indicate what is probably the correct accentuation of the first fourteen lines, as this will enable the reader to perceive in them a certain vigorous *swing* (well suited for the ballad-reciter), which will suggest the scansion of most other lines, though there is always somewhat of difficulty in it, from the fact that we have now-a-days changed the accentuation of many words, and cannot be quite certain about the final *e*'s.

"Now grétt glórious Gódde · thurgh gráce of hym séluene,  
 And the précyous práyere · of hys prýs módyr  
 Schélde vs ffro schámesdede · and sýnfulle wérkes, 4  
 And gýffe vs gráce to gýe · and góuerne vs hére  
 In this wréchyde wérldē · thorowe vért[u]ous lýwyngē  
 That we may káyre til hys cóurte · the kýngdome of hévyne,  
 Whene oure sáules schalle pártē · and súndyre ffra the bódý  
 Ewyre to bélde and to býde · in blýsse wyth hyme séluene ; 8  
 And wýsse me to wérpe owte · some wórde at this týme,  
 That nothyre vóyde be ne váyne · bot wýrchip tille hyme sélvyne ;  
 Plésande and prófitabille · to the póple that theme hères.  
 3e that líste has to lýth · or lúffes for to hére 12  
 Off élders of álde tyme · and of theire áwke dédys,  
 Hów they were léle in theire láwe · and lóuede Gód Almýghty," etc.

The accentuation of the last two lines is a little doubtful. There may have been an accent on the second *of* in l. 13, owing to its position and the fact of its beginning with a rime-letter ; while in l. 14 we have the rather unusual number of six accents, unless *how* was slurred over.

After all, the best way of perceiving the rhythm is to read over some fifty lines several times till they seem quite familiar, and then to read them over once more *out loud*, with strong emphasis on the verbs, substantives, and adjectives, and with a natural and free pronunciation.

One peculiarity in this poem should be particularly noticed, viz. that the same rime-letter is often continued throughout several successive lines. There is a remarkable instance of this in the passage beginning with l. 1844, where we have in succession 4 lines founded on *s*, 2 on hard *c*, 2 on *f*, 6 on *s*, 6 on *b*, 4 on hard *c*, 2 on vowels, 2 on *s*, 2 on *ch*, 2 on *f*, and 2 on *r*. Other striking examples are 7 lines on vowels, 571—577, 8 on *s*, 3310—3317, 9 on *j* or soft *g*, 2889—2897, 10 on *f*, 3300—3309, and 11 on *f*, 2755—2765. Similar instances are rare in *Piers the Plowman*, though we find 5 successive lines founded upon *p* in the B-text, Pass. xiv. 190—194.

For further remarks, see the Essay on Alliterative Verse in the third volume of the *Percy Folio MS.*, ed. Hales and Furnivall, and the introduction to *Piers the Plowman*, Text A. pp. xxii and xxx.

## N O T E S.

---

Lines 212—215. Precious stones were supposed to keep off poison. Compare the following:—"þe earn deð in his neste enne deorewurðe zimston þet hette achate. Vor non attri þinc ne mei þene ston neihen, ne þeo hwule þet he is in his neste hermen his briddes. þes deorewurðe ston, þet is Iesu Crist, ase ston treowe and ful of alle mihten, ouer alle zimstones. He is þe achate þet atter of sunne ne neihede neuere. Do hine iðine neste, þet is, iðine heorte. þenc hwuch pinen he þolede on his flesche wiðuten, and hu swete he was iheorted, and hu softe wiðinnen; and so þu schalt driue ut euerich atter of þine heorte, and bitternesse of þine bodie. . . . þes ston, ase ich er seide, avleieð attri þinges. Habbe þu þesne ston wiðine þine heorte, þet is Godes nest, ne þer-tu nout dreden þe attrie neddre of helle. þine briddes, þet beoð þine gode werkes, beoð al sker of his atter."—*The Ancren Riwele*, ed. Morton, p. 134—136. Compare also *Piers the Plowman* (ed. Skeat, Clarendon Press Series), note to Pass. ii. l. 14.

450. *Watlyng-strette*, "the Roman road leading from Dover to Cardigan. Leland describes it thus: *Secunda via principalis dicitur Watelinstreate, tendens ab euro-austro in Zephyrum Septentrionalem. Incipit enim a Dovaria, tendens per medium Cantiae, juxta London, per S. Albanum, Dunstapulum, Stratfordiam, Towcestriam, Litleburne, per montem Gilberti juxta Salopiam, deinde per Stratton, et per medium Walliae, usque Cardigan. Itin. vol. vi. p. 120, edit. Oxon. 1744.*"—Bosworth's *Anglo-Saxon Dictionary*, under *Wætlinga stræt*.

793. *Brathelle* is purposely omitted from the Glossary, because it ought to have been printed *brayelle*, as it stands in the MS. It seems to mean the fur of the bear's belly. Compare the following:—

"Brayeul: m. The parts, or feathers, about the Haukes fundament, called by our Faulconers the brayle in a short-wingd, and, the pannell in a long-wingd, Hauke."—*Cotgrave*.

"The brayle, or pannell of a Hawke. *Le brayer d'un oiseau, le brayeul.*"—*Sherwood*.

"Braiell, *brayette*: Partie de la culotte qui tenoit lieu de celle qu'on appelle à présent le pont."—*Roquefort*.

"Braioel, *braoiel* : Le haut de la culotte."—*Roquefort*.

966. *Thow saynned the vnsekyrly*. Thou blessedst thyself vnsafely, i. e. you did not cross yourself in a proper manner, so as to ensure your safety ; otherwise you would not be here, in this perilous place. If the sign of the cross was not made in the right way, it was considered of no avail.

1195. Read *with* [*the*] *conquerour*.

1270. *Or many lyghte salle lawe*. Or many shall light low, i. e. fall.

1286. "Horns of elephants full loudly blown." Our fathers were remarkably ignorant of the nature and habits of foreign animals.

1293. *Ewyne in the myddes*. Right in the middle.

1315. *That no mysse serues*. Who deserve no ill.

1364. Fretted in *salle*. Read *sable*.

1414. *Bretons*. This is probably the verb, *brittenes*, not the substantive, *Britons*.

1425. *Battailes*. Restore the reading of the MS. ; it is right.

1474. *He ryghttez theire brenez*. More likely *he rittez*.

1485. The relative pronoun is omitted after *Boyce*. This is a frequent ellipsis. See line 1558, where *that* is omitted after *Henry*.

1548. *Or sone delyuerde*, i. e. soon to be delivered.

1572. The alliteration would be improved by reading *bot* [*sir*] *Ewayne*.

1588. *With mangere to lengene*. Qu. with *maugree*, ill-will.

1653. *Lythe*. The alliteration and sense require *kythe*.

1698. *Borghte*. A strange mistake for *Brute*, i. e. Brutus, the supposed founder of Britain.

1717. "Whether we retire or appear (show ourselves), arrange as you please."

1736. *Wellyde alle qwyke*. Boiled alive.

1797. *Wyke his ine wayfare*. Qu. *ine* his wayfare.

1840. *Lang ere*. The MS. reads *langere*, which may be right.

1842. *At* = that = what.

1899. *On lyfe* should be *of lyfe*.

1911. The line is incomplete ; add [many].

2070. *Reverssede it redelye*. Turned it, the eagle, over quickly.

2108. *Heyghe* = *heythe*, heath. Compare *trewghe* for *trewthe*.

2128. *Handsomere*, not more handsome, but more handy or convenient.

2189. *3ife the werlde happyne*. Qu. *welthe*.

2197. This line recurs at 4155.

2245. "*Arthure !*" *askryes*. Shouts "*Arthur* ;" but perhaps it should be simply *Arthure askryes*, Arthur shouts. Compare l. 1412.

2250. *Beblede at* should certainly be *Beblede al*.

2280. *Lyghte strandez*. This should perhaps be *lythe strandez*, as at 1517.

2295. *Heghte* = heath. See note on 2108.

2398. *I kepe noghte to layne.* I care not to concea..

2408. *Turkayne* (so in MS.) is certainly a mistake for *Tuskayne*, Tuscany. Correct the sidenote accordingly.

2506. Insert [*of*] after *myste*, or else read *mysty*.

2519. *With birene ony borne.* This is corrupt; no doubt the right reading is, *With-outene eny berne*.

2565. *Alet.* "Towards the close of the thirteenth century and not long after the commencement of the reign of Edward I., a new mode of protecting the neck was invented, which consisted of small plates of steel placed on the shoulders, sometimes called, from their resemblance to little standards, *Gonfanons*. They are likewise mentioned by the name of *ailettes*, or little wings, in that curious document of the sixth year of this monarch, relative to a tournament in Windsor Park; given in the XVIIIth volume of the *Archæologia*; and in the *Statuta armorum in Tornamentis*, a few years after, by that of shoulder plates. . . . . They continued in fashion till the middle of the reign of Edward III. . . . . Their shape was . . . varied; they were square, round, pentagonal, and shieldlike; sometimes plain, but generally ornamented with the family arms, or the cross of St. George."—Meyrick, in the *Archæologia*, vol. xix, pp. 137, 138.

2577. It is well known that in early times barbers practised blood-letting; they would therefore, of course, know how to stanch blood.

2578. *Blyne schalle he neuer.* He shall never cease [to bleed].

2586. *Surgyone in Salarne.* Compare l. 4311 and *William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat, ll. 964 and 1033.

2616. *Cyrus witrye* should be *cyrqwitrye*. The letter *q* is raised a little and looks very much like the usual contraction for *us*. *Cyrqwitrye* = *surquidry*, arrogance, pride.

2675. This line is misplaced; it ought to follow line 2677.

2771. *Breste* seems to be a mistake for *brethe*, breath.

2934. *ffy a debles* seems to be meant for French. *Fie*, (go) to the devil.

3061. *Idene the.* The alliteration, at first sight, would seem to be on the *d* of this *idene* and of *dout*; but there is no reason why it may not be on the *i* of *idene* and the *e* of *elles*. *Idene*, if not a miswriting, may be the same as *ipenli*, frequently, in the following lines:—

"*þai þat war fild wit enst and hete  
þat ipenli þair hertes ete,  
þar wormes sal þam underwrote  
In bale wituten hope and bote,  
And for-þi þai her war wont to li  
In þair stincand licheri,  
Ne wald noght here bot þair delices  
þat drogh þam until oþer vices  
þai sal haf ipen stinc iwiss  
þat þai sal never mar mis.*"—*Cursor Mundi*, as quoted

by Dr Morris in the preface to *Hampole's Pricke of Conscience*, pp. x, xi.



*The* may be the verb *thee*, to thrive ; it was most likely mistaken for the article by the scribe, who wrote it with *y*. The meaning of the line would be, "He shall frequently thrive full well, fear nought else." This accords with the statement, l. 3056, that the king spoke to the duchess "myldly with fulle meke wordes."

3257. The word *With* clearly belongs to the line before. *With bruchez*, &c.

3282. *The two eyne*. This is clearly an error for "the tone eye" = (the) one eye. "One eye of the man was brighter than silver, the other was yellower than the yolk of an egg."

3439. *Nynne of the nobileste namede in'erthe*. These were the Nine Worthies. The list agrees with that given in *Reliquiæ Antiquæ*, vol. i. p. 287.

Saraceni.

Judæi.

Ector, Alex., Julius ; David, Josue, Machabæus ;

Cristiani.

Artur cum Carolo, Galfridum linquere nolo :

Isti sunt ter tres trini fidei meliores.

See Shakespere, *Love's Labour Lost*, Act 5, sc. 2.

3937. *Guchede*. I can make nothing of this word, the plain reading of the MS., unless it = gutted = *goutté*, dropped or spotted. At line 3759, we read that this king of Gothland "bare of gowles fulle gaye with gowces of syluere." *Gowces* I suppose to be miswritten for *gowtes*, drops, spots.

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

<i>adj.</i> = adjective.	O.Fr. = Old French.
<i>adv.</i> = adverb.	O.N. = Old Norse.
A.S. = Anglo-Saxon.	p. = page.
<i>b.</i> = back.	<i>pl.</i> = plural.
col. = column.	2 <i>pl.</i> = second person plural.
<i>comp.</i> = comparative form.	pp. = pages.
Comp. = compare.	<i>p.p.</i> = past or passive participle.
<i>conj.</i> = conjunction.	<i>prep.</i> = preposition.
ed. = edited by.	<i>pres.</i> = present.
E. E. T. S. = Early English Text Society.	<i>pret.</i> = preterite.
Fr. = French.	<i>Prompt. Parv.</i> = Promptorium Parvulorum.
<i>fut.</i> = future.	<i>pron.</i> = pronoun.
<i>gen.</i> = genitive case.	Qu. = Query.
Germ. = German.	<i>ref.</i> = reflexive.
Her. = Heraldry.	<i>s.</i> = substantive.
<i>imp.</i> = imperative.	1 <i>s.</i> = first person singular.
<i>impers. v.</i> = impersonal verb.	2 <i>s.</i> = second person singular.
<i>ind.</i> = indicative.	3 <i>s.</i> = third person singular
<i>inf.</i> = infinitive.	Sc. = Scotch.
<i>int.</i> = interjection.	<i>sg.</i> = singular.
<i>i. p.</i> = imperfect participle.	Span. = Spanish.
l. = line.	<i>subj.</i> = subjunctive.
Lat. = Latin.	<i>superl.</i> = superlative form.
ll. = lines.	tom. = tomo.
M.Goth. = Mæso-Gothic.	<i>v.</i> = verb.
O.E. = Old English.	vol. = volume.

The following works are indicated in the Index by their authors' names :—

- Bosworth's Anglo-Saxon and English Dictionary.  
 Brockett's Glossary of North Country Words.  
 Burguy's Glossary to his *Grammaire de la Langue d'Oïl*.  
 Ducange's Glossarium Mediæ et Infimæ Latinitatis, ed. 1840.  
 Halliwell's Dictionary of Archaic and Provincial Words.  
 Jamieson's Etymological Dictionary of the Scottish Language.  
 Roquefort's Glossaire de la Langue Romane.  
 Stratmann's Dictionary of the Old English Language.  
 Verelius's Index linguæ veteris Scytho-Scandicæ sive Gothicæ, 1691.

## CORRECTIONS.

---

- Page 2, sidenotes, for *Tours* read *Touraine*.  
 „ 2 „ „ *Aniana* read *Aniane*.  
 „ 2 „ „ *Naverne* read *Navarre*.  
 „ 3 „ for the 2nd *Cuerleon* read *Carlisle*.  
 „ 7 „ „ *hams* read *shoulders*.  
 „ 7 „ „ *bustards* read *bitterns*.  
 „ 28, line 913, for *grayuez* read *graynez*.  
 „ 33, sidenotes, for *smoke* read *foam*.  
 „ 78, strike out the footnote.  
 „ 134, col. 1, line 23, for *Apulia* read *Poland*.



## Morte Arthure.

Here begynnes **Morte Arthure.** In nomine Patris et [leaf 53]

**Filij et Spiritus Sancti. Amen pur charite. Amen.**

**N**ow grett glorious Godde, thurgh grace of hym seluene,

And the precyous prayere of hys prys modyr,

The poet prays  
for grace,

Schelde vs ffro schamesdede and synfulle werkes,

And gyffe vs grace to gye, and gouerne vs here, 4

In this wrechyde werlde thorowe vertous lywynge,

That we may kayre til hys courte, the kyngdome of hevyne,

Whene oure saules schalle parte and sundyre ffra the body,

Ewyre to belde and to byde in blysse wyth hyme seluene; 8

And wysse me to werpe owte some worde at this tyme,

That nothyre voyde be ne vayne, bot wyrchip tille hyme

and for power to  
write something  
profitable.

selvyne,

Plesande and profitabille to the popule that theme heres.

3e that liste has to lyth, or luffes for to here, 12

Ye that list to  
hear of elders  
of old time,

Off elders of alde tyme and of theire awke dedys,

How they were lele in theire lawe, and louede God Al-

myghty,

Herkynes me heyndly and holdys 3ow styлле,

hearken to a tale  
of the Round  
Table.

And I salle telle 3ow a tale, that trewe es and nobylle, 16

Off the ryealle renkys of the Rownde Table,

That chefe ware of cheualrye and cheftans nobylle,

These knights  
were noble, wise,  
and brave,

Bathe ware in thire werkes and wyse mene of armes,

Doughty in theire doynys, and dredde ay schame, 20

kind, and courteous, and worshipful.

They slew Lucius, lord of Rome, and won his kingdom.

Hear now the story.

When King Arthur had won many kingdoms and countries,

Argyle, Orkney, and the isles,

Ireland and Scotland, Wales, Flanders, and France,

had made tributary Holland and Hainault, Burgundy and Brabant, Brittany, Guienne, Gothland and Greece, he occupied Bayonne and Bordeaux, Tours and Toulouse.

He was prince of Poitiers and [leaf 53, back] Provence, of Valence and Vienne, of Erugia and Aniana, of Naverne and Norway and Normandy.

Of Germany, of Austria, and many other lands.

He conquered all Denmark with his sword. Then he dubbed his knights and gave them lands.

Created kings anointed.

Then rested the hero, and held the Round Table.

After solacing himself in Bri-

Kynde mene and courtays, and couthe of courte thewes ;  
How they whanne wyth were wynchippis many,

Sloughe Lucyus *the* lythyre, that lorde was of Rome,  
And conqueryd that kyngryke thorowe craftys of armes ;  
Herkenes now hedyrwarde, and herys this storrye. 25

**Q**wenethat the kyng Arthur by conqueste had wonnyne  
Castelles and kyngdoms, and contreez many,  
And he had couered the coroune of the kyth ryche, 28  
Of alle that Vter in erthe aughte in his tyme,

Orgayle and Orkenay, and alle this owte-iles,  
Irelande vtirly, as Occyane rynnys ;

Scathylle Scottlande by skylle he skyftys as hym lykys,  
And Wales of were he wane at hys wille, 33  
Bathe fflaundrez and ffraunce fre til hym seluyne ;

Holaund and Henawde they helde of hyme bothen,  
Burgoyne and Brabane, and Bretayne the lesse, 36  
Gyane and Gothelande, *and* Grece the ryche ;

Bayone and Burdeux he beldytt fulle faire,  
Turoyne and Tholus *with* toures fulle hye ;  
Off Peyters and of Prouynce he was prynce holdyne, 40  
Of Valence *and* Vyenne, off value so noble,

Of Eruge *and* Anyone, thos erledoms ryche ;  
By conqueste fulle cruelle *they* knewe hym fore lorde,  
Of Nauerne and Norway, *and* Normaundye eke, 44

Of Almayne, of Estriche, and *other* ynowe ;  
Danmarke he dryssede alle by drede of hym seluyne,  
ffra Swynne vnto Swetherwyke, *with* his swerde<sup>1</sup> kene !  
Qwenne he thes dedes had done, he doubbyd hys knyghtez,  
Dyuysyde dowcherys and delte in dyuerse remmes ; 49

Mad of his cosyns kyngys ennoyntede,  
In kyth there they couaitte crounes to bere.  
Whene he thys<sup>2</sup> rewmes hade redyne *and* rewlyde the  
popule, 52

Then rystede that ryalle and helde *the* Rounde Tabylle ;  
Suggeourns *that* sesone to solace hyme seluene,  
In Bretayne *the* braddere, as hym beste lykys ;

<sup>1</sup> MS. swrede.

<sup>2</sup> Or thes.

Sythyne wente in-to Wales *with* his wyes alle, 56 tain, he goes into  
 Sweys in-to Swaldye *with* his snelle houndes, Wales,  
 For to hunt at *the* hartes in thas hye lanndes, to hunt the hart  
 In Glamorgane *with* glee, thare gladchipe was euere. with his swift  
 And thare a citee he sette, be assentte of his lordys, 60 hounds,  
 That Caerlyone was callid, *with* curius walles, and in Glamorgan  
 On the riche reuare *that* rynnys so faire, founds Caerleon  
 There he myghte semble his sorte to see whenne hym upon Usk.

lykyde ;

Thane aftyre at Carlelele a Cristynmese he haldes, 64 At Caerleon he  
 This ilke kyde conquerour, *and* helde hym for lorde, holds high festi-  
 Wyth dukez *and* dusperes of dyuers rewmes, val at Christmas-  
 Erles *and* ercheuesqes, and *other* ynowe, tide with his lords  
 Byschopes *and* bachelers, *and* banerettes nobille, 68 and bishops,  
 That bowes to his banere, buske whene hym lykys :  
 Bot on the Cristynmesdaye, whene they were allesemblyde,  
 That comlyche conquerour commaundeze hym seluyne  
 That ylke a lorde sulde lenge, and no lefe take, 72 and bids none  
 To the tende day fully ware takyne to *the* ende. depart from the  
 Thus one ryalle araye he helde his Rounde Table, feast till ten days  
 With semblant *and* solace *and* selcouthe metes ; are expired.  
 Whas neuer syche<sup>1</sup> noblay, in no manys tyme, 76  
 Mad in mydwynter in *tha* weste marchys ! Never was so  
 noble a feast  
 known.

**B**ot on the newzere daye, at *the* none euyne,  
 As the bolde at the borde was of brede seruyde,  
 So come in sodanly a senatour of Rome, 80  
 Wyth sextene knyghtes in a soyte, sewande hym one.  
 He saluzed the souerayne *and* the sale aftyr,  
 Ilke a kynge aftyre kynge, and mad his enclines ;  
 Gaynour in hir degré he grette as hym lykyde, 84  
 And syne agayne to *the* gome he gaffe vp his nedys :  
 " Sir Lucius Iberius, the Emperour of Rome,  
 Saluz the as sugett, vndyre his sele ryche ;  
 It es credens, *sir* kynge, *with* cruelle wordez, 88  
 Trow it for no trufles, his targe es to schewe !  
 Now in this newzers daye *with* notaries sygne,

<sup>1</sup> *swyche* struck out, and *syche* written instead.

But on New  
 Year's day, as  
 the knights were  
 feasting,  
 there came in  
 suddenly a Sena-  
 tor of Rome,  
 [leaf 54]  
 attended by six-  
 teen knights.  
 He salutes King  
 Arthur and his  
 knights,  
 and Guinevere  
 the Queen.

Then, in the  
 name of Sir Lu-  
 cius Iberius, the  
 Emperor of  
 Rome,

he summons Arthur to appear at Rome on Lammas day,

I make the somouns in sale to sue for *thi* landys,  
That on Lammesse daye thare be no lette ffoundene, 92  
That thou bee redy at Rome with alle *thi* Rounde Table,  
Appere in his presens with thy price knyghtez,  
At pryme of the daye, in payne of *3our* lyvys,  
In the kydde Capytoile before the kyng selvyne, 96  
Whene he and his senatours bez sette as them lykes,

to answer why he occupies his lands instead of paying homage to him,

To ansuere anely why thou occupyes the lannde, z,  
That awe homage of alde tille hym *and* his eldyrs ;  
Why thou has redyne and raymede, *and* raunsound the  
people, 100  
And kyllyde doune his cosyns, kyngys ennoynttyde ;  
Thare schalle thou gyffe rekkynyng for alle thy Round  
Table,

and how he dare rebel against him.

Why thou arte rebelle to Rome, and rentez theme  
wytholdez !  
3iff thou theis somouns wythsyte, he sendes thie thies  
wordes, 104

But if Arthur will not come, the Emperor will invade his land and take him captive,

He salle the seke ouer the see wyth sextene kynges,  
Bryne Bretayne the brade, and bryttyne thy knyghtys,  
And brynge the bouxsomly as a beste with brethe whare  
hym lykes,  
That thou ne schalle rowte ne ryste vndyr the heuene  
ryche, 108

and destroy him wherever he may fly.

Thofe thou for reddour of Rome ryne to the erthe !  
fior if thou flee in-to Fraunce or ffireselannd owther,  
Thou salle be fechede with force, and ouersetete fore cuer !  
Thy fadyr mad fewtee, we fynde in oure rollez, 112  
In the regestre of Rome, who so ryghte lukez :  
With-owttyne more trouflynge the trebute we aske,  
That Iulius Cesar wane wyth his ientille knyghttes !"

The Register of Rome declares that Arthur's father paid tribute, which was won by Julius Caesar and his gentle knights.

Then did King Arthur look with ferocious glance on the Senator.

**T**He kyng blyschit one the beryne with his brodeeghne,  
That fulle brymly for breth brynte as the gledys ;  
Keste colours as kyng with crouelle lates, 118

[leaf 54, back]

So terrible was his face that the Romans quailed before him.

Luked as a lyone, and on his lyppe bytes !  
The Romaynes for radnesse ruschte to the erthe,  
flore ferdnesse of hys face, as they fey were ;



Cowhide as kenetez be-fore *the* kynge seluyne,  
 Be-cause of his contenance confusede theme semede !  
 Thene couerd vp a knyghte, *and* criede ful lowde,<sup>1</sup> 124

“Kynge corounede of kynd, curtays and noble,  
 Misdoo no messangere for menske of *thi* seluyne,  
 Sen we are in thy mañrede, and mercy *the* besekes ;  
 We lenge with *sir* Lucius, that lorde es of Rome, 128  
 That es *the* meruelyousteste mane *that* on molde lengez ;  
 It es lefulle tille vs his likynge tille wyrche ;<sup>2</sup>  
 We come at his commaundment ; haue vs excusede.”

Then one of them  
 humbly entreats  
 me:cy.

Then carpys *the* conquerour crewelle wordez,— 132

“Haa ! craunaunde knyghte ! a cowarde *the* semez !  
 Thare [is] some segge in this sale, and he ware sare  
 greuede,

Upon which Ar-  
 thur upbraids  
 him as a coward.

Thow durste noghte for<sup>3</sup> alle Lumberdye luke one hym  
 ones.”

“Sir,” sais *the* senatour, “so Crist mott me helpe, 136  
*The* voute of thi vesage has woundyde vs alle !  
 Thow arte *the* lordlyeste lede *that* euer I one lukyde ;  
 By lukynge, with-owttyne lesse, a lyone the semys !”

But the Senator  
 excuses him on  
 the ground that  
 Arthur's visage is  
 very terrible.

“Thow has me somonde,” *quod the* kynge, “*and* said  
 what *the* lykes ;<sup>4</sup> 140

flore sake of thy soueraynge I suffre *the the* more ;  
 Sen I corouñde in kyth wyth crysume enoyntede,  
 Was neuer creature to me *that* carpede so large !

Bot I salle tak concelle at kynges enoyntede, 144  
 Off dukes *and* duspers and doctours noble,  
 Offe peres of *the* parlement, prelates *and* other,  
 Off *the* richeste renkys of *the* Rounde Table ;

The King tells  
 him that he will  
 take counsel of  
 his dukes, doc-  
 tors, peers, and  
 knights,

Thus schalle I take avisemente of valiant<sup>t</sup> beryns, 148  
 Wyrke aftyre the wytte of my wyes knyghttes :

To warpe wordez in waste no wyrchipe it were,  
 Ne wilfully in *this* wrethe to wreken *my* seluene. 151

ffor-*thi* salle thow lenge here, *and* lugge wyth *thise* lordes, while the Ro-  
 mans stay a week

<sup>1</sup> *hyghe* struck out, and *lowde* written instead.

<sup>2</sup> *schewe* struck out, and *wyrche* written instead.

<sup>3</sup> MS. *fulle*.

<sup>4</sup> *Likyde* struck out, and *lykes* written instead.

to refresh themselves.

Sir Cayous is bid to entertain the lords,

[leaf 55]

and their horses.

He was not to spare, but to feast them liberally.

Then were they quickly harboured within the high walls.

In chambers with chimneys they changed their weeds.

The Senator sat at the King's table, and was served like himself,

for the Romans are of the most royal blood on earth.

Boars'-heads there were served upon silver by numerous gaily-dressed attendants.

Venison, fatted and wild, with choice birds,

peacocks and plovers upon golden plates,

great swans in silver chargers,

This seuenyghte in solace, to suggourne *your* horses,  
To see whatte lyfe *that* wee leede in thees lawe lanndes."  
ffor by *the* realtee of Rome, *that* recheste was euere,  
He commande *sir* Cayous, "take kepe to thoos lordez, 156  
To styghtylle *tha* steryne mene as theire statte askys,  
That they bee herberde in haste in thoos heghe chambres,  
Sythine sittandly in sale *seruyde* ther-aftyr ;  
That they fynd na fawte of fude to thiere horsez, 160  
Nowthire weyne, ne waxe, ne welthe in *this* erthe ;  
Spare for no spycerye, bot spende what *the* lykys,  
That there be largesce one lofte, and no lake foundene ;  
If *thou* my wyrchipe wayte, wy, be my trouthe, 164  
*Thou* salle haue gersoms fulle grett, *that* gayne salle *the*  
euere !"

Now er they herberde in hey, *and* in oste holdene,  
Hastly wyth hendemene *with*-in thees heghe wallez ;  
In chambyrs with chympnes *they* chaungen *etheire* wedez,  
And sythyne the chauncelere *theme* fecchede *with* che-  
ualrye<sup>1</sup> noble. 169

Sone *the* senatour was sett, as hyme wele semyde,  
At *the* kynges ownne borde ; twa knyghtes hym *seruede*,  
Singulere sothely, as Arthure hym seluyne, 172  
Richely on *the* ryghte hannde at the Rounde Table ;  
Be resoune *that the* Romaynes whare so ryche holdene,  
As of *the* realeste blode *that* reynede in erthe. 175  
There come inat *the* fyrstecourse, be-for *the* kyngeseluene,  
Bareheuedys *that* ware bryghte, burnyste *with* syluer,  
Alle *with* taghte mene and towne in togers fulle ryche,  
Of saunke realle in suyte, sixty at ones ;  
fflesch fluriste of fermysone *with* frumentee noble, 180  
Ther-to wylde to wale, and wynlyche bryddes,<sup>2</sup>

Pacokes and plouers in platers of golde,  
Pygges of porke despyne, *that* pastureded neuer ;  
Sythene herons in hedoyne, hyled fulle faire ; 184  
Grett swannes fulle swythe in silueryne chargeours,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *cheualrye*.

<sup>2</sup> *bredes* struck out, and *bryddes* written instead.

- Tartes of Turkey, taste whame *theme* lykys ; tarts of turkey,  
 Gumbaldes graythely, fulle gracious to taste ;  
 Seyne bowes of wylde bores with the braune lechyde, hams and brawn  
 in slices,  
 Bernakes and botures in baterde dysches, 189 geese and  
 bustards.  
 Thareby braunchers in brede, bettyr was neuer,  
 With brestez of barowes, that bryghte ware to schewe ;  
 Seyne come *ther* sewes sere, with solace *ther*-after, 192 Then came  
 'sewes sere,'  
 Ownde of azure alle ouer and ardent them semyde,  
 Of ilke a leche the lowe launschide fulle hye,  
 That alle ledes myghte lyke that lukyde *theme* apone ;  
 Thane cranes and curlues craftyly roasted, 196 then cranes and  
 curlues craftly  
 roasted,  
 Connygez in cretoyne colourede fulle faire,  
 fesauntez enflureschit in flammande siluer, pheasants upon  
 flashing silver,  
 With darielles endordide, and daynteez ynewe ; 'dariels' and  
 many other  
 dainties.  
 Thane clarett and Crette, clergyally rennene, 200 Wine caused to  
 [leaf 55, back]  
 run skilfully in  
 silver conduits.  
 With condethes fulle curious alle of clene siluyre ;  
 Osay a[n]d algarde, and *other* ynewe,  
 Rynisch wyne and Rochelle, richere was neuer ;  
 Vernage of Venyce vertuose and Crete ; 204 Rare sorts served  
 in cups of fine  
 gold.  
 In faucetez of fyne golde, fonode who so lykys ;  
 The kynggez cope-borde was closed in siluer, The King's cup-  
 board was glori-  
 ous with plate.  
 In grete goblettez ouergylte glorious of hewe ;  
 There was a cheeffe buttlere, a cheualere noble, 208  
 Sir Cayous the curtaise, that of the cowpe seruede ; The chief butler  
 was Sir Cayous,  
 Sixty cowpes of suyte fore the kyng seluyne,  
 Crafty and curious, coruene fulle faire, who served the  
 wine in goblets  
 decked with pre-  
 cious stones,  
 In euer-ilk a party pyghte with precyous stones, 212 which hinder the  
 deadly effects of  
 poison.  
 That nane enpoysone sulde goo preuely *ther*-vndyre,  
 Bot the bryght golde for brethe sulde briste al to peces,  
 Or ells the venyme sulde voyde thurghe vertue of the  
 stones ;  
 And the conquerour hymselfe, so clenly arayede, 216  
 In colours of clene golde cleede, wyth his knyghttys,  
 Drissid with his dyademe one his deesse ryche, Arthur was clad  
 in cloth of gold  
 with his crown  
 on ; the doughti-  
 est knight that  
 dwelt on earth.  
 ffore he was demyde the doughtyest that duellyde in erthe.  
 Thane the conquerour kyndly carpede to those lordes,  
 Rehetede the Romaynes with realle speche, 221 Then he spake  
 courteous words  
 to those lords.

"Sirs, be of good cheer, we give you the best our barren country affords, which indeed is but poor."

"Sirs, bez knyghtly of contenance, *and* comfurthes  
your seluynne,

We knowe noghte in *this* countré of curious metez;  
In thees barayne landez, bredes none *other*, 224  
flore-thy wythowttyne feynynge, enforce 3ow *the*<sup>1</sup> more  
To feede 3ow *with* syche feble as 3e be-fore fynde."

"Sir," says the Senator, "Rome itself can show nothing equal to this luxurious feast."

"Sir," sais *the* senatour, "so Criste motte me helpe!  
There ryngnede neuer syche realtee *with-in* Rome walles!  
There ne es prelatte, ne pape, ne prynce in *this* erthe,  
That he ne<sup>2</sup> myghte bewele payede of *thees* pryce metes!"

Then they washed and withdrew to the chamber.

A ftyre theyre welthe *they* wesche, *and* went vn-to  
chambyre,

Sir Gawain leads Guinevere.

*This* ilke kydde conquerour *with* knyghtes ynewe; 232  
Sir Gaywayne *the* worthye Dame Waynour he ledys;  
Sir Owghtretth on *the* tother syde, of Turry was lorde.

Spiced drinks were served to all.

Thane spyces vn-sparyly *they* spendyde there-aftyre,  
Maluesye *and* muskadelle, *thase* meruelyous drynkes,  
Raykede fulle rathely in rossete cowpes, 237  
Tille alle *the* riche on rawe, Romaynes *and* *other*.

Certain lords were assigned to attend upon the Senator.

Bot the soueraingne sothely, for solauce of hym seluene,  
Assingnyde to *the* senatour certayne lordes,  
To lede to his leueré, whene he leue askes, 241  
*With* myrthe *and* *with* melodye of mynstralsy noble.

Arthur goes to council in the Giant's tower,

Thane *the* conquerour to concelle cayres there-aftyre,  
Wyth lordes of his lygeaunce *that* to hym selfe langys;

with his lords, justices, judges, and gentle knights.

To *the* geauntes toure iolily he wendes, 245  
Wyth justicez *and* iüggez, and gentille knyghtes.

[leaf 56]  
First speaks Sir Cadour of Cornwall.

Sir Cadour of Cornewayle to *the* kynge carppes,  
Lughe one hyme luffly *with* lykande lates,— 248

"I thanke Gode of *that* thraa *that* vs *thus* thretys!

3ow moste be traylede, I trowe, bot 3ife 3e trett bettyre:

The letters of Sir Lucius, he says, lighten his heart.

*The* lettres of sir Lucius lyghttys myne herte!

We hafe as losels liffyde many longe daye, 252

Wyth delyttes in *this* lande *with* lordchipez many,

They had too long lived a life of inglorious peace.

And forelytenede the loos *that* we are layttede:

I was abaischite, be oure Lorde, of oure beste bernes,

<sup>1</sup> MS. *the* 3ow.

<sup>2</sup> MS. *ne* he.

- flore gret dule of deffuse of dedez of armes ! 256  
 Now wakkenyse *the* were ! wynchipide be Cryste !  
 And we salle wynne it ag[a]yne be wyghtnesse *and*  
 strenghe !”
- “ Sir Cadour,” *quod the* kynge, “ thy concelle es noble, The king praises  
 Bot *thou* arte a meruailous mane with thi mery wordez ! Sir Cadour for his  
 ffor thow countez no caas, ne castes no forthire, 261 spoken from his  
 Bot hurles furthe appone heuede, as thi herte thynkes ; heart without  
 I moste trette of a trew towchande *thise* nedes, thought or care.
- Talke of thies tythdands *that* tenes myne herte ; 264 He himself is  
*Thou* sees *that the* emperour es angerde a lyttille ; grieved at these  
 Yt semes be his sandismene *that* he es sore greuede ; tidings.
- His senatour has sommonde<sup>1</sup> me, and said what hym  
 lykyde,
- Hethely in my halle, wyth heynous wordes, 268 He has been in-  
 In speche disspszede me, *and* sparede me lyttille ; sulted in his own  
 I myght noghte speke for spytte, so my herte trymblyde ! hall by heinous  
 He askyde me tyrauntly tribute of Rome, words,  
 That tenefully tynt was in tyme of myne elders ; 272 and insolently  
 There alyenes, in absence of alle mene of armes, summoned to  
 Couerde it of commons, as cronicles telles ; pay tribute to  
 I haue title to take tribute of Rome, the Emperor of  
 Myne ancestres ware emperours, *and* aughte it *theme* Rome,  
 seluene, 276
- Belyne *and* Bremyne, *and* Bawdewyne the thyarde,  
 They occupyede *the* empyre aughte score wynttyrs,  
 Ilkane ayere aftyre *other*, as awlde mene telles ;  
 Thei couerde *the* Capitoile, and keste doune *the* walles ;  
 Hyngede of *theire* heddys-mene by huñdretes at ones ;  
 Seyne Constantyne, our kynsmane, conquerid it aftyre,  
*That* ayere was of Ynglande, and emperour of Rome,  
 He *that* conquerid *the* crosse be craftez of armes, 284  
 That Criste was on crucifiede, *that* kyng es of heuene ;  
 Thus hafe we euydens to aske *the* emperour *the* same,  
 That *thus* regnez at Rome, whate ryghte *that* he  
 claymes.”

He rejoices to  
return again to  
deeds of arms.

The king praises  
Sir Cadour for his  
bold words,

spoken from his  
heart without  
thought or care.

He himself is  
grieved at these  
tidings.

He has been in-  
sulted in his own  
hall by heinous  
words,

and insolently  
summoned to  
pay tribute to  
the Emperor of  
Rome,

of whom he ought  
rather to demand  
tribute.

His ancestors oc-  
cupied the Em-  
pire of Rome  
eight score  
winter.

His kinsman,  
Constantine,  
afterwards sub-  
dued it—  
he who gained  
by conquest the  
true Cross.

<sup>1</sup> Or somounde.

Then answered  
King Aungers  
and said that Ar-  
thur ought to be  
supreme over all  
kings.

[leaf 56, back]

The Romans had  
done many evil  
deeds in Scot-  
land,

for which he  
would have re-  
venge.

He promises to  
bring 50,000 men  
to aid Arthur.

The king of  
little Britain  
would have Ar-  
thur return a  
fierce answer.

He fears the Ro-  
mans no whit.

He promises to  
bring 30,000  
knights within a  
month.

**T**han answerde kyng Aungers to Arthure hym seluynе,  
“Thow aughte to be ouerlynge ouer alle other  
kynges, 289

flore wyseste, and worthyeste, and wyghteste of hanndes,  
The knyghtlyeste of counsaile *that* euer corone bare ;  
I dare saye fore Scottlande, *that* we theme schathe  
lympyde, 292

Whene *the* Romaynes regnede, *thay* raunsounde oure  
eldyrs,

And rade in theire ryotte, and rauyschett oure wyfes,  
With-owttyne resone or ryghte refte vs oure gudes ;  
And I salle make myne avowe deuotly to Criste, 296

And to *the* haly vernacle, vertuus and noble,  
Of this grett velany I salle be vengede ones  
On 3one venemus mene, wyth valiant knyghtes !  
I salle the forthire of defence fosterde ynewe, 300

fifty thowsande mene, wyth-in two eldes,  
Of my wage for to wende, whare so the lykes,  
To fyghte wyth thy ffaa mene, *that* vs unfaire ledes.”

**T**hane the burelyche beryne of Bretayne *the* lyttlyle  
Counsayles sir Arthure, and of hyme besekys 305  
To ansuere *the* alyenes wyth austerene wordes,

To entyce the emperour to take ouere the mounttes.  
He said, “I make myne avowe verreilly to Cryste, 308  
And to *the* haly vernacle, *that* voide schalle I neuere,

ffor radnesse of na Romaine *that* regnes in erthe ;  
Bot ay be redye in araye, and at areste ffoundene,  
No more dowtte the dynte of theire derfe wapyns, 312  
*Than the dewethat* es dannke, whene *that* it doune ffallles ;  
Ne no more schoune<sup>1</sup> fore *the* swape of theire scharpe  
suerddes,

Then fore *the* faireste flour *thatt* on the folde growes !  
I salle to batelle the brynge, of brenyede knyghtes 316  
Thyrtty thosannde be tale, thryftye in armes,  
Wyth-in a monethe daye in-to whatte marche,  
*That* thow wylle sothelye assygne, whene thy selfe lykes.”

<sup>1</sup> Or schonne.

"A ! A !" sais *the Walsche kyng*, "wirchipid be Criste!  
Now schalle we wreke fulle wele *the wrethe* of oure  
elders ! 321

Then Arthur ex-  
claims Ah ! ah !  
Now shall we  
have revenge.

In West Walys i-wysse syche wonndyrs *thay* wroghte,  
*That alle* for wandrethe may wepe, *that one that* were  
thynkes.

I salle haue the avanttwarde wytterly my seluene, 324

Tylle *that* I haue venquiste *the* Vicounte of Rome,  
*That* wroghte me at Viterbe a velanye ones,

He himself would  
fight at the head  
of his army till  
he had revenged  
himself on the  
Viscount of Rome  
for a villany he  
once wrought  
him at Viterbo.

As I paste in pylgremage by the Pounte Tremble ; 327

He was in Tuskayne *that* tyme, and tuke of oure knyghttes,

Areste theme vnryghttwyslye, and raunsounde *thame*  
aftyre ;

I salle hym surelye ensure, *that* saghetylle salle we neuer,

Are we sadye assemble by oure selfene ones,

And dele dynttys of dethe *with* oure derfe wapyns ! 332

And I salle wagge to *that* were of wyrehipfulle knyghtes,

He would take  
two thousand  
worshipful  
knights.

Of Wyghte and of Walschelande, and of *the* Weste  
Marches,

Twa thosande in tale, horsede one stedys,

[leaf 57]

Of *the* wyghteste wyes in alle 3one weste landys !" 336

Syre Ewane fytz Vryence<sup>1</sup> *thane* egerly fraynez,

Then spoke Sir  
Ewayne and said  
that they would  
all follow his  
command gladly.

Was cosyne to *the* conquerour, corageous hymselfene,

"Sir, and we wyste 3our wyll, we walde wirke *ther*-  
aftyre ; 339

3if *this* journee sulde halde, or be ajournede forthyre,

To ryde one 3one Romaines *and* ryott theire landez,

We walde schape vs therefore to schippe whene 3ow  
lykys."

"Cosyne," quod *the* conquerour, "kyndly *thou* asches ;

Then said Ar-  
thur,

3ife my concelle accorde to conquere 3one landez, 344

By *the* kalendez of Iuny we schalle encountre ones,

"We will be  
ready by the ka-  
lends of June,

Wyth fulle creuelle knyghtez, so Cryste mot me helpe !

There-to make I myne avowe devottly to Cryste,

And to *the* holy vernacle, vertuous and noble, 348

I salle at Lammesse take leue, to lenge at my large

and at Lammas  
will enjoy our-

<sup>1</sup> Read Vryence.

selves in Lorraine  
or Lombardy,

In Lorayne or Lumberdye, whethire me leue thynkys ;  
Merke vn-to Meloyne, and myne doune *the wallez*,  
Bathe of Petyrsande, *and* of Pys, and of *the Pounte*  
Tremble, 352

sojourn six  
weeks in the  
Vale of Viterbo.

In *the* Vale of Viterbe vetaile my knyghttes,  
Suggourne there sex wokes *and* solace my selfene ;  
Send *prekers* to *the* price toune, and plaunte there my  
segge,

send riders to  
Rome and lay  
there a siege,  
unless they offer  
peace."

Bot if *thay* profre me *the* pece be processe of tyme." 356

Then Sir Ewayne  
vows vengeance  
against the Em-  
peror of Rome  
for occupying Ar-  
thur's heritage,

"Certys," sais *sir* Ewayne, "and I avowe aftyre,  
And I *that* hathelle may see euer *with* myne egfin,  
*That* occupies thine heritage, *the* empyere of Rome,  
I salle auntyre me anes hys egle to touche, 360  
*That* borne es in his banere of brighte golde ryche,  
And raas it frome his riche mene, and ryfe it in sondyre,  
Bot he be redily reschowede *with* riotous knyghtez ;  
I salle enforssse 3owe in *the* felde *with* fresche mene of  
armes, 364

and promises  
50,000 men on  
fair steeds.

ffifty thosande folke apone faire stedys,  
On thi ffoo mene to ffoonde, there the faire thynkes,  
In ffraunce or in ffriselande, feghte whene *the* lykes !"

Then Lancelot  
declares his satis-  
faction at the  
war.

"By oure Lorde," *quod* *sir* Launcelott, "now lyghttys  
myne herte ! 368

I loue Gode of *this* loue<sup>1</sup> *this* lordes has avowede !  
Nowemay lesse mene haue leue to say whatt theme lykes,  
And hafe no lettyng be lawe, bot lystynnys *thise* wordez ;  
I salle be at journee *with* gentille knyghtes, 372

He is ready to  
joust with the  
Emperor him-  
self,

On a jamby stede fulle jolyly graythide,  
Or any journee begane to juste *with* hym selfene,  
Emange alle his geauntez genyuers and *other*,  
Stryke hym styfflye fro his stede, *with* strenghe of myne  
handys, 376

ffor alle *tha* steryne in stour, *that* in his stale houys !  
Be my retenu arayede, I rekke bott a lyttille  
To make rowtte in-to Rome, *with* ryotous knyghtes !  
With-in a seuenyghte daye, *with* sex score helmes, 380

[leaf 57, back]  
and to carry the  
war into Rome.

<sup>1</sup> Or perhaps, lone.



I salle be seene on the see, saile whene *the* lykes."

**T**hane laughes *sir* Lottez, and alle one lowde meles,  
 "Me likez *that sir* Lucius langes aftyre sorowe ;  
 Now he wylnez *the* were, hys wanedrethe begynnys, 384  
 It es owre weredes to wreke the wrethe of oure elders !  
 I make myne a-vowe to Gode, and to *the* holy vernacle,  
 And I may se *the* Romaynes, *that* are so ryche haldene,  
 Arayed in *theire* riotes on a rounde felde, 388

Sir Lottez laughs  
for joy,

and hopes to see  
the rich Romans  
in their pomp,

I salle at *the* reuerence of *the* Rounde Table  
 Ryde throughte alle *the* rowtte, rerewarde *and other*,  
 Redy wayes to make, and renkkes fulle rowme,  
 Rynmande on rede blode, as my stede ruschez ! 392  
 He *that* folowes my fare, and fyrste commes aftyre,  
 Salle fynde in my fare-waye manye ffay leuyde !"  
 Thane *the* conquerour kyndly comforthes *these* knyghtes,  
 Alowes *thaim*e gretly *theire* lordly a-vowes,— 396  
 "Alweldande Gode wyrehye 3ow alle !

that he may cut  
his way through  
them and shed  
their blood,

Then Arthur  
praises his  
knights for up-  
holding his  
honour.

And latte me neuere wantte 3ow, whylls I in werlde  
 regne ;

My menske and my manhede 3e mayntene in erthe,  
 Myne honour alle vtterly in *other* kyngys landes ; 400  
 My wele and my wyrchipe, of alle *this* werlde ryche,  
 3e haue knyghtly conqueryde, *that* to my coroune langes ;  
 Hym thare be ferde for no faces, *that* swylke a folke ledes,  
 Bot euer ffresche for to fyghte, in felde whene hym lykes.  
 I acounte no kyng *that* vndyr Criste lyffes, 405  
 Whilles I see 3owe alle sounde, I sette be no more."

While they re-  
main true to him  
he fears no king  
on earth.

Then the Council  
breaks up.

**Q**whene they tristily had tetryd, *thay* trumppede vp  
 aftyre,

Descendyd doune *with* a daunce of dukes and erles ; 408  
 Thane *they* semblede to sale, and sowpped als swythe,  
 Alle *this* semly sorte, wyth semblante fulle noble.

Music and  
dancing succeed,

and they are all  
feasted in the  
hall.

Thene the roy realle rehetes *thes* knyghttys,  
 Wyth reuerence and ryotte of alle his Rounde Table, 412

Tille seuen dayes was gone : *the* senatour askes  
 Answer to *the* emperour *with* austeryne wordez.

After seven days  
the Senator de-  
mands his answer  
for the Emperor.

Aftyre *the* Epiphanye, whene *the* purpos was takyne

Of peris of *the parlement*, *prelates* and *other*. 416

The kyng in his concelle, curtaise and noblee,

Vtters *the alienes*, and ansuers hyme seluene :—

Then Arthur bids  
him greet Lucius  
and tell him that  
he shall quickly  
see him in his  
country ;

“ Gret wele *Lucius*, thi lorde, and layne noghte *thise*  
wordes ;

Ife *thow* be lygmane<sup>1</sup> lele, late hyme wiet sone 420

I salle at Lammese take leue, and loge at my large

In delitte in his lanndez, wyth lordes ynewe,

Regne in my realtee, and ryste whene me lykes,

that he will hold  
his Round Table  
by the river  
Rhone,

By *the* reyuere of Reone halde my Rounde Table, 424

ffanngge the fermes in faithe<sup>2</sup> of alle *tha* faire rewmes,

ffor alle *the* manace of hys myghte, *and* mawgree his  
eghne !

[leaf 58] And merke sythene ouer the mounttez in-to his mayne  
londez, 427

and mine down  
the walls of  
Milan,

To Meloyne the meruaylous, and myne doune the walles ;

In Lorryne ne in Lumberdye lefe schalle I nowthire

Nokyne lede appone liffe, *that thare* his lawes 3emes ;

ravage Tuscany  
with his knights,

And turne in-to Tuschayne, whene me tyme thynkys,

Ryde alle *thas* rowme landes wyth ryotous knyghttes ;

Byde hy[*m*] make reschewes fore menske of hyme seluene,

And mette me fore his manhede in *thase* mayne landes !

he will be found  
in France on the  
first of February,

I salle be foundyne in Fraunce, fraiste whene hym lykes,

The fyrste daye of Feuerzere, in *thas* faire marches ! 436

Are I be fechyde wyth force, or forfeite my landes,

*The flour* of his faire folke fulle fay salle be leuyde !

I salle hym sekyrly ensure, vndyre my seele ryche,

and before seven  
winters are gone  
besiege Rome,

To seege *the* cetee of Rome wyth-in seuene wyntyre, 440

And that so sekerly ensege apone sere halves,

and many a sen-  
ator shall rue his  
wrath.

That many a senatour salle syghe for sake of me one !

My sommons er certifiende and *thow* arte fulle seruyde

The messenger  
may depart as  
soon as he  
pleases.

Of cuñdit and credense, kayre where the lykes : 444

I salle thi journaye engyste, enjoyne theme my seluene,

ffro this place to *the* porte, there *thou* salle passe ouer ;

He must travel  
to Sandwich in  
seven days,

Seuene dayes to Sandewyche, I sette at the large,

Sexty myle on a daye, *the somme* es bott lyttille ! 448

<sup>1</sup> Or leygmane.

<sup>2</sup> Or fatthe.

Thowe moste spede at the spurs, and spare noghte *thi* fole,  
 Thow weynde by Watlyng-strette, and by nowaye elles : going by Wat-  
ling-street,  
 Thare thow nyghttes one nyghte, nede moste *thou* lenge, stopping at night  
wherever he may  
 Be it foreste or felde, found *thou* no forthire ; 452 chance to be,  
tying his horse  
to a bush by the  
bridle.  
 Bynde thy blonke by a buske with thy brydille euene,  
 Lugge *thi* selfe vndyre lynde, as *the* leefe thynkes,  
 There awes none alyenes to ayere appone nyghttys,  
 With syche a rebawdous rowtte to ryot thy seluene. 456  
 Thy lycence es lemete in *presence* of lordys,  
 Be now lathe or lette, ryghte as *the* thynkes,  
 For bothe *thi* lyffe and *thi* lyme lygges *ther*-appone,  
*Thofe* *sir* Lucius had laide *the* lordchipe of Rome ; 460  
 ffor be *thow* foundene a fute with-owte *the* flode merkes,  
 Aftyr *the* aughtende day, whene vndroune es rungene,  
*Thou* salle be heuede in hye, and with horsse drawene,  
 And seyne heyly be hangede, houndes to gnawene ! 464 If after undern  
of the eighth day  
he is found in the  
country, he shall  
be hanged up for  
dogs to gnaw.  
 The rente ne rede golde, *that* vn-to Rome langes,  
 Salle noghte redily, renke, raunsone thyne one !"  
 "Sir," sais *the* senatour, "so Crist mot me helpe !  
 Might I with wirchipe wyne awaye ones, 468 Then the Senator  
declares that if  
he could only get  
well away once,  
he would never  
again go on such  
an errand.  
 I sulde neuer fore emperour, *that* on erthe lenges,  
 Efte vnto Arthure ayere one syche nedys ;  
 Bot I am sengilly here, with sex sum of knyghtes ;  
 I be-seke ȝow, *sir*, that we may sounde passe : 472 He prays that his  
retinue may be  
protected on their  
way.  
 If any vnlawefulle lede lette vs by *the* waye,  
 With-in thy lycence, lorde, thy loosse es enpeyrede."  
 "Care noghte," *quod* the kyng, "thy coundyte es [leaf 58, back]  
 knawene  
 ffro Carlelele to *the* coste, there thy cogge lengges ; 476 Then Arthur tells  
him that if his  
coffers were  
crammed full of  
silver he would  
be safe with his  
passport.  
*Thoghe* thy cofers ware fulle, cramede with syluer,  
 Thow myghte be sekyre of my sele sixty myle forthire."  
 They enclined to *the* kyng, and counge *thay* askede,  
 Cayers owtt of Carelele, catchez one theire horsez ; 480  
 Sir Cadore *the* curtayes kende theme the wayes,  
 To Catrike theme cunvayede, and to Crist theme  
 bekennyde.  
 So they spede at *the* spoures, *they* sprangene theire horses, Then the Romans  
depart with all  
speed,

- and never rest till  
they reach Sand-  
wich by the time  
prescribed.
- Never were they  
so glad of any  
thing as of the  
sound of the sea  
and Sandwich  
bells.
- They cross the  
sea to Flanders,
- and over Mount  
St Gothard into  
Lombardy,
- through Tuscany  
to Rome.
- Then the Senator  
seeks an audience  
with the Emperor  
Lucius,
- who asks eagerly  
for Arthur's an-  
swer, and on what  
ground he resists  
the power of  
Rome.
- His ambassador  
ought to have  
seized his sceptre  
and sat above  
him.  
Arthur, he says,  
ought himself to  
have served the  
Senator.
- Hyres *theme* hakenayes hastyly *there*-aftyre ; 484  
So fore reddour *they* redene, and risted *theme* neuer,  
Bot 3if they luggede vndire lynd, whills *theme* lyghte  
failede ;  
Bot euere *the* senatour for-sothe soghte at *the* gayneste.  
By *the* seuende day was gone *the* cetee *thai* rechide ; 488  
Of alle *the* glee vndire Gode so glade ware *they* neuere,  
As of *the* sounde of *the* see and Sandwyche belles !  
Wythowttynne more stownntynghe they schippide *theire*  
horsez,  
Wery to *the* wane see *they* went alle att ones ; 492  
With *the* mene of *the* walle they weyde vp *theire* ankysr,  
And fleede at *the* fore flude, in Flaundrez *they* rowede,  
And thorughe Flaundres *they* founde, as *theme* faire  
thoghte,<sup>1</sup>  
Tille Akyne in Almayne, in Arthur landes ; 496  
Gosse by *the* Mount Goddarde fulle greuous wayes,  
And so in-to Lumberddye, lykande to schewe ;  
They turne thurghe Tuskayne, with towres fulle heghe,  
In pris apparelles *theme* in precious wedez ; 500  
The Sonondaye in suters *thay* suggourne *theire* horsez,  
And sekas *the* Seyntez of Rome, be assente of knyghtes ;  
Sythyne prekes to *the* pales with portes so ryche,  
Thare sir Lucius lenges with lordes enowe ; 504  
Lowttes to hym luffy, and lettres hym bedes  
Of credence enclosyde, with knyghtlyche wordez.  
Thene *the* emperour was egree, and enkerly fraynes,  
The answer of Arthure he askes hyme sone, 508  
How he arayes *the* rewme, and rewlys *the* people ;  
3if he be rebelle to Rome, whate ryghte *that* he claymes :  
“Thow sulde his ceptre haue sesede, and syttyne aboune,  
ffore reuerence and realtee of Rome *the* noble : 512  
By sertes *thow* was my sandes, and senatour of Rome,  
He sulde fore solempnitee hafe *seruede the* hym seluene.”

<sup>1</sup> *lykyde* struck out, and *thoghte* written instead by the same hand.

"That wille he neuer for no waye<sup>1</sup> of alle *this* werlde  
ryche, 515

Then answers the  
Senator, that Ar-  
thur is too great  
to do that for  
any one.

Bot who may wynne hym of werre, by wyghtnesse of  
handes ;

Many fey schalle be fyrste appone *the* felde leuyde,

Are he appere in this place, profre whene *the* likes.

I saye the, *sir*, Arthure es thyne enmye fore euer, 519

He claims no less  
than the Empire  
of Rome.

And ettelles to bee ouerlynge of *the* empyre of Rome,

That alle his ancestries aughte, bot Vtere hym selfe.

[leaf 59]

Thy nedes this newe 3ere, I notifiede my selfene,

Be-fore *that* noble of name *and* neynesome of kynges;<sup>2</sup>

He tells the Em-  
peror how he  
had delivered his  
message,  
and that he was  
never so fright-  
ened since he was  
born.

In the moste reale place of *the* Rounde Table, 524

I somounde hyme solempnylye, one-seeande his knyghtez;

Sene I was formyde in faythe so ferde was I neuere,

In alle *the* placez ther I passede of prynce in erthe !

I wolde fore-sake alle my suyte of segnourry of Rome,

Or I este to *that* soueraygne whare sente onesuyche nedes !

He may be chosyne cheftayne, cheefe of alle *other*, 530

Arthur is worthy  
to be king of men  
for his wisdom  
and valour.

Bathe be chauncez of armes and cheuallrye noble,

ffor whyeseste, *and* worthyeste, and wyghteste of hanndez :

Of alle the wyes *thate* I watte in this werlde ryche,

The knyghtlyeste creatoure in Cristyndome haldene,

He is the most  
famous knight in  
Christendom.

Of kyng or of conquerour, crownde in erthe,

Of countenaunce, of corage, of crewelle lates, 536

The comlyeste of knyghtehode *that* vndyre Cryste lyffes !

He maye be spokene in dyspens, despysere of syluere,

To him gold and  
silver are as no-  
thing,

That no more of golde gyffes *thane* of grette stones,

No more of wyne *thane* of watyre, *that* of *the* welle rymys,

and wine no more  
than water.

Ne of welthe of *this* werlde bot wyrchipe allone. 541

Syche contaunce was neuer knowene in no kythe ryche,

As was *with that* conquerour in his courte haldene ;

I countede at this Crystynmesse, of kynges enoyntede,

Ten kings anoint-  
ed feast at his  
table.

Hole tene at his table, *that* tyme *with* hyme selfene ;

He wylle werraye i-wysse, be ware 3if *the* lykes, 546

Wage many wyghtemene, and wache thy marches,

<sup>1</sup> ? wye.

<sup>2</sup> Substituted for *knyghtez*.

Good need is  
there of zealous  
preparation,

and that soldiers  
should be dis-  
patched to the  
mountains forth-  
with.

"By Easter,"  
says the Emperour,  
"I undertake to  
be in Germany  
with an army,

and will send  
many giants and  
mighty men to  
meet him in the  
mountains.

A watch-tower  
shall be reared on  
Mount St. Goth-  
ard, with a beacon  
ready to light,

and another on  
Mount St.  
[leaf 59, back]  
Bernard.

He shall not be  
suffered to enter  
Pavia."

Then Lucius  
sends letters into  
the East,

to demand aid of  
all the kings and  
lords.  
Quickly they all  
come, for fear of  
his might.

That they be redye in araye, and at areste foundyne ;  
ffor 3ife he reche vn-to Rome, he raunsouns it for euere !

Irede *thow* dresce the *ther*-fore, and drawe no lyttel langere,  
Be sekyre of *thi* sowdeours, and sende to *the* mowntes ;  
Be *the* quartere of *this* 3ere, and hym *quarte* stannde,  
He wyll wyghtlye in a qwhyle one his wayes hye." 553

"Bee Estyre," sais *the* emperour, "I ettylle my selfene,  
To hostaye in Almayne *with* armede knyghtez ;  
Sende freklye in-to Fraunce, *that flour* es of rewmes,  
ffande to fette *that* freke, and forfette his landez ; 557  
ffor I salle sette kepers, fulle couaunde and noble,  
Many geaunte of geene, justers fulle gude,  
To mete hym in the mountes, and martyre hys knyghtes,  
Stryke *theme* doune in strates, and struye *theme* fore euere,  
There salle appone Godarde a garette be rerede, 562  
That schalle be garneschte and kepyde *with* gude mene  
of armes,

And a bekyne abouenn to brynne whene *theme* lykys,  
*That* nane enmye *with* hoste salle entre the mountes ;  
There schaile one Mounte Bernarde be beyldede *another*e,  
Buschede *with* banerettes and bachelers noble : 567  
In at the portes of Pavye schalle no prynce passe,  
Thurgh the *perelous* places, for my pris knyghtes."

Tthane *sir* Lucius lordlyche *lettres* he sendys  
On one in-to *the* Oryente, *with* austeryne knyghtez,  
Tille Ambyganye and Orcage, and Alysaunder eke, 572  
To Inde and to Ermony, as Ewfrates rynnys,  
To Asye, and to Affrike, and Ewrope *the* large,  
To Irritayne, and Elamet, and alle *thase* owte ilez ;  
To Arraby and Egipt, tille erles and *other*, 576  
That any erthe occupyes in *thase* este marches

Of Damaske and Damyat, and dukes and erles ;  
ffor drede of his daungere they dresside *theme* sone ;  
Of Crete and of Capados the honourable kyngys 580  
Come at his commandmente, clenly at ones ;  
To Tartary and Turkey, whene tythynngez es comene,  
They turne in by Thebay, terauntez fulle hugge,

The flour of *the faire folke*, of Amazonnes landes ; 584

Alle thate ffaillez on *the felde* be forfeite fore euere !

All that fail are  
to forfeit their  
lands.

Of Babyloyne and Baldake the burlyche knyghtes,

Bayous with *theire baronage* bydez no langere ;

Of Perce, and of Pamphile, and Preter Iohne landes, 588

Iche prynce with his powere appertlyche graythede ;

The Sowdane of Surrye assemblez his knyghtes,

ffa Nylus to Nazareth, nommers fulle huge ;

To Garyere and to Galelé they gedyre alle at ones ; 592

The Sowdanes that ware sekyre sowdeours to Rome,

They gadyrede ouere *the Grekkes See* with greuouse wapyns,

In *theire grete galays*, wyth gleterande scheldez ;

From all the East  
they come sailing  
across the Greek  
Sea in their  
mighty ships  
armed for war,

The kynge of Cyprys one *the see* the Sowdane habydes,

With alle *the realles* of Roodes, arayed with hyme one ;

They sailede with a syde wynde oure *the salte strandez* :

Sodanly *the Sarezenes*, as theme selfe lykede,

Craftlyly at Cornett the kynges are aryefede, 600

ffa *the ceté* of Rome sexti myle large.

and assembled at  
Corneto, sixty  
miles from Rome.

Be that the Grekes ware graythede, a fulle gret nombyre,

The myghtyeste of Macedone, with mene of *tha marches*,

Pulle and Pruyslande presses with other, 604

There were of  
Greeks a vast  
number, and men  
of Italy, with  
Saracens from  
many lands.

The lege-mene of Lettow with legyons ynewe :

Thus they semble in sortes, summes fulle huge,

Sowdanes and Sarezenes owt of sere landes,

The Sowdane of Surry and sextene kynges, 608

At the cetee of Rome assemblede at ones.

Thane yschewes *the emperour* armede at ryghtys,

Arayed with his Romaynes appone ryche stedys ;

Sexty geauntes be-fore, engenderide with fendez, 612

With weches and warlawes to wacchene his tentys,

Ay-ware whare he wendes, wyntrez and zeres.

Myghte no blonkes theme bere, thos bustous churles,

Bot couerde camellez of *tourse*, enclosyde in maylez ;

He ayerez oute with alyenez, osten fulle huge, 617

Then goes forth  
the emperor with  
his knights,

headed by  
sixty giants.  
Witches and war-  
locks watch his  
tents.

Ewyne in-to Almayne, that Arthure hade wonnyne ;

Rydes in by *the ryuere*, and ryottez hyme seluene,

And ayerez with a huge wylle alle *thas hye landez* ; 620

[leaf 60]  
No horse might  
carry those churls.  
They ride upon  
camels bearing  
towers.

The emperor  
marches into  
Germany.

Alle Westwale of werre he wynnys as hym lykes,  
 Drawes in by Danuby, and dubbez hys knyghtez ;  
 In the contré of Colome <sup>1</sup> castelles enseggeze, 623  
 And suggeournez *that* sesone wyth Sarazenes ynewe.

Meanwhile Arthur commands his knights to gather their forces, and to be ready to meet him.

At the vtas of Hillary, Syr Arthure hym seluene  
 In his kydde councelle *commande the* lordes,—  
 “Kayere to *your* cuntrez, and semble *your* knyghtes,  
 And kepys me at Constantyne clenlyche arrayede ; 628  
 Byddez me at Bareflete apone *tha* blythe stremes,  
 Baldly *with-in* borde *with* *your* beste beryns ;  
 I schalle menskfully *your* mete in thos faire marches.”  
 He sendez furthe sodaynly *sergeantes* of armes, 632

The fleet assembles at Sandwich.

To alle hys mariners on rawe, to areste hym schippys ;  
 Wyth-in sextene dayes hys fleet whas assemblede,  
 At Sandwyche on *the* see, saile whene hym lykes.

He holds a parliament at York,

In the palez of *Forke* a parlement he haldez, 636  
 With alle *the* perez of *the* rewme, prelates and *other* ;  
 And aftyre *the* *prechyng* in presence of lordes,  
 The kyng in his concelle carpys *thes* wordes,—

“I am in *purpos* to passe *perilous* wayes, 640  
 To kaire *with* my kene mene, to conquere *your* landes,  
 To owtraye myne enmy, *if* auenture it schewe,  
 That occupyes myne heritage, *the* empyre of Rome.

and appoints as viceroy Sir Mordred, his nephew.

I sett *your* here a soueraynge, ascente *if* *your* lykys,  
 That esmesybb, my systersone, Sir Mordrede hym seluene,  
 Salle be my leutenante, *with* lordchipez ynewe, 646  
 Of alle my lele lege-mene, *that* my landez *your* mes.”

Hecarpes tille his cosyne *thane*, in counsaile hym seluene,—  
 “I make the kepare, *sir* knyghte, of kyngrykes manye,  
 Wardayne wyrchipfulle, to weilde al my landes, 650  
 That I haue wonnene of werre, in alle *this* werlde ryche ;

He bids him take care of Queen Guinever,

I wylle *that* Waynour, my weife, in wyrchipe be holdene,  
 That hire wantte noo wele, ne welthe *that* hire lykes ;  
 Luke my kydde castells be clenlyche arrayede, 654

and of his castles and forests.

There cho maye suggourne hire selfe, wyth semlyche  
 berynes.

<sup>1</sup> Or Coloine.



ffannde my fforestез be ffrythede, o frenchepe for euere,  
 That nane werreye my wylde, botte Waynour hir seluene, The queen alone  
is allowed to hunt  
in his absence.  
 And *that* in *the* sesone whene grees es assignyde, 658  
 That cho take hir solauce in certayne tymms.  
 Chauncelere and chambyrleyne chaunge as *the* lykes,  
 Audytours and offycers ordayne thy seluene,— 661 All officers are  
to be completely  
under his com-  
mand.  
 Bathe jureez, and juggez, and justicez of landes,  
 Luke thow justyfyе theme wele that injurye wyrkes : [leaf 60, back]  
 If me be destaynede to dye at Dryghtyns wylle, 664  
 I charge the my sektour, cheffe of alle *other*, Arthur makes  
Mordred his  
executor.  
 To mynystre my mobles, fore mede of my saule,  
 To mendynantez<sup>1</sup> and mysese in myschefe fallene :  
 Take here my testament of tresoure fulle huge, 668  
 As I trayste appone the, be-traye thowe me neuer ! He bids him be  
faithful to his  
trust,  
 As *thow* wille answeze be-fore the austeryne jugge,  
 That alle *this* werlde wynly wysse as hyme lykes,  
 Luke *that* my laste wylle be lelely perfournede ! 672  
 Thow has clenly *the* cure that to my coroune langez,  
 Of alle my werdez wele, and my weyffe eke ;  
 Luke *thowe* kepe the so clere, there be no cause fondene,  
 Whene I to contré come, if Cryste wille it thole ; 676  
 And thow haue grace gudly to gouerne thy seluene,  
 I salle coroune *the*, knyghte, kyng *with* my handez.” and promises to  
crown him king  
if he remain so.  
**T**han sir Modrede fulle myldly meles hym seluene,  
 Knelyd to *the* conquerour, and carpes *thise* wordez,—  
 “I be-seke 3ow, *sir*, as my sybbe lorde, 681 But Mordred de-  
sires to be ex-  
cused,  
 That 3e wille for charyté cheese 3ow a-nother ;  
 ffor if 3e putte me in *this* plytte, 3owre poplees dyssauyde ;  
 To presente a prynce astate my powere es symple. 684  
 Whene *other* of werre wysse are wyrchipide here-aftyre,  
 Thane may I for-sothe be sette bott at lyttile.  
 To passe in 3our presance my purpos es takyne,  
 And alle my purueaunce apperte fore my pris knyghtez.” and would rathe-  
go to the war.  
 “Thowe arte my neuewe fulle nere, my *nurree* of olde,  
 That I haue chastyede and chosene, a childe of my  
 chambyre ; 690 But Arthur bids  
him, as his near-  
est of kin, to  
undertake the  
office.

<sup>1</sup> MS. mendynantez.

ffor the sybredyne of me, fore-sake noghte *this* offyce  
That thow ne wyrk my wille, thow watte whatte<sup>1</sup> it  
menes."

Nowe he takez hys leue, and lengez no langere, 693  
At lordez, at lege-mene, *that* leues hyme by-hyndene.  
And seyne *that* worthilyche wy went vn-to chambyre,  
ffor to comfurthe *the* qwene, *that* in care lenges ; 696  
Waynour waykly wepande hym kyssiz,  
Talkez to hym tenderly *with* teres ynewe,—

Then Arthur  
takes leave of  
his queen.

Guinever laments  
his departure,

"I may very the wye, thatt this werre mouede,  
That warnes me wyrchippe of my wedde lorde ; 700  
Alle my lykyng of lyfe owte of lande wendez,  
And I in langour am lefte, leue 3e for euere !

and would rather  
die in his arms,

Whyne myghte I, dere lufe, dye in 3our armes, 703  
Are I *this* destanye of dule sulde drye by myne one !"

But Arthur bids  
her not to grieve,

"Grefe *the* noghte, Gaynour, fore Goddes lufe of hewene,  
Ne gruche noghte my ganggyng, it salle to gude turne !  
Thy wonrydez and thy wepyng woundez myne herte,  
I may noghte wit of *this* woo, for alle *this* werlde ryche ;  
I haue made a kepare, a knyghte of thyne awene, 709

and tells her that  
he has made Mor-  
dred, a knight  
of her own, his  
deputy.

Ouerlyng of Ynglande vndyre thy seluene,  
And thates *sir* Mordrede, *that* thow has mekyll prayse,  
Salle be thy dictour, my dere, to doo whatte the lykes."

[leaf 61]

Then he kisses  
the ladies, and  
takes leave of  
them.  
But Guinever  
swoons when he  
asks for his  
sword.

Thane he takes hys leue at ladys in chambyre, 713  
Kysside them kyndlyche, and to Criste be-teches ;  
And then cho swounes fulle swythe, whe[n] he hys  
swerde aschede,

The king then  
departs hastily  
with his knights.

Twys in a swounyng, swelte as cho walde ! 716  
He pressed to his palfray, in presance of lordes,  
Prekys of the palez *with* his prys knyghtes,  
Wyth a realle rowte of *the* Rounde Table ; 719

At Sandwich all  
the lords and  
their followers  
assemble.

Soughte to-warde Sandwyche, cho sees hyme no more !  
Thare the grete ware gederyde, wyth galyarde knyghtes,  
Garneschit one *the* grene felde and graythelyche arayede ;  
Dukkes and duzseperez daynttehely rydes,  
Erlez of Ynglande *with* archers ynewe : 724

<sup>1</sup> MS. whatte watte.

Schirreues sharply schiftys the comouns,  
 Rewlys be-fore *the* ryche of the Rounde Table,  
 Assingnez ilke a contree to certayne lordes, 727  
 In the southe one *the* see banke saile whene *theme* lykes.

Thane bargez *theme* buskez, and to *the* bannke rowes,  
 Bryngez blonkez one bourde, and burlyche helmes ;  
 Trussez in tristly trappyde stedes,  
 Tentez,<sup>1</sup> and othire toylez, and targez fulle ryche, 732

Horses, arms,  
 tents, and other  
 things are  
 shipped.

Cabanes, *and* clathe-sekkes, and coferez fulle noble,  
 Hukes, and haknays, and horsez of armez ;  
 Thus they stowe ine the stuffe of fulle steryne knyghtez.

**Q**wene alle was schyppede that scholde, they schounte  
 no lengere, 736

Bot ventelde *theme* tyte, as *the* tyde rynnez ;  
 Coggez and crayers *than* crossez *thaire* mastez,  
 At the commandment of *the* kynge, vncouerde at ones.

Then the ships  
 at the word of  
 command cross  
 their yards,

Wyghtly one *the* wale *thay* wye vp *thaire* ankers, 740  
 By wytt of *the* watyre-mene of *the* wale ythez,  
 ffrekes one *the* forestayne fakene *theire* coblez,

weigh their an-  
 chors ;  
 the well-skilled  
 sailors hoist the  
 sails and steer the  
 vessels.

In floynes, and fercostez, and Flemesche schyppes,  
 Tytt saillez to *the* toppe, and *turnez the* lufe, 744

Standez appone stere-bourde, sterynly *thay* songene,  
 The pryce schippeze of the porte prouene *theire* depnesse,  
 And fondez wyth fulle saile ower *the* fawe ythez ;

Holly *with*-owttyne harme *thay* hale in bottes, 748

Then they haul  
 in the boats, shut  
 the ports, heave  
 the lead, look well  
 to the guiding  
 star, and skil-  
 fully shape their  
 course with the  
 needle and the  
 stone.

Schipe-mene sharply schotene *thaire* portez,  
 Launchez lede apone lufe, lacchene *ther* depez,  
 Lukkes to *the* lade-sterne, whene *the* lyghte faillez ;  
 Castez coursez be crafte, whene *the* clowde rysez, 752

*With the* nedylle and *the* stone one *the* nyghte tydez ;  
 ffor drede of *the* derke nyghte *thay* drecchede a lyttille,  
 And alle *the* steryne of *the* streme strekyne at onez.

After a little de-  
 lay on account of  
 darkness, they all  
 sail at once.

The kynge was in a gret cogge, *with* knyghtez fulle many,  
 In a cabane enclosede, clenlyche arayede ; 757

The king is in a  
 large vessel with  
 many knights.

*With-in* on a ryche bedde rystys a littyll,  
 And *with the* swoghe of *the* see in swefnynghe he felle.

Resting himself  
 in his cabin, he  
 falls asleep,

<sup>1</sup> Or teinttez.

- and dreams of a  
dreadful dragon.
- [leaf 61, back]
- His head and  
neck are blue;  
his shoulders covered with silver  
scales;
- his belly and  
wings of various  
hues;
- his feet are  
black, and out of  
his mouth comes  
fire.
- Then comes  
against the dragon  
a fierce black  
bear,  
with huge paws  
and perilous  
claws,
- mis-shapen legs,  
and foaming lips.
- He prepares to  
fight,  
roaring and  
raging for the  
strife.
- Then the dragon  
assails him,  
fighting like a  
falcon with beak  
and claws.
- The bear bites  
him with baleful  
teeth, and causes  
the blood to flow.
- He had killed the  
dragon but for
- Hym dremyd of a dragone, dredfulle to be-holde, 760  
Come dryfande ouer *the* depe to drenschede hys pople,  
Ewene walkande owte of the weste landez,  
Wanderande vnworthyly ouere the wale ythez;  
Bothe his hede and hys hals ware halely alle ouer 764  
Oundyde of azure, enamelde fulle faire:  
His scoulders ware schalyde alle in elene syluere,  
Schreede ouer alle *the* schrympe with schrinkande poyntez;  
Hys wombe and hys wenges of wondyrfulle hewes, 768  
In meruaylous maylys he mountede fulle hye;  
Whayme *that* he towchede he was tynt for euer!  
Hys feete ware floreschede alle in fyne sabyllie,  
And syche a vennymous flayre flowe fro his lyppez,  
That the flode of *the* flawez alle one fyre semyde! 773  
Thane come of *the* Oryente, ewyne hyme agayne,  
A blake bustous bere abwene in the clowdes,  
With yche a pawe as a poste, and paumes fulle huge,  
With pykes fulle perilous, alle plyande *thame* semyde,  
Lothene and lothely, lokkes and *other*,  
Alle with lutterde legges, lokerde vnfaire,  
ffiltyrde vnfiely, wyth fomannde lyppez, 780  
The foulleste of feigure that fourmede was euer!  
He baltyrde, he bleryde, he braundyschte *ther*-after;  
To bataile he bounnez hym with bustous clowez:  
He romede, he rarede, that roggede alle *the* erthe! 784  
So ruydly he rappyd at to ryot hym seluene!  
Thane the dragone on dreghe dressede hyme a-3ayne,  
And with hys duttez hym drafte one dreghe by *the* walkyne:  
He fares as a fawcone, frekly he strykez; 788  
Bothe with feete and with fyre he feghttys at ones!  
The bere in the bataile *the* bygger hym semyde,  
And byttes hyme boldlye wyth balefulle tuskez;  
Syche buffetez he hym rechez with hys brode klokkes,  
Hys brest and his brathelle whas blodye alle ouer! 793  
He rawmpyde so ruydly that alle *the* erthe ryfez,  
Rynnande one reede blode as rayne of the heuene!  
He hade weryede the worme by wyghtnesse of strenghte,

- Ne ware it fore *the* wylde fyre *that* he hyme wyth defendez. the fire which he  
 Thane wandyrz *the* worme awaye to hys heghttez, breathes.
- Commes glydande fro *the* clowddez, and cowpez fulle 799 Then the dragon  
 eueue ; flies aloft, and  
 Towchez hym wyth his talounez, and terez hys rigge, comes swooping  
 Be-twyx *the* taile and the toppe tene fote large ! tearing a vast  
 Thus he brittenyde the bere, and broghte hyme olyfe, rent in the back  
 of the bear,
- Lette hyme falle in the flode, fleete whare hyme lykys : and lets him drop  
 So they brynge *the* bolde kyng bynne *the* schippe-burde, into the water.
- That* nere he bristez for bale, one bede whare he lyggez.
- Thane waknez *the* wyese kyng, wery fore-trauaillede, Then Arthur  
 Takes hyme two phylozophirs, that folowede hyme euer, awaking is  
 In the seuyne scyence the suteleste fondene, 808 [leaf 62]  
 The cony[n]geste of clergye vndyre Criste knowene ; troubled at the  
 He tolde *theme* of hys tourmente, *that* tyme *that* he dream, and sends  
 slepede, for his two philo-  
 sophers, men very  
 learned in the  
 seven sciences.
- “Drechede *with* a dragone, and syche a derfe beste,  
 Has mad me fulle wery ; 3e telle me my swefene, 812  
 Ore I mone swelte as swythe, as wysse me oure Lorde !”
- “Sir,” saide *they* sone thane, thies sagge philosopherse, These wise men  
 tell him that by  
 the dragon is  
 meant himself.
- “The dragone *that* thow dremyde of, so dredfulle to schewe,  
 That come dryfande ouer *the* deepe, to drynchene thy pople,  
 Sothely and certayne thy seluene it es, 817
- That thus saillez ouer *the* see *with* thy sekyre knyghtez :  
 The colurez *that* ware castyne appone his clere wengez,  
 May be thy kyngrykezalle, *that* thow has ryghte wonnyne ;  
 And the tachesesede taile, *with* tonges so huge, 821
- Be-takyns *this* faire folke, *that* in thy fleet wendez.
- The bere *that* bryttenede was abowene in *the* clowdez,  
 Be-takyns the tyrauntez *that* tourmentez thy pople ;  
 Or elles *with* somme gyaunt some journee salle happyne,  
 In syngulere batelle by 3oure selfe one ;  
 And *thow* salle hafe *the* victorye thurghel helpe of oure  
 Lorde,
- As *thow* in thy vision was opynly schewede ! 828
- Of this dredfulle dreame ne drede the no more,  
 Ne kare noghte, *sir* conquerour, bot comforth thy seluene ;
- Arthur is exhort-  
 ed to be of good  
 courage.

And thise *that* saillez ouer *the* see, with thy sekyre  
knyghtez."

With trumppez thene trystly, they trisene vpe *thaire*  
saillez, 832

They speed on  
their way, and ar-  
rive on the coast  
of Normandy.

At Barflete they  
find a fleet of  
friends,

the flower of fif-  
teen realms.

And rowes ouer the ryche see, this rowtte alle at onez ;  
The comely coste of Normandye they cachene fulle euene,  
And blythely at Barflete theis bolde are arryfedede,  
And fyndys a flete there of frendez ynewe, 836  
The floure and *the* faire folke of fyftene rewmez ;  
ffore kynggez and capytayne kepyde hyme fayre,  
As he at Carelele commaundyde at Cristymesse hym  
seluene. 839

When they had  
disembarked and  
pitched their  
tents, a Templar  
comes to the  
king,

and tells him of  
a ferocious giant  
who feeds upon  
men and chil-  
dren,

Be they had taken the lande, and tentez vpe rerede,  
Comez<sup>1</sup> a templere tyte, and towchide to *the* kyng—  
"Here es a teraunt be-syde that *tourmentez* thi pople,  
A grett geaunte of geene, engenderde of fendez ;  
He has fretyne of folke mo thane fyfe hondrethe, 844  
And als fele fawntekyns of freeborne chilyre !  
This has bene his sustynaunce alle this seuene wyntteres,  
And 3itt es that sotte noghte sadde, so wele hyme it lykez !  
In *the* contree of Constantyne no kynde has he leuede,  
With-owttyn kydd castelles enclosid wyth walles, 849  
That he ne has clenly dystroyede alle the knaue chilyre,  
And theme caryede to *the* cragge, and clenly deworyde !

and who had that  
day captured the  
[leaf 62, back]  
Duchess of Brit-  
tany, and carried  
her to the  
mountain.

The duchez of Bretayne to daye has he takyne, 852  
Be-side Reynes as scho rade with hire ryche knyghttes ;  
Ledd hyre to *the* mountayne, thare *that* lede lengez,  
To lye by that lady, aye whyls hir lyfe lastez.  
We folowede o ferrome moo thene fyfe hundrethe, 856  
Of beryns, and of burgeys, and bachelers noble,  
Bot he couerde the cragge ; cho cryede so lowde,  
The care of *that* creatoure couer salle I neuer !  
Scho was flour of alle Fraunce, or of fyfe rewmes, 860  
And one of the fayreste that fourmede was euere,  
The gentileste jowelle a-juggede with lordes,  
ffro Geene vn-to Gerone, by Ihesu of heuene !

She was the  
flower of all  
France,  
and the fairest  
lady on earth,

<sup>1</sup> Or Commez.

Scho was thy wyfes cosyne, knowe it if *the* lykez, 864 consin of Ar-  
thur's queen.  
Comene of *the* rycheeste, that *rengnez* in erthe :

As thow arte ryghtwise kyngrewe on thy pople,  
And fande for to venge theme, that thus are rebuykyde !"

"Allas !" sais *sir* Arthure, "so lange haue I lyffede, Then Sir Arthur  
bitterly laments  
her fate,  
Hade I wytene of this, wele had me chefede ; 869

Me es noghte fallene faire, bot me es foule happynede,  
That thus this faire ladye this fende has dystroyede !

I had leuere thane alle Fraunce, this fyftene wynter,

I hade bene be-fore thate freke, a furlange of waye, 873 and wishes he  
had been there  
to aid her.

Whene he that ladye had laghte and ledde to *the* montez :

I hadde leste my lyfe are cho hade harme lympppyde !

Bot walde *thow* keneme to *the* crage, thare *that* kenelengez, He desires to  
know where the  
giant liues,

I walde cayre to *that* coste, and carpe wythe hyme seluene,

To trette with that tyraunt fore tresone of loñdes,<sup>1</sup>

And take trewe for a tyme, till it may tyde bettyre."

"Sire, see 3e 3one farlande, with 3one two fyrez, 880 and is directed  
by the Templar  
how to find his  
abode,

Thar filsnez<sup>2</sup> *that* fende, fraiste whene the lykes,

Appone the creste of the cragge, by a colde welle,

That enclosez *the* clyfe with *the* clere strandez,

Ther may thow fynde folke fay wyth-owttyne nowmer, where there are  
many captives,

Mo florenez in faythe thane Fraunce es in aftyre ; 885

And more tresour vn-trewely that traytour has getyne, and vast treasure  
stored up.

Thane in Troye was, as I trowe, *that tyme that it was wonne.*"

Thane romyez the ryche kyngre for rewthe of *the* pople, Then Arthur is  
greatly excited,

Raykez ryghte to a tente, and restez no lengere ! 889

He welterys, he wristeles, he wryngez hys handez !

Thare was no wy of *this* werlde, *that* wyste whatt he  
menede !

He calles *sir* Cayous *that* of *the* cowpe serfede, 892 and bids Sir  
Cayous and Sir  
Bedevere attend  
him at evening,

And *sir* Bedvere *the* bolde, *that* bare hys brande ryche,—

"Luke 3e aftyre euensange be armyde at ryghttez,

On blonkez by 3one buscayle, by 3one blythe stremez,

flore I wille passe in pilgrimage preuely here-aftyre, pretending that  
he is going on a  
pilgrimage.  
[leaf 63]

In the tyme of suppere, whene lordez are seruede, 897  
ffor to sekene a saynte be 3one salte stremes,

<sup>1</sup> Originally lordez.

<sup>2</sup> Or filsuez.

In seynt Mighelle mount, there myraclez are schewede."

Then Arthur pro-  
ceeds to dress  
and arm himself,

Aftyre euesange, sir Arthure hyme se[l]fene 900

Wente to hys wardrope, and warpe of hys wedez,

Armede hym in a actone *with* orfraez fulle ryche,

Abouen one *that* a jeryne of Acres owte ouer,

Abouen *that* a jesseraunt of jentylle maylez, 904

A jupone of Ierodyne jaggede in schrede; z;

He brayede; one a bacenett burneschte of syluer,

The beste *that* was in Basille, wyth bordurs ryche ;

The creste and *the* coronalle, enclosed so faire 908

Wyth clasppis of clere golde, couched wyth stones ;

The vesare, *the* aventaille, enarmede so faire,

Voyde *with*-owttyne vice, *with* wyndowes of syluer ;

His gloues gaylyche gilte, and grauene at *the* hemmez,

With *gray*uez and gobelets, glorious of hewe ; 913

He bracez a brade schelde, and his brande aschez,

and mounting a  
brown steed, rides  
to the spot where  
his knights await  
him.

Bounede hyme a broune stede, and one *the* bente houys ;

He sterte tille his sterepe and stridez one lofte, 916

Streynez hyme stowttly, and sterys hyme faire,

Brochez *the* baye stede, and to *the* buske rydez,

And there hys knyghtes hyme kepede fulle clenlyche  
arayed.

Thane they roode by *that* ryuer, *that* rynnyd so swythe,

There is a grove  
by the side of the  
river full of game  
and decked with  
flowers.

*Thare the* rynde; ouerrechez *with* realle bowghez ; 921

The roo and *the* rayne-dere reklesse thare ronnene,

In rane; and in rosers to ryotte *thame* seluene ;

The frithez ware floreschte *with* flourez fulle many,

Wyth fawcouns and fesantez of ferlyche hewe; z; 925

Here all birds  
abound,

Alle *the* feulez thare fleschez, that flyez *with* wengez,

ffore thare galede *the* gowke one grenez fulle lowde,

Wyth alkyn; gladchipe *thay* gladdene *theme* seluene :

and nightingales  
make sweet  
music.

Of *the* nyghtgale notez *the* nois; was swette, 929

They threpide wyth the throstilles, thre hundreth at ones !

*That* whate swowyng; of watyre, and syngyng; of byrdez,

It myghte salue hyme of sore, *that* sounde was neuere !

Thane ferkez this folke, and one fotte lyghttez, 933

Here they leave  
their horses, and

ffestenez theire faire stede; o ferrome by-tweñe ;



And thene the kyng kenely comandyde hys knyghtez  
 ffor to byde *with* theire blonkez, and bowne no forthyre,—  
 “ffore I wille seke this seynte by my selfe one, 937  
 And melle *with* this mayster mane, *that* this monte 3emez;  
 And seyne salle 3e offyre, aythyre aftyre *other*,  
 Menskfully at Saynt Mighelle fulle myghtty *with* Criste!”

the king bids his  
 knights to await  
 his return.

The kyng coueris *the* cragge wyth cloughes fulle hye,  
 To the creste of the clyffe he clymbez one lofte ;

The king alone  
 ascends the  
 [leaf 63, back]  
 mountain,

Keste vpe hys vmbre, and kenly he lukes, 943

Caughte of *the* colde wynde to comforthe hym seluene ;

Two fyrez he fyndez fflawmande fulle hye,

The fourtedele a furlange be-twene *thus* he walkes ;

The waye by *the* weHe strandez he wandyrde hyme one,

To wette of *the* warlawe, whare *that* he lengez ; 948

He ferkez to *the* fyrste fyre, and euene there he fyndez

A very wafulle wedowe, wryngande hire handez,

And gretande on a graue grysely teres,

and going to a  
 fire which he sees  
 he finds a woeful  
 widow wringing  
 her hands.

Now merkyde one molde, sene myddaye it semede : 952

He saluzede *that* sorowfulle *with* sittande wordez,

And fraynez aftyre the fende fairely there-aftyre.

Thane this wafulle wyfe vñ-wynly hym gretez,

Couerde vp on hire kneesse, and clappyde hire handez ;

Said, “carefulle caremane, thow carpez to lowde ! 957

May 3one warlawe wyt, he worows vs alle !

Weryd worthe *the* wyghte ay, that *the* thy wytt refede,

That mase the to wayfe here in *thise* wylde lakes ! 960

I warne *the* fore wyrchipe, *thou* wylnez aftyр sorowe !

Whedyre buskes *thou* berne ? vnblysside *thow* semes !

Wenez thow to brittene hyme *with* thy brande ryche ?

Ware thow wyghttere thane Wade or Wawayne owthire,

Thow wynnys no wyrchipe, I warne the be-fore ! 965

Thow saynned the vnsekyrly to seke to *these* mountez,

Siche sex ware to symple to semble *with* hyme one ;

ffor and thow see hyme *with* syghte, the seruez no herte,

To sayne the sekerly, so semez hym huge ! 969

He asks her con-  
 cerning the giant.

She answers with  
 terror, and warns  
 him that he can-  
 not hope to con-  
 tend with so ter-  
 rible a monster.

Thow arte frely and faire, and in thy fyrste flourez,  
 Bot thow arte fay be my faythe, and *that* me for-thynkkys !

Fifty such as Arthur he could fell with his fist.

The poor duchess has been ravished and murdered by him, and the doleful widow, her foster-mother, has buried her,

and will remain there till death to bewail her.

[leaf 64]

Then Arthur says that he comes from the great King Arthur on a mission to treat with the giant.

The old wife tells him that he cares nothing for laws or treaties; that he regards not gold or treasure;

only he has a famous kirtle covered with hair,

which is bordered with the beards of mighty kings.

The tribute of fifteen realms is sent to him on each Easter-eve,

Ware syche fyfty one a felde, or one a faire erthe, 972  
The freke walde *with* hys fyste felle ȝow at ones!

Loo! here the ducheze dere,—to daye was cho takyne,—  
Depe doluene and dede, dyked in moldez; 975

He hade morthirede this mylde be myddaye war rongene,  
*With*-owttyne mercy one molde, I not watte it ment:

He has forsedde hir and fylede, and cho es fay leuede;

He slewe hir vn-slely, and slitt hir to *the* nauylle!

And here haue I bawmede hir, and beryede *ther*-aftyre;  
ffor bale of *the* botelesse, blythe be I neuer! 981

Of alle *the* frendez cho hade, *there* folowede none aftyre,  
Bot I, hir foster modyr of fyftene wynter!

To ferke of this farlande, fande salle I neuer, 984  
Bot here be foundene on felde, tille I be fay leuede!"

Thane answers *sir* Arthure to *that* alde wyf;

"I am comyne fra *the* conquerour, curtaise and gentille,  
As one of *the* hatheldest of Arthur knyghtez, 988

Messenger to *this* myx, for mendemente of *the* pople,  
To mele *with* this maister mane, that here this mounte  
ȝemez;

To trete *with* this tyraunt for tresour of landez,  
And take trew for a tyme, to bettyr may worthe." 992

"Ȝa, thire wordis are bot waste," *quod* this wif thane,  
"ffor bothe landez and lythes ffulle lyttille by he settes;

Of rentez ne of rede golde rekkez he neuer, 995  
ffor he wille lenge owt of lawe, as hym selfe thynkes,

*With*-owtene licence of lede, as lorde in his awene;

Bot he has a kyrtille one, kepide for hyme seluene,  
That was sponene in Spayne *with* specyalle byrdez,

And sythyne garnescht in Grece fulle graythly to-gedirs;  
It es hydede alle *with* hare hally al ouere, 1001

And bordyrde *with* the berdez of burlyche kynges,

Crispid and kombide, that kempis may knawe

Iche kyng by his colour, in kythe there he lengez;

Here the fermeze he fangez of fyftene rewmez, 1005

ffor ilke Esterne ewyne, how-euer that it falle,

They send it hyme sothely for saughte of *the* pople,

Sekerly at *that* sesone *with* certayne knyghtez, 1008

And he has aschede Arthure alle *this* seuene wynnter.

ffor-thy hurdez he here, to owtraye hys pople,

He has long  
wished for the  
beard of Arthur.

Tille *the* Bretones kyng<sup>e</sup> haue burneschte his lyp<sup>p</sup>ys,

And sent his berde to that bolde wyth his beste berynes ;

Bot thowe hafe broghte *that* berde, bowne the no forthire,

ffor it es butelesse bale, thowe biddez oghte elles ; 1014

ffor he has more tresour to take whene hyme lykez,

Thane euere aughte Arthure, or any of hys elders ;

If thowe hafe broghte *the* berde, he bese more blythe

Thane *thowe* gafe hym Burgoyne, or Bretayne *the* more ;

If he has brought  
the beard, the  
giant will be  
bliithe.

Bot luke nowe for charitee, *thow* chasty thy lyp<sup>p</sup>es,

That the no wordez eschape, whate so be-tydez ; 1020

Luke *thi* presante be priste, and presse hym bott lyttille,

But he must ap-  
proach him with  
due caution,

ffor he es at his sowper, he wille be sone greuyde.

And *thow* my concelle doo, *thow* dosse of thy clothes,

And knele in thy kyrtylle, and calle hym thy lorde.

and had better  
doff his clothes  
and kneel to him.

He sowppes alle *this* sesone *with* seuene knaue childre,

Choppid in a chargour of chalke whytt syluer, 1026

*With* pekille *and* powdyre of precious spycez,

He sups at this  
season on seven  
male children  
chopped in a  
charger of chalk-  
white silver.

And pyment fulle plenteuous of Portyngale wynes ;

Thre balefulle birdez his brochez *they* turne, 1029

*That* byddez his bedgatt, his byddyng<sup>e</sup> to wyrche ;

Three wretched  
women turn his  
spits for him.

Siche foure scholde be fay *with-in* foure hourez,

Are his fylth ware filled<sup>e</sup>, that his flesch 3ernes."

[leaf 64, back]

"3a, I haue broghte *the* berde," quod he, "the bettyre

me lykez ;

1033

ffor-thi wille I boun<sup>e</sup> me, and bere it my seluene ;

Bot, lefe, walde *thow* lere me whare *that* lede lengez,

I salle alowe *the* and I liffe, oure Lorde so me helpe !"

"fferke fast to *the* fyre," quod cho, "that flawmez so hyc ;

Thare fillis *that* fende hyme, fraist whene the lykez ;

"Yes," says Ar-  
thur, "I have in-  
deed brought this  
beard ; but show  
me where I shall  
find him."

Bot *thow* moste seke more southe, sydlyngs a lyttille,

ffor he wille hafe sent hym selfe sex myle large." 1040

Then she directs  
him to approach  
the great fire.

To *the* sowre of *the* reke he soghte at *the* gayneste,

Sayned hyme sekerly *with* certeyne wordez,

And sydlyngs of *the* segge the syghte had he rechide,

Arthur goes to  
the fire, and finds  
the giant lying  
extended with  
his back to the  
fire, picking the  
thigh of a man.

Roasts of the  
flesh of men  
and cattle are  
spitted together.

Then Arthur's  
heart bleeds for  
the woes inflicted  
by this wretch.  
He fastens on  
his shield and  
brandishes his  
bright sword,

and right boldly  
addresses the  
giant.

He upbraids  
him with his vile  
crimes and his  
unclean meat.

For his horrible  
murders of Chris-  
tian children,

he would now  
take vengeance  
on him, by the  
aid of St Michael.

Then the giant  
stared with  
amazement, and  
gnashed his teeth  
with fury.

How vn-semly *that* sott satt sowpande hym one ; 1044  
He lay lenand one lange, lugande vn-faire,  
*The* thee of a manns lymme lyfte vp by *the* haunche ;  
His bakke, and his bewschers, and his brode lendez,  
He bekez by *the* bale-fyre, and breklesse hyme semede ;  
*Thare* ware rostez fulle ruyde, and rewfulle bredez, 1049  
Beerynes and bestaile brochede to-geders ;  
Cowlfulle cramede of crysmede childyre,  
Sum as brede brochede, and bierdez *thame* tournede.

And *thane* this comlych kynge, by-cause of his pople,  
His herte bledez for bale, one bent ware he standez !  
Thane he dressede one his schelde, schuntes no lengere,  
Braundesche his bryghte swerde by *the* bryghte hiltex,  
Raykez to-warde *the* renke reghte with a ruyde wille,  
And hyely hailsez *that* hulke with hawtayne wordez,—

“ Now, alle-weldand Gode, *that* wyrscheppez vs alle,  
Giff the sorowe and syte, sotte, there thow lygges, 1060  
ffor the fulsomeste freke that fourmede was euere !  
ffoully thow fedys the, *the* fende haue thi saule !  
Here es cury vn-clene, carle, be my trowthe,  
Caffe of creatours alle, thow curssed wriche ! 1064  
Be-cause that *thow* killide has *thise* cresmede childyre,  
Thow has marters made, and broghte oute of lyfe,  
*That* here are brochede one bente, and brittenede with  
thi handez, 1067

I salle merke *the* thy mede, as *thou* has myche serfede,  
Thurghe myghte of seynt Mighelle, *that* *this* monte 3emes !  
And for this faire ladye, *that* *thow* has fey leuyde,  
And *thus* forcede one foulde, for fylth of *thi* selfene !  
Dresse the now, dogge-sone, the deuelle haue *thi* saule !  
ffor *thow* salle dye this day, thurghe dynt of my handez !”

Thane glonpnde *the* glotone and glorede vn-faire ;  
He grennede as a grewhonde, with grysly tuskes ;  
He gapede, he groned faste, with grucchande latez, 1076  
ffor grefe of *the* gude kynge, *that* hyme with grame gretez !  
His fax and his foretoppe was filterede to-geders,

- And owte of his face fome ane halfe fote large ;  
 His frount and his forheuede, alle was it ouer, 1080  
 As *the felle* of a froske, and fraknede it semede,  
 Huke-nebbyde as a hawke, and a hore berde,  
 And herede to *the hole eyghne* with hyngande browes ;  
 Harske as a hunde-fisch, hardly who so lukez, 1084  
 So was *the hyde* of *that hulke* hally al ouer !  
 Erne had he fulle huge, and vgly to schewe,  
 With eghne fulle horreble, and ardaunt for sothe ;  
 flatt-mowthede as a fluke, with fleryande lypys, 1088  
 And *the flesche* in his fortethe fowly as a bere.  
 His berde was brothy and blake, *that* tille his brest  
 rechede,  
 Grassede as a mereswyne with cokes fulle huge,  
 And alle falterde *the flesche* in his foule lippys, 1092  
 Ilke wrethe as a wolfe-heuede, it wraythe owtt at ones !  
 Bullenekkyde was *that bierne*, and brade in the scholders,  
 Brok-brestede as a browne, with brustils fulle large,  
 Ruyd armes as an ake with rusclede sydes, 1096  
 Lyme and leskes fulle lothyne, leue 3c for sothe :  
 Schouelle-fotede was *that schalke*, and schaylande hyme  
 semyde,  
 With schankez vn-schaply, schowande to-gedyrs ;  
 Thykke theese as a thursse, and thikkere in *the hanche*,  
 Greesse growene as a galte, fulle grylych he lukez ! 1101  
 Who *the lenghe* of *the lede* lelly accountes,  
 ffo *the face* to *the fote*, was fyfe fadome lange !  
 Thane stertez he vp sturdely one two styffe schankez,  
 And sone he caughte hyme a clubb alle of elene yryne !  
 He walde hafe kyllede *the kynge* with his kene wapene,  
 Bot thurghe *the crafte* of Cryste 3it *the carle* failede ;  
 The creest and *the coronalle*, *the claspes* of syluer, 1108  
 Clenly with his clubb he crasschede doune at onez !  
 The kynge castes vp his schelde, and couers hym faire,  
 And with his burlyche brande a box he hyme reches ;  
 ffulle butt in *the frunt* the fromonde he luittez, 1112

Out of his mouth  
came smoke.

His forehead was  
like the fell of a  
frog.

He was hook-  
nosed like a  
[leaf 65]  
hawk, with hair  
up to his eyes, and  
beetle brows.

His skin was hard  
as that of a dog-  
fish ; his ears  
huge and ugly ;  
his eyes horrible  
and burning.

Flat-mouthed,  
with grinning  
lips, and jaws  
like a bear.

A black beard  
reached to his  
breast, with  
mighty bristles.

The flesh of his  
lips was in un-  
even folds, each  
fold, like an out-  
law, twisted it-  
self out.

He was bull-  
necked and broad  
in the shoulders ;  
breasted like a  
boar, with huge  
bristles ; his arms  
like an oak ; his  
limbs and flanks  
loathly ; shovel-  
footed and scaly,  
with unshapely  
shanks ;

of gigantic thick-  
ness in his  
haunches.

In height, full  
five fathoms.

Up starts this  
fell giant, and  
seizing an iron  
club, aims a blow  
at Arthur.

The king catches  
it on his shield,  
and returns the  
blow with his  
sword right upon  
the forehead.

The bright blade  
pierces to the  
brain.  
The giant wipes  
his face with his  
hands, and strikes  
fiercely at the  
king.  
Arthur draws  
back,

and then drives  
his sword into the  
giant's haunch.

The monster  
roars and strikes  
at random.  
So mighty is his  
stroke, that it  
penetrates a  
sword's length  
into the ground.  
The king nearly  
swoons at the  
noise of the blow,  
but quickly  
strikes him with  
his sword.  
His entrails and  
blood gush out.

[leaf 65, back]  
Then throwing  
away his club, the  
giant seizes Ar-  
thur in his arms.

The baleful birds  
pray for the suc-  
cess of Arthur.

They have a  
fearful wrestling  
match, and fall  
from the top of  
the cliff down to  
the shore.

That the burnyschit blade to *the* brayne rynnez ;  
He feyede his fysnamye *with* his foule hondez,  
And frappez faste at hys face fersely *ther*-aftyre !  
The kyng chaungez his fote, eschewes a lyttile, 1116  
Ne had he eschapede *that* choppe, cheuede had euyll ;  
He folowes in fersly, and festenesse a dynte  
Hye vpe one *the* hanche, *with* his harde wapyne,  
That he hillid *the* swerde halfe a fote large ; 1120  
The hott blode of *the* hulke vn-to *the* hilde rynnez,  
Ewyne in-to jumette the gyaunt he hyttez,  
Iust to *the* genitales,<sup>1</sup> and jaggede *thame* in sondre !

Thane he romyede and rarede, and ruydly he strykez  
fulle egerly at Arthure, and one the erthe hittez 1125  
A swerde lenghe *with*-in *the* swarthe, he swappez at ones,  
That nere swounes *the* kyng for swoughe of his dynttez !  
Bot 3it the kyng sweperly fulle swythe he by-swenkez,  
Swappez in *with* the swerde *that* it *the* swange brystedde ;  
Bothe *the* guttez and the gorre guschez owte at ones,  
*That* alle englaymez *the* gresse, one grounde *ther* he  
standez ! 1131

Thane he castez the clubb, and the kyng hentez,  
On *the* creeste of *the* cragg he caughte hyme in armez,  
And enclosez hyme clenly, to cruschene hys rybbez ;  
So harde haldez he *that* hende, *that* nere hisherte brystez !  
*Thane* *the* balefulle bierdez bownez to *the* erthe, 1136  
Kneland and cryande, and clappide *theire* handez,—  
“Criste comforthe 3one knyghte, and kepe hym fro  
sorowe,

And latte neuer 3one fende felle hyme olyfe !”

3itt es *the* warlow so wyghte, he welters hyme vndere,  
Wrothely *thai* wrythyne and wrystille to-gederz, 1141  
Welters and walowes ouer *with*-in *thase* buskez,  
Tumbellez and turnes faste, and terez *thaire* wedez,  
Vn-tenderly fro *the* toppe *thai* tiltine to-gederz ; 1144  
Whilome Arthure ouer, and *other*-while vndyre,  
ffro *the* heghe of *the* hylle vn-to *the* harde roche ;

<sup>1</sup> MS. genitales.

They feyne neuer are they falle at *the* flode merkes ;  
 Bot Arthur with ane anlace egerly smyttez, 1148  
 And hittez euer in the hulke vp to *the* hiltz.

Arthur stabs the  
giant,

*The* theeffe at *the* dede-thrawe so throlly hyme thryngez,  
*That* three rybbys in his syde he thyrstyz in sundere !

who in his death-  
struggle breaks  
three of Arthur's  
ribs.

Thene *sir* Kayous *the* kene vn-to *the* kyngz styrtz,—  
 Said, “allas ! we are lorne, my lorde es confundede,  
 Ouer-fallene with a fende ! vs es fulle hapnede ! 1154  
 We mone be forfetede in faith, and flemyde for euer !”  
*Thay* hafe vp hys hawberke *thane*, and handilez *ther*-  
 vndyre,

His knights find  
him lying ex-  
hausted.

His hyde and his haunche eke, one heghte to *the*  
 schuldrez,

His flawnke and his feletez, and his faire sydez, 1158  
 Bothe his bakke and his breste, and his bryghte armez.

*Thay* ware fayne *that they* fande no flesche entamede,  
 And for *that* journee made joye, *thir* gentille knyghttez.

They examine  
him and find no  
wound.

“Now, certez,” saise Sir Bedwere, “it semez, be my  
 Lorde ! 1162

Sir Bedever  
speaks face-  
tiously of this  
saint whom Ar-  
thur had sought.

He sekez seyntez bot seldene, *the* sorere he grypes,  
*That thus* clekys this corsaunt owte of *thir* heghe clyffez,  
 To carye forthe sicke a carle at close hym in siluere ;  
 Be Myghelle, of syche a makk I hafe myche wondyre  
 That euer owre soueraygne Lorde suffers hyme in heuene ;  
 And alle seyntez be syche, *that* seruez oure Lorde, 1168  
 I salle neuer no seynt bee, be my fadyre sawle !”

If all saints are  
like him no saint  
would he be.

Thane bouredez *the* bolde kyngz at Bedvere wordez,—  
 “*This* seynt haue I soghte, so helpe me owre Lorde !  
 ffor-thy brayd owtte *thi* brande, and broche hyme to *the*  
 herte ; 1172

Arthur bids him  
stab the monster  
to the heart, to  
make sure of him,  
for only once be-  
fore had he met  
with such a ter-  
rible foe.

Be sekere of this *sergeaunt*, he has me sore greuede !  
 I faghte noghte wyth syche a freke *this* fyftene wyntyrs,  
 Bot in *the* montez of Araby I mett syche *another* ;  
 He was *the* forcyere be ferre *that* had I nere fundene,  
 Ne had my fortune bene faire, fey had I leuede ! 1177  
 Onone stryke of his heuede, and stake it there-aftyre,  
 Gife it to thy sqwyere, fore he es wele horsede ;

He bids them cut  
off his head,

and bear it first  
to Sir Hoel,  
[leaf 66]

then to Barflete,  
and set it on the  
barbican.

His sword and  
shield and the  
giant's club are  
to be fetched from  
the hill.

They may take  
what treasure  
they will; all Ar-  
thur desires is the  
kirtle and the  
club.

The affair was  
kept a secret till  
break of day.

Then the people  
kneel before Ar-  
thur, and thank  
and praise him  
for slaying the  
giant.

Arthur ascribes  
all to God.

He bids his fol-  
lowers distribute

Bere it to *sir Howelle*, *that es in harde bandez*, 1180  
And byd hyme herte hym wele, his enmy es destruede !

Syne bere it to Bareflete, and brace it in yryne,  
And sett it on the barbycane, biernes to schewe.

My brande and my brode schelde apone *the bent lygge*z,  
On *the creeste of the cragge*, thare fyrste we encontrede,  
And *the clubb thar-by*, alle of clene irene,

*That many Cristene* has kyllde in *Constantyne landez* ;  
fferke to the farlande, and fetche me *that wapene*, 1188  
And late founde tille oure flete, in flode *thare* it lengez.

If thow wylle any tresour, take whate the lykez ;  
Haue I the kyrtylle and *the clubb*, I coueite noghte elles !"

Now *they* caire to *the cragge*, *thise comlyche knyghtez*,  
And broghte hyme *the brade schelde*, and his bryghte  
wapene, 1193

*The clubb and the cotte ahs*, Syr Kayous hym seluene,  
And kayres with *conquerour*, the kynggez to schewe ;  
That in couerte *the kyng*e helde close to hym seluene,  
Whilles clene day fro *the clowde clymbyd* on lofte.

Be that to courte was comene clamour fulle huge,  
And be-fore *the comlyche kyng*e they knelyd alle at  
ones,— 1199

"Welcome, oure liege lorde, to lang has thow duellyde !  
*Gouernour vndyr Gode*, graytheste and noble,  
To whame grace es graunted, and gyffene at his wille !  
Now thy comly come has comforthede vs alle !

Thow has in thy realtee reuengyde thy pople ! 1204  
Thurghe helpe of thy hande, thyne enmyse are struyede,  
That has thy renkes ouer-ronne, and refte theme their  
childyre !

Whas neuer rewme owte of araye so redyly releuede !"

Thane *the conquerour* cristenly carpez to his pople,  
"Thankes Gode," quod he, "of *this grace*, and no gome  
elles, 1209

ffor it was neuer manns dede, bot myghte of Hym selfene,  
Or myracle of hys modyre, *that mylde es tille alle* !"  
He somond than *the schippemeue* scharpely *ther-aftyre*,



To schake furthe *with the* schyre mene to schifte *the*  
gudez ; the giant's trea-  
sure among the  
clergy and people.

“ Alle *the* myche tresour that traytour had wommene,  
To comouns of the contré, clergy and *other*,  
Luke it be done and delte to my dere pople, 1216  
That none pleyne of theire parte, o peyne of *your* lyfez.”

He comande hys cosyne, *with* knyghtlyche wordez,  
To make a kyrke on *the* cragg, ther the corse lengez,  
And a couent there-in, Criste for to serfe, 1220  
In mynde of *that* martyre, *that* in *the* monte rystez.

A church and  
convent are to  
be built on the  
cliff.

Qwen Sir Arthur the kynge had kylled *the* gyaunt,  
Than blythely fro Bareffete he buskes one *the* morne,  
With his batelle one brede, by *tha* blythe stremes ; 1224

When the giant  
is slain, Arthur  
moves from Bar-  
ffete to Castle  
Blanc.

To-warde Castelle Blanke he chesez hym the waye,  
Thurghe a faire champayne, vndyr schalke hyllis ;  
The kyng fraystez a furth ouer the fresche strandez,  
ffoundez with his faire folke ouer as hym lykez : 1228 [leaf 66, back]  
ffurthe stepes that steryne, and strekez his tentis  
One a strenghe by a streme, in *thas* straytt landez.

Onone aftyre myddaye, in the mene while,  
Thare comez two messangers of tha fere marchez, 1232  
ffra *the* marschalle of Fraunce, and menskfully hym gretes,  
Be-soghte hyme of sucour, and saide hyme *thise* wordez,—

Then come two  
messengers from  
the Marshal of  
France, who ac-  
quaint Arthur

“ Sir, thi marschalle, *thi* mynistre, thy mercy be-sekez,  
Of thy mekille magestec, fore mendement of thi pople,  
Of *thise* marchez-mene, that thus are myskaryede,  
And thus merrede amange, maugree theire eghne ;  
I witter *the the* emperour es entirde in-to Fraunce,

with the mischief  
which the Em-  
peror Lucius is  
working in  
France,

With ostes of enmyse, orrible and huge ; 1240  
Brynnez in Burgoyne thy burghes so ryche,  
And brittenes thi baronage, that bieldez *thare*-in ;  
He encrochez kenely by craftez of armez,

Countrese and castelles *that* to thy coroun lañgez ; 1244  
Confoundez thy comouns, clergy and *other* ;  
Bot thow comfurth theme, *sir* kynge, couer salle they  
neuer !

seizing castles,  
confounding the  
commons,

He fellez forestez fele, forrayse thi landez, felling forests,

ffrysthez no fraunchez, bot fraisez the pople ; 1248  
 taking goods, *Thus* he fellez thi folke, and fangez theire gudez !  
 ffremedly the Franche tunge fey es be-lefede.

He drawes in-to douce Fraunce, as Duche-men tellez,  
 Dresside *with* his dragouns, dredfulle to schewe ; 1252  
 Alle to dede they dyghte *with* dynttys of swerddez,

killing dukes and  
 douze-peers.

Dukez and dusperes, *that* dreches thare-in ;  
 ffor-thy the lordez of the lande, ladys and *other*,  
 Prayes the for Petyr luffe, *the* apostylle of Rome,  
 Sen thow arte present in place, *that* thow wille profyre  
 make

Therefore they  
 desire Arthurs  
 help.

To *that* perilous prynce, be processe of tyme. 1258

He ayers by 3one hilles, 3one heghe holtez vndyr,  
 Hufes thare *with* hale strenghe of haythene kyngez ;  
 Helpe nowe for His lufe, that heghe in heuene sittez,  
 And talke tristly to theme, *that* thus vs destroys !"

He sends some  
 of his knights to  
 the emperor,

The kynge biddis *sir* Boice, " buske the be-lyfe !  
 Take *with* the *sir* Berille, and Bedwere the ryche, 1264  
*Sir* Gawayne and *sir* Gryme, these galyarde knyghtez,  
 And graythe 3owe to 3one grene wode, and gose ouer  
*ther* nedes ;

Saise to syr Lucius, to vn-lordly he wyrkez,  
 Thus letherly agaynes law to lede my pople ; 1268  
 I lette hyme or oghte lange, 3if me *the* lyffe happene,  
 Or many lyghte salle lawe, *that* hyme ouere lande folowes.  
 Comande hym kenely wyth crewelle wordez,

to bid him de-  
 part out of his  
 kingdom, or meet  
 him in battle.

Cayre owte of my kyngryke with his kydd knyghtez ;  
 In caase that he wille noghte, *that* cursede wreche,

[leaf 67]

Come for his curtaisie, and countere me ones ! 1274  
 Thane salle we rekkene fulle rathe, whatt ryghte *that* he  
 claymes,

Thus to ryot *this* rewme and raunsone the pople !  
 Thare salle it derely be delte *with* dynttez of handez :  
 The Dryghttene at Domesdaye dele as hyme lykes !"

The knights go  
 on their errand  
 glittering in gold  
 upon great steeds.

Now thei graythe theme to goo, thei s galyarde knyghttez,  
 Alle gleterande in golde, appone grete stedes, 1280  
 To-warde *the* grene wode, *that* *with* growndene wapyne,

To grete wele the grett lorde, that wolde be grefede sone.

Thise hende houez on a hille by *the* holte eynes,  
Be-helde *the* howsynge fulle hye of hathene kynges—

They see the luxurious camp of the heathen kings,

They herde in theire herbergage hundrethez fulle many,  
Hornez of olyfantez fulle helych blawene—

Palaisez proudliche pyghte, *that* palyd ware ryche,  
Of palle and of *purpure*, wyth *precyous* stones ; 1288

Pensels and pomelle of ryche prynce armez,  
Pighte in *the* playne mede, *the* pople to schewe.

And thane the Romayns so ryche had arayed *their* and the rich tents  
tentez, of the Romans.

On rawe by *the* ryuere, vndyr *the* round hillez, 1292

The emperour for honour ewyne in the myddes,

Wyth egles al ouer ennelled so faire :

And saw hyme and *the* sowdane, and senatours many,

The Roman emperor and the sultan are going to banquet together.

Seke to-warde a sale with sextene kynggez, 1296

Syland softly in, swettly by theme selfene,

To sowpe withe *that* soueraygne, ffulle selcouthe metez.

Nowe they wende ouer the watyre, *thise* wyrchipfulle  
knyghttez,

Thurgh *the* wode to *the* wone, there the wyese rystez ;

Reght as *they* hade weschene, and went to *the* table,

The knights present themselves. Sir Gawaine delivers the message,

Sir Wawayne *the* worthethy vn-wynly he spekes,—

“*The* myghte and *the* maiestee, *that* menskes vs alle,

That was merked and made thurgh *the* myghte of Hym  
seluene, 1304

Gyffe 3ow sytte in 3our sette, Sowdane and *other*,

That here are semblede in sale, vn-sawghte mott 3e  
worthe !

And *the* fals heretyke, *that* emperour hym callez,

That occupyes in erreure the empyre of Rome, 1308

Sir Arthure herytage, *that* honourable kyngz,

That alle his auncestres aughte bot Vtere hyme one,

That ilke cursynge *that* Cayme kaghte for his brothyre,

and upbraids with haughty words the Roman emperor ;

Cleffe one *the*, cukewalde, with croune ther thow lengez,

ffor the vnlordlyeste lede *that* I on lukede euer ! 1313

My lordemeruaihes hym mekyllle, mane, be my trouthe,

Why thow morthires his mene, *that* no mysse serues,  
 Comouns of *the* countré, clergye and *other*, 1316  
*That* are noghte coupable *ther-in*, ne knawes noght in  
 armez.

bids him depart,  
 or do battle with  
 [leaf 67, back]  
 the king.

ffor-thi the comelyche kyng, curtays and noble,  
 Comandez *the* kenely to kaire of his landes,  
 Ore elles for thy knyghthede encontre hyme ones ; 1320  
 Sen *thow* couettes the coroune, latte it be declarede !  
 I hafe dyschargide me here, chalange whoo lykez,  
 Be-fore alle thy cheualrye, cheftaynes and *other*.  
 Schape vs an ansuere, and schunte *thow* no lengere,  
*That* we may schifte at *the* schorte, and schewe to my  
 lorde." 1325

Then he asks for  
 an answer.

The emperor  
 replies,

The emperour ansuerde wyth austeryne wordez,  
 "3e are *with* myne enmy, sir Arthure hyme seluene !  
 It es none honour to me to owtray hys knyghttez,  
 Thoghe 3e bee irous mene, *that* ayres one his nedez ;  
 Bot say to thy soueraygne, I send hyme thes wordez,  
 Ne ware it for reuerence of my ryche table,  
 Thou sulde repent fulle rathe of *thi* ruyde wordez ! 1332  
 Siche a rebawde as *thowe* rebuke any lordez,  
 Wyth theire retenuz arrayede, fulle realle *and* noble !

threatening the  
 knights for their  
 audacity.

He will stay in  
 Arthurs land as  
 long as he pleases,

Here wille I suggourne, whilles me lefe thynkes,  
 And sythene seke in by Sayne *with* solace *ther*-aftere ;  
 Ensegge all *tha* cetese be *the* salte strandez, 1337  
 And seyne ryde in by Rone, *that* rynnez so faire,  
 And of alle his ryche castelles rusche doune *the* wallez ;  
 I salle noghte lefe in Paresche, by processe of tyme,  
 His parte of a pechelyne, proue whene hyme lykes !"

and destroy his  
 cities and castles.

Whereupon Sir  
 Gawaine desires  
 himself to fight  
 with him,

"Now, certez," sais *sir* Wawayne, "myche wondyre  
 haue I, 1342

*That* syche an alfyne as *thow* dare speke syche wordez !  
 I had leuer *thene* alle Fraunce, *that* heuede es of rewmes,  
 ffyghte *with* the faythefully one felde be oure one."

but Sir Gayous,  
 uncle to the  
 Roman emperor,  
 answers and  
 charges the Brit-  
 ish knights with  
 being braggarts.

Thane answers *sir* Gayous fulle gobbede wordes,—  
 Was eme to *the* emperour, and erle hyme selfene,—  
 "Euere ware *thes* Bretons braggers of olde ! 1348

Loo ! how he brawles hyme for hys bryghte wedes,  
 As he myghte bryttyne vs alle *with* his brande ryche !  
 3itt he berkes myche boste, 3one boy *there* he standes !"

Thane greuyde *sir* Gawayne at his grett wordes, 1352  
 Graythes to-warde *the* gome *with* grucchande herte ;  
*With* hys stelyne brande he strykes of hys heuede,  
 And sterttes owtte to hys stede, and *with* his stale  
 wendes !

On this Sir Gawayne rushes at him and strikes off his head.

Thurghe *the* wacches *they* wente, thes wirchipfulle  
 knyghtez, 1356

Then the British knights fly with all speed.

And fyndez in theire fare-waye wondyrlyche many ;  
 Ouer *the* watyre *they* wente by wyghtnesse of horses,  
 And tuke wynde as *they* walde by *the* wodde hemmes.  
 Thane folous frekly one fote frekkes ynewe, 1360

And of *the* Romayns arrayed appone ryche stedes,  
 Chasede thurghe a champayne oure cheualrous knyghtez,  
 Tille a cheefe forest, one schalke whitte horses.  
 Bot a freke alle in fyne golde, and fretted in salle, 1364  
 Come *forther*maste on a fresone, in flawmande wedes ;  
 A faire floreschte spere in fewtyre he castes,  
 And folowes faste one owre folke, and freschelye aseryez,

The Romans give chase.

Thane *sir* Gawayne the gude appone a graye stede,  
 He gryppes hym a grete spere, and graythely hyme hittez ;  
 Thurghe *the* guttez in-to *the* gorre he gyrdes hyme ewyne,  
 That the groundene stele glydez to his herte ! 1371

[leaf 68]  
 The foremost of the pursuers is slain by Sir Gawayne.

The gome and *the* grette horse at *the* grounde lyggez,  
 ffulle gryselyche gronande, for grefe of his woundez.  
 Thane presez a preker ine, fulle proudlye arayede,  
 That beres alle of pourpour, palyde *with* syluer :  
 Byggly on a broune stede he *profers* fulle large. 1376

He was a paynyme of Perse *that thus* hyme *persuede*.  
 Sir Boys vn-abaiste alle he buskes hyme a-gaynes,  
*With* a bustous launce he berez hyme thurghe,  
*That the* breme and *the* brade schelde appone *the* bente  
 lyggez ! 1380

Another knight, a paynim of Persia, is thrust through by Sir Bois.

And he bryngez furt<sup>h</sup>er the blade, *and* bownez to his  
 felowez.

Sir Feltemour  
seeks to avenge  
Sir Gayous,

Thane *sir Feltemour* of myghte, a man mekylle praysede,  
Was mouede one his manere, and manacede fulle faste;  
He graythes to *sir Gawayne* graythely to wyrche, 1384  
ffor grefe of *sir Gayous*, that es one grounde leuede.

but Sir Gawayne  
cleaves him  
asunder.

Thane *sir Gawayne* was glade; agayne hyme he rydez,  
Wyth Galuth his gude swerde graythely hyme hyttez;  
The knyghte one *the coursere* he cleuede in sondyre, 1388  
Clenlyche fro *the* croune his corse he dyuysyde,  
And *thus* he killez *the* knyghte with his kydd wapene!

Then a rich man  
of Rome suggests  
a retreat.

Than a ryche mane of Rome relyede to his byerns,—  
“It salle repent vs fulle sore and we ryde forthire!  
3one are bolde bosturs, that syche bale wyrkez; 1393  
It be-felle hym fulle foule, that *thame* so fyrste namede.”

The rich Romans  
return,

Thane *the* riche Romainys retournes *thaire* brydilles  
To *thaire* tentis in tene, telles theire lordez  
How *sir Marschalle de Mowne* es on *the* monte lefede,  
ffore-justyde at that journee, for his grett japez.  
Bot thare chalez one oure mene cheuallrous knyghtez,  
ffyfe thosande folke appone faire stedes, 1400  
ffaste to a foreste ouer a felle watyr,  
That fillez fro *the* falow see fyfty myle large.

but five thousand  
horsemen still  
pursue the  
knights,

and fall upon  
an ambush of  
Britons,

Thare ware Bretons enbuschide, and banarettez noble,  
Of *the* cheualrye cheefe of *the* kyngez chambyre, 1404  
Seese theme chaze oure mene, and changene *theire* horsez,  
And choppe doune cheftaynes, that they moste chargyde.

who break out  
suddenly on  
them,

Thane *the* enbuschement of Bretons brake owte at ones,  
Brothely at banere, and Bedwyne knyghtez, 1408  
Arrestede of *the* Romainys, that by *the* fyrthe rydez,  
Alle *the* realeste renkes that to Rome lengez;  
Thay iche on *the* enmyse and egerly strykkys,

with shouts of  
“Arthur.”

Erles of Inglande, and “*Arthure!*” ascryes, 1412  
Thrughe brenes and bryghte schelde, brestez they thyrl,  
Bretons of the boldeste with *theire* bryghte swerde.

[leaf 68, back]

The Romans are  
defeated and  
driven back,

Thare was Romainys ouer-redyne, and ruydly wondyde,  
Arrestede as rebawdez, with ryotous knyghttez! 1416  
The Romaines owte of araye remouede at ones,  
And rydes awaye in a rowtte, for reddoure it semys!

To the *senatour* Petyr a *saides-mane es commyne*,  
 And saide, "*sir*, *sekyrly*, *3our seggez* are *supprysside* !"  
 Than tene thowsande mene he semblede at ones,  
 And sett sodanly one oure seggez, by the *salte strandez* ;  
 Than ware Bretons abaiste, and greuede a lyttile,  
 Bot 3it the *banerettez bolde*, and *bachellers noble*, 1424  
 Brekes that *battailles* <sup>1</sup> with *brestez* of *stedes* ;  
 Sir Boice and his bolde mene myche bale wyrkes !  
 The Romaynes redyes *thane*, arrayez *thame* better,  
 And al to-ruscheez oure mene withe theire ryste horsez,  
 Arestede of the richeste of the *Rounde Table*,  
 Ouer-rydez oure rerewarde, and grette rewthe wyrkes !

but the Senator  
 Peter sends ten  
 thousand men.

Thane the Bretons on the *bente habyddez* no lengere,  
 Bot fleede to the *foreste*, and the *feelde leuede* ; 1432  
 Sir Berylle es borne downe and *sir Boice* taken,  
 The beste of oure bolde mene vnbythely wondyde ;  
 Bot 3itt oure stale one a strenghe stotais a lyttile,  
 Alle-to-stonayed with the *stokes* <sup>2</sup> of the *steryneknyghtez* ;  
 Made sorowe fore theire *soueraygne*, that so *thare* was  
 nomene,

The Britons are  
 repulsed, and  
 fly to the forest.

Sir Beryll is borne  
 down and  
 Boice taken,

but again they  
 make a little  
 stand,

grieving for the  
 loss of their  
 leader, and pray  
 for succour,

Be-soughte Gode of socure, sende whene hym lykyde !

Than *commez sir Idrus*, armede vp at alle ryghttez,  
 Wyth fyue hundrethe mene appone faire stedes, 1440  
 ffraynez faste at oure folke freschely *thare-aftyre*,  
 3if *ther* frendez ware ferre, that one the *felde foundide*.  
 Thane sais *sir Gawayne*, "so me God helpe !  
 We hafe bene chased to daye, and chullede as hares,  
 Rebuyked with Romaynes appone theire ryche stedez,  
 And we lurkede vndyr lee as lowrande wreches ! 1446  
 I luke neuer one my lorde the dayes of my lyfe,  
 And weso lytherly hyme helpe, that hymeso welelykede !"

Sir Idrus comes  
 to their aid with  
 five hundred  
 men.

Sir Gawaine la-  
 ments the check  
 which Arthur's  
 men had re-  
 ceived.

Thane the Bretons brothely brochez theire stedeز,  
 And boldly in batelle appone the bent rydes ; 1450  
 Alle the ferse mene be-fore frekly ascryes,  
 fferkand in the *foreste*, to freschene *thame selfene*.  
 The Romaynes thane redyly arrayes theme bettyre,

The British re-  
 turn to the fray.

The Romans pre-  
 pare themselves  
 against them.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *baitailles*.

<sup>2</sup> strokes.

One rawe on a rowm felde, reghttez theire wapyns,  
 By *the* ryche reuare, and rewles *the* pople ;  
 And with reddour *sir* Boice es in areste haldene. 1456

Now thei semblede vnsaughte by *the* salte strandez ;  
 Saddly theis sekere menn settys *theire* dynttez,  
 With lufly launcez one lofte they luyschene to-gedyres,  
 In Lorayne so lordlye on leppande stedes. 1460

A fierce battle  
 ensues.

Thare ware gomes thurgh-e-girde with grundyne wapynes,  
 Grisely gayspande with grucchande lotes !  
 Grete lordes of Greke greffede so hye ;

[leaf 69]

Swyftly with swerdes, they swappene there-aftyre, 1464  
 Swappez doune ffulle sweperlye swelltande knyghtez,<sup>1</sup>  
 That alle swellttez one swarthe, that they ouer-swyngene,  
 So many sweys in swoghe swounande att ones !

Sir Gawaine does  
 mighty deeds of  
 valour.

Syr Gaweayne the gracyous fulle graythelye he wyrkkes,  
 The grettteste he gretez wyth grieslye wondēs ;  
 Wyth Galuth he gyrdez doune fulle galyarde knyghtez,  
 ffore greefe of *the* grett lorde so grymlye he strykez !  
 He rydez furthe ryallye and redely there-aftyre, 1472  
 Thare this realle renke was in areste haldene ;

The Senator Peter  
 comes against  
 him,

He ryfez *the* rannuke stele, he ryghttez *theire* brenez,  
 Andrestethemethe ryche mane, andradeto his strenghes.  
 The senatour Peter thane persewede hyme aftyre, 1476  
 Thurghethe presse of *the* pople, wyth his pryce knyghttes ;  
 Appertly fore *the* prysonere proues his strenghes,  
 Wyth prekers the proudeste that to *the* presse lengez ;  
 Wrothely one the wrange handes *sir* Gawayne he strykkes,  
 Wyth a wapene of were vnwynnly hyme hittez ; 1481

but in spite of  
 him Sir Gawaine  
 rescues Sir Boice.

The breny one *the* bakhalf he brystez in sondyre !  
 Bot ȝit he broghte forthe *sir* Boyce, for alle *theire* bale  
 biernez !

Rejoiced at this  
 the British press  
 on more boldly.

Thane *the* Bretones boldely braggene *theire* tromppez,  
 And fore blysse of *sir* Boyce was broghte owtte of bandez,  
 Boldely in batelle they bere doune knyghtes ; 1486  
 With brandes of brōune stele *they* brettene maylez ;  
*Thay* stekede stedys in stoure with stelene wapynes,

<sup>1</sup> MS. knynghtez.



And alle stewede wyth strenghe, *that stode theme agaynes!*

Sir Idrus fitz Ewayne *thane* "Arthure!" ascryeez,

Assemblez one *the* senatour wyth sextene knyghttez,

Of *the* sekereste mene *that* to oure syde lengede. 1492

Sodanly in a soppe they sett in att ones,

floynes faste att *the* fore breste with flawmande swerdez,

And feghttes faste att *the* fronte freschely *thare*-aftyre ;

ffelles fele on *the* felde appone *the* ferrere syde, 1496

ffey on *the* faire felde by *tha* fresche strandez.

Sir Idrus, with sixteen knights, attacks the senator,

Bot *sir* Idrus fytz Ewayne anters hyme seluene,

And enters in anly, and egyrly strykez,

Sekez to *the* senatour and sescz his brydille, 1500

Vnsaughtely he saide hyme *these* sittande wordez,—

"3elde *the*, *sir*, 3apely, 3ife *thou thi* lyfe 3ernez,

fforegyftez *that thou* gyffe may, *thou 3eme* now *the* selfene ;

ffore dredlez dreche *thow*, or droppe any wylez, 1504

Thow salle dy *this* 3aye thorowe dyntt of my handez!"

"I ascente," *quod the* senatour, "so me Criste helpe !

So *that* I be safe broghte be-fore *the* kyng seluene ;

Raunsone me resonabillye, as I may ouer-reche, 1508

Aftyre my renttez in Rome may redyly forthire."

and takes him prisoner.

The senator desires to be brought to the king.

Thane answers *sir* Idrus with austeryne wordez,

"Thow salle hafe condycyone, as *the* kyng lykes,

Whene *thow* comes to *the* kyth there the courtte haldez ;

In caase his concelle bee to kepe the no langere, 1513

To be killydeat his commandment his knyghttez be-fore."

Thay ledde hyme furthe in *the* rowte, and lached ofe

his wedes,

Lefte hym wyth Lyonelle and Lowelle hys brothire.

O-lawe in *the* launde *thane*, by *the* lythe strandez,

Sir Lucius lygge-mene <sup>1</sup> loste are fore euer !

The senatour Peter es prysoner takyne ! 1519

Of Perce and of Porte Iaffe fulle many price knyghtez,

And myche pople wyth alle perischede *thane* selfene !

ffor presse of *the* passage, they plunged <sup>2</sup> at onez !

Thare myghte mene see Romayne rewfully wondyde,

Sir Idrus answers him roughly.

[leaf 69, back]

He gives the senator into the charge of Sir Lionel and Sir Lowell.

Many of the Romans are slain.

<sup>1</sup> Or lygge-mene.

<sup>2</sup> MS. repeats they plunged.

Ouer-redyne *with* renkes of the Round Table ! 1524

In *the* raike of *the* furthe they rightene *theire* brenys,  
*That* rane alle one reede blode redylle alle ouer ;  
 They raughte in *the* rerewarde fulle rytous knyghtez,  
 ffor raunsone<sup>1</sup> of rede golde and realle stedys ; 1528  
 Radly relayes, and restez *theire* horsez,

The knights ride  
back towards the  
king, and send  
him the news of  
their success.

In rowtte to *the* ryche kynge they rade al at once.

A knyghte cayrez be-fore, and to *the* kynge telles,—  
 “Sir, here *commes* thy messangerez *with* myrthez fro  
*the* mountez, 1532

*Thay* hafe bene machede to daye *with* mene of *the* marchez,  
 ffore-magled in *the* marras *with* meruailous knyghtez !  
 We hafe foughtene in faithe, by 3one fresche strandez,  
*With* *the* frekkeste folke that to *thi* foo langez ; 1536  
 ffyfty thosannde one felde of ferse mene of armez,

They tell him  
that they have  
slain fifty thou-  
sand men,

Wyth-in a furlange of waye, fay ere by-lefede !

We hafe eschewede *this* chekke, thurgh the chance of oure  
 Lorde,

Of *tha* cheualrous mene that chargede thy pople ! 1540

and taken pri-  
soners the chief  
chancellor and  
the senator Pe-  
ter, as well as  
many paynims.

The cheefe chaunchelere of Rome, a cheftayne fulle noble,  
 Wille aske *the* chartyre of pesse for charitee hym selfene ;  
 And the senatour Petire to presoner es takyne.

Of Perse and of Porte Iaffe paynymmez ynewe 1544

*Commes* prekande in the presse, *with* thy prysse knyghttez,  
*With* pouerte in *thi* presone *theire* paynez to drye.

I be-seke 3ow, sir, say whate 3owe lykes,

Whethire 3e suffyre theme saughte, or sone delyuerde.

Arthur may de-  
mand sixty  
horse-loads of  
silver for the  
senator,  
and for the chan-  
cellor, chariots  
full of gold.

3e may haue fore *the* senatour sextie horse chargede

Of siluer be Seterdaye, fulle sekyrly payede,

And for *the* cheefe chauncelere, *the* cheualere noble,

Charottez chokkefulle charegyde *with* golde ; 1552

The remenaunt of *the* Romainez be in areste haldene,

Tille *thiere* renttez in Rome be rightewissly knawene.

I be-seke 3ow, sir, certyfy 3one lordez,

3if 3e wille send *thame* ouer *the* see, or kepe *thame* 3our  
 selfene. 1556

The other pri-  
soners may be  
kept until their  
rents are known.

<sup>1</sup> MS. raun/sone.

Alle *3our* sekyre mene for sothe sounde are by-leuyde,  
Saue *sir* Ewayne fytz Henry es in *the* side wonddede."

All Arthur's men  
have escaped,  
save Sir Ewayne,  
who is wounded.

"Crist be thankyde," *quod* the kyng, "and hys clere  
modyre,

[leaf 70]  
The king rejoices.

That *3owe* comforthede and helpede be crafte of hyme  
selfene ; 1560

Skilfulle skomfyture he skifte as hym lykez,  
Is none so skathlye may scape, ne skewe fro his handez ;  
Desteny and doughtynes of dedys of armes,  
Alle es demyd and delte at Dryghtynez wille ! 1564

The fate of battle,  
he says, is in the  
hands of God.

I kwe the thanke for thy come, it comfortes vs alle !  
Sir knyghte," sais *the* conquerour, "so me Criste helpe !  
I *3if* the for thy thy*3*andez Tolouse *the* riche,  
The tolle and *the* tachmentez, tauernez and *other*, 1568  
*The* towne and *the* tenementez with towrez so hye,  
That towchez to *the* temporaltee, whilles my tyme lastez.

He thanks the  
knight for his  
tidings, and gives  
him for reward  
the city of To-  
louse.

Bot say to *the* senatour I sende hyme *thes* wordez,  
Thare salle no siluer hym saue, bot Ewayne recouere ;  
I had leuer see hym synke one the salte strandez,  
Than the seegge ware seke, *that* es so sore wonddede ;  
I salle disseuere that sorte, so me Criste helpe ! 1575  
And sett theme fulle solytarie, in sere kynggez landez :  
Salle he neuer sownde see his seynowres in Rome,  
Ne sitt in *the* assemblé, in syghte wyth his feris ;

The senator shall  
not be ransomed  
save Sir Ewayne  
recovers.

ffor it comes to no kyng *that* conquerour es holdene,  
To comone with his captifis fore couatys of siluer : 1580  
It come neuer of knyghthede, knawe it *3if* hyme lyke,  
To carpe of coseri, whene captyfis ere takyne ;  
It aughte to no presoners to prese no lordez,  
Ne come in presens of prynce, whene parties are mouede.  
Comaunde *3one* constable, *the* castelle *that* *3emes*,  
That he be clenlyche kepede, and in close haldene ;  
He salle haue maundement to-morne or myddaye be  
roungene, 1587

The others shall  
be divided into  
different coun-  
tries.

Arthur holds that  
to accept ransom  
becomes not a  
king.

They are to take  
the senator to  
the constable and  
bid him keep him  
safe.

To what marche *thay* salle merke, with manger to lengene."

*Thay* conuaye this captyfe with clené mene of armez,  
And kend hyme to *the* constable, als *the* kyng byddez ;

The knights  
obey, and then

return to Arthur  
to give him the  
emperor's mes-  
sage.

Arthur greatly  
commends his  
knights for their  
boldness, and  
promises them  
rewards.

In the morning  
Sir Cadur and his  
knights are bid  
to take the pri-  
soners

[leaf 70, back]  
to Paris, and to  
give them into  
the care of the  
provost.

The British  
knights depart  
towards Chartres.

But the emperor  
had dispatched a  
chosen band to  
intercept them.

And seyne to Arthure *they* ayre, and egerly hym towchez  
The answer of *the* emperour, irows of dedez. 1592

Thane *sir* Arthure, one erthe atheliste of *othere*,  
At euene at his awene borde auantid his lordez,—

“Me aughte to honour theme in erthe ouer alle *other*  
thynggez,

*That thus* in myne absens awnters *theme* selfene ; 1596  
I salle theme luffe whylez I lyffe, so me our Lorde helpe !  
And gyfe *them* landys fulle large, whare theme beste lykes ;  
Thay salle noghte losse, one *this* layke, 3if me lyfe happene,  
*That thus* are lamede for my lufe be *this* lythe strandez.”

Bot in *the* clere daweyng, *the* dere kynge hym selfene  
Comaundyd *sir* Cadore *with* his dere knyghttes,  
*Sir* Cleremus, *sir* Cleremonde, *with* clene mene of armez,  
*Sir* Clowdmur, *sir* Clegis, to conuaye theis lordez ; 1604  
*Sir* Boyce and *sir* Berelle *with* baners displayede,  
*Sir* Bawdwyne, *sir* Bryane, and *sir* Bedwere *the* ryche,  
*Sir* Raynalde and *sir* Richere, Rawlaunde childyre,  
To ryde *with the* Romaynes in rowtte wyth theire feres.

“Prekez now preualye to Parys the ryche,  
Wyth Petir the pryssonere and his price knyghttez ;  
Be-teche *tham the* proueste, in presens of lordez,  
O payne and o perelle *that* pendes there-too, 1612  
That they be weisely wachede and in warde holdene,  
Wardede of warantizez *with* wyrchipulle knyghttez ;  
Wagge hyme wyghte mene, and woonde for no siluyre ;  
I haffe warnede *that* wy, be ware 3ife hyme lykes !”

**N**ow bownes *the* Bretones, als *the* kynge byddez, 1617  
Buskez theire batelles, theire baners displayez ;  
To-wardez Chartris they chese, thes cheualrous knyghttez,  
And in the champayne lande fulle faire *thay* eschewede :  
ffor *the* emperour of myghte had ordande hym selfene  
*Sir* Vtolfe and *sir* Ewandyre, two honourable kyngez,  
Erles of *the* Oriente, *with* austeryne knyghttez,  
Of *the* awntrouseste mene *that* to his oste lengede, 1624  
*Sir* Sextynour of Lyby and senatours many,

The kyng of Surrye hym selfe with Sarzynes ynowe,  
 The senatour of Sutere wyth sowmes fulle huge, 1627  
 Whas assygnede to *that* courte be sent of his peres,  
 Traise to-warde Troys *the* tresone<sup>1</sup> to wyrke,  
 To hafe be-trappede with a trayne oure trauelande  
 knyghttez,

That hade persayfede *that* Peter at Parys sulde lenge,  
 In presonne with *the* prouoste, his paynez to drye. 1632  
 ffor-thi they buskede theme bownne with baners dis-  
 playede,

In the buskayle of his waye, on blonkkes fulle hugge ;  
 Planttez theme in the pathe with powere arrayede,  
 To pyke vp *the* presoners fro oure pryse knyghttez.

They take up a  
 position in the  
 path of Arthur's  
 men.

Syr Cadore of Cornewalle comaundez his peris, 1637  
 Sir Clegis, *sir* Cleremus, *sir* Cleremownde *the* noble,

“Here es *the* close of Clyme with clewes so hye ;  
 Lokez the contree be clere, the corners are large ; 1640  
 Discoueres now sekerly skrogges and *other*,

Sir Cador keeps  
 a sharp look out,

That no skathelle in *the* skroggez skorne vs here-aftyre ;  
 Loke 3e skyfte it so *that* vs no skathe lympe,  
 ffor na skomfitoure in skoulkery is skomfite euer.” 1644

N<sup>ow</sup> *they* hye to *the* holte, thes harageous knyghttez,  
 To herkene of *the* hye mene to helpene theis lordez ;  
 ffyndez theme helmede hole and horsesyde on stedys,  
 Houande one *the* hye waye by *the* holte hemmes. 1648

and discovers the  
 enemy, armed  
 and mounted,  
 waiting by the  
 skirts of a wood.

With knyghttly contenaunce Sir Clegis hym selfene  
 Kryes to *the* companye, and carpes thees wordez,—

“Es there any kyde knyghte, kaysere or *other*,  
 Wille kyth for his kyng lufe craftes of armes ? 1652

Sir Clegis chal-  
 lenges any knight  
 among them to  
 the combat.

We are comene fro *the* kyng of *this* lythe ryche,  
 That knawene es for conquerour, corownde in erthe,  
 His ryche retenuz here alle of his Round Table,  
 To ryde with *that* realle in rowtt where hyme lykes ;  
 We seke justynge of werre, 3if any wille happyne, 1657  
 Of *the* jolyeste mene ajuggede be lordes ;

<sup>1</sup> MS. *the* tresone the tresone.

[leaf 71]

An earl of the  
Roman party up-  
braids Arthur  
and his knights.

If here be any hathelle mane, erle or *other*,  
That for *the* *emperour* lufe wille awntere hym selfene."  
And ane erle *thane* in angere answers hym sone,—  
“Me angers at Arthure, and att his hathelle bierns,  
That thus in his *errour* occupyes theis rewmes ;  
And owtrayes *the* *emperour*, his *erthely* lorde ! 1664  
The araye and *the* *ryalltez* of *the* *Rounde* *Table*  
Es wyth *rankour* rehersed in rewmes fulle many ;  
Of oure renttez of Rome syche reuelle he haldys,  
He<sup>1</sup> salle *zife* *resounne* fulle rathe, *zif* vs reghte happenē,  
That many salle repente that in his rowtte rydez, 1669  
ffor the reklesse roy so rewlez hym selfene !”

Sir Clegis  
answers him,

“A !” sais *sir* Clegis *thane*, “so me Criste helpe !  
I knawe be thi carpynge a cowntere *the* semes !  
Bot be *thou* *auditoure*, or erle, or *emperour* thi selfene,  
Appone Arthurez by-halue I answere the sone : 1674  
The renke so realle, *that* rewlez vs alle,  
The ryotous mene and *the* *ryche* of *the* *Rounde* *Table*,  
He has araysede his accownte, and redde alle his rollez,  
ffor he wyllē gyfe a rekenyng that rewe salle aftyre,  
That alle *the* *ryche* salle repēte *that* to Rome langez,  
Or *the* *rereage* be requit<sup>2</sup> of rentez *that* he claymez !

and boasts that  
he will punish  
well the Romans.

He desires three  
courses of war  
with any knights  
whom they will  
send.

We crafe of *your* *curtairie* three coursez of werre, 1681  
And claymez of knyghthode, take kepe to *your* selfene !  
*3e* do bott trayne vs to daye wyth *trofelande* wordez !  
Of syche *trauaylande* mene trecherye me thynkes ! 1684  
Sende owte sadly certayne knyghttez,  
Or say me sekerly sothe, for-sake *zif* *zowe* lykes.”

The king of Syria  
insinuates that  
Sir Clegis may  
not be of noble  
ancestry.

**T**thane sais the kynge of Surry, “Alls saue me oure  
Lorde !

*3if* *thow* hufe alle *the* daye, *thou* bees noghte delyuerede,  
Bot *thow* sekerly ensure wyth certeyne knyghttez, 1689  
*That* *thi* cote and *thi* breste be knawene *with* lordez,  
Of armes of ancestrye, entyrde *with* londez.”

Sir Clegis replies  
scornfully

“Sir kyng,” sais *sir* Clegys, “fulle knyghttly *thow* askez :  
I trowe it be for cowardys *thow* carpes thes wordez :

\* MS. Ne.

<sup>2</sup> Looks like requiter in MS.

Myne armez are of ancestrye enueryde with lordes,  
 And has in banere bene borne sene *sir Brut* tyme ;  
 At the cité of Troye *that tymme* was ensegede, 1696  
 Ofte seene in asawtte with certayne knyghttez,  
 ffor *the Borghte broghte* vs and alle oure bolde elders,  
 To Bretayne *the braddere*, with-in chippe-burdez."

that his ancestors  
 were at the siege  
 of Troy.

"Sir," sais *sir Sextenour*, "saye what *the lykez*,  
 And we salle suffyre the, als vs beste semes ; 1701  
 Luke thi troumppez be trussede, and trofulle no lengere,  
 ffor *thoghe thou tarye alle the daye*, the tyddes no bettyr !  
 ffor there salle neuer Romaine, *that in my rowtt rydez*,  
 Be with rebawdez rebuykyde, whills I in werlde regne !"

Sir Sextenour  
 declares that the  
 Romans are  
 ready for the  
 fray.

Thane *sir Clegis* to *the kynge* a lyttill enclinede,  
 Kayres to *sir Cadore*, and knyghtly hym tellez,— 1707  
 "We hafe foundene in *zone firthe*, floreschede with leues,  
*The flour of the faireste folke that to thi foo* langez,  
 fifty thosandez of folke of ferse mene of armez,  
*That faire* are fewteride on frounte vndyr *zone fre* bowes ;  
 They are enbuschede one blonkkes, with baners dis-  
 playede, 1712

Sir Clegis tells  
 Sir Cadore that a  
 vast number of  
 the enemy are  
 drawn up in the  
 wood,

[leaf 71, back]

In *zone bechene* wode appone the waye sydes.  
 Thay hafe the furthe for-sette alle of *the faire* watyre,  
 That fayfully of force feghte vs byhowys ;  
 ffor thus vs schappes to daye, shortly to telle, 1716  
 Whedyre we schone or schewe, schyft as *the lykes*."

and suggests a  
 retreat.

"Nay," quod Cadore, "so me Criste helpe !  
 It ware schame *that we scholde schone* for so lytyle !  
 Sir Lancelott salle neuer laughe, *that with the kyng*  
 lengez, 1720

Sir Cadore scorns  
 to retreat.

Never shall Sir  
 Lancelot laugh  
 at him.

That I sulde lette my waye for lede appone erthe ;  
 I salle be dede and vndone ar I here dreche,  
 ffor drede of any doggesone in *zone dyme* schawes !"

He will die be-  
 fore he turn back  
 for any dog's son  
 of them all.

Syr Cadore thane knyghtly comfortes his pople, 1724  
 And with corage kene he karpes *thes wordes*,—

Sir Cadore exhorts  
 his men, and tells  
 them of the good  
 deeds of Arthur.

"Thynk one *the valyaunt prynce that vesettez* vs euer,  
 With landez and lordcheppez, whare vs beste lykes ;  
 That has vs ducherés delte, and dubbyde vs knyghttez,

Gifene vs gersoms and golde, and gardwynes many,  
 Grewhoundez and grett horse, and alkyne gamnes,  
 That gaynez tille any gome, that vndyre God leuez ;  
 Thynke one riche renoune of *the* Rounde Table, 1732  
 And late it neuer be refte vs fore Romaine in erthe ;  
 ffeyne 3ow noghte feyntly, ne frythes no wapyns,  
 Bot luke 3e fyghte faythefully, frekes 3our selfene ;  
 I walde be wellyde alle qwyke, and quarterde in sondre,  
 Bot I wyrke my dede, whils I in wrethe lenge." 1737

He dubs some of  
 them knights.

Than this doughtty duke dubbyd his knyghttez,  
 Ioneke and Askanere, Aladuke and *other*,  
 That ayerez were of Esexe, and alle *thase* este marchez ;  
 Howelle and Hardelfe, happy in armez, 1741  
 Sir Herylle and sir Herygalle, *thise* harageouse knyghttez.  
 Than the souerayne assignede certayne lordez,  
 Sir Wawayne, *sir* Vryelle, sir Bedwere *the* ryche, 1744  
 Raynalde and Richeere, and Rowlandez chilydre,—

To certain of  
 them he gives  
 the prisoner in  
 charge.

If he is defeated,  
 they are to con-  
 vey him to some  
 castle, or to Ar-  
 thur.

"Takez kepe one this prynce *with* 3oure price knyghtez,  
 And 3ife we in *the* stour withstondene the better,  
 Standez here in this stede, and stirrez no forthire ; 1748  
 And 3if *the* chaunce falle *that* we bee ouer-charggede,  
 Eschewes to some castelle, and chewyse 3our selfene ;  
 Or ryde to *the* riche kyng 3if 3ow roo happyne, 1751  
 And bidde hym come redily to rescewe hys biernez."

The British pre-  
 pare for the fight.

And than the Bretons brothely enbrassez *theire*  
 scheldez,

Braydez one bacenetez, and buskes *theire* launcez.  
 Thus he fitez his folke, and to *the* felde rydez,  
 fff hundreth one a frounte fewtrede at onez ! 1756

[leaf 72]

With trompes *thay* trine, and trappede stedes,  
 With cornettes and clarions, and clergialle notes ;  
 Schokkes in *with* a schakke, and schontez no langere,  
 There schawes ware scheene vndyr *the* schire eynez.  
 And thane the Romainez rowtte remowes a lyttile,  
 Raykes *with* a rerewarde *thas* realle knyghttez ; 1762  
 So raply *thay* ryde thare, that alle *the* rowte rynggez,  
 Of ryues and rannke stele, and ryche golde maylez.

The fight begins.



Thane schotte owtte of *the* schawe schiltrounis many,  
With sharpe wapyngs of were schotande at ones :

The kynge of Lebe be-fore the wawarde he ledez,  
And alle his lele lige mene o laundone ascriez. 1768

The king of Lebe  
leads on the  
enemy.

Thane this cruelle kynge castis in fewtire,  
Kaghte hym a couerde horse, and his course haldez,  
Beris to *sir* Berille, and brathely hym hittes,  
Throwghe golet and gorgere he hurtez hym ewyne !  
The gome and *the* grette horse at *the* grounde liggez,  
And gretez graythely to Gode, and gyffes hym *the* saule !  
Thus es Berelle the bolde broghte owtte of lyue,  
And byddez aftyre beryelle, *that* hym beste lykez. 1776

He attacks Sir  
Berill and slays  
him.

And thane *sir* Cador of Cornewayle es carefuller in herte,  
Be-cause of his kynyse-mane, *that thus* es myscaryede ;

Sir Cador is over-  
whelmed with  
grief for his loss.

Vmbeclappes the cors, and kyssez hym ofte,  
Gerte kepe hym couerte *with* his clere knyghttez. 1780

Thane laughs the Lebe kynge, and alle on lowdemeles,—  
“3one lorde es lyghttede ! me lykes the bettyre !

The king of Lebe  
ridicules him.

He salle noghte dere vs to daye, the deuylle haue [his]  
bones !”

“3one kynge,” said Cador, “karpes fulle large, 1784  
Be-cause he killyd *this* kene ; Criste hafe *thi* saule !

He salle hafe corne bote, so me Criste helpe !  
Or I kaire of *this* coste, we salle encontre ones !

Sir Cador vows  
vengeance.

So may *the* wynde weile turnne, I quytte hym or ewyne,  
Sothely hym selfene, or summ of his ferez !” 1789

Thane *sir* Cador *the* kene knyghttly he wyrkez,  
Cryez, “A ! Cornewale,” and castez in fewtere,

Girdez streke thourghe *the* stour on a stede ryche !  
Many steryne mane he steride by strenghe of hym one !

He performs  
great deeds of  
valour.

Whene his spere was sprongene, he spede hym fulle 3erne,  
Swappede owtte *with* a swerde, that swykede hym neuer,

When his lance  
is broken he  
fights with his  
sword.

Wroghte wayes fulle wyde, and wounded knyghttez ;  
Wyrkez (his) (ine) wayfare fulle werkand sydez, 1797

And hewes of *the* hardieste halsez in sondyre,  
That alle blendez *with* blode thare his blanke rynnez !

So many biernez the bolde broughte owt of lyfe, 1800

Then the king of  
Lebe ironically  
praises his deeds.

[leaf 72, back]

The new-made  
knights, with  
sound of trum-  
pets and spears  
in rest, rush to  
the fray.

The king of Lebe  
comes against  
them.

He makes great  
havoc among the  
new men.

Had not Sir  
Clegis and Sir  
Clement come,  
the new men had  
gone to nought.

Then Sir Cador  
puts his lance in  
rest, and strikes  
the king of Lebe  
fair on the hel-  
met.

The heathen king  
falls to the

Tittez tirauntez doune, and temez<sup>1</sup> theire sadilles,  
And *turnez* owte of *the* toile, whene hym tyme thynkkez !  
Thane the Lebe kynge criez fulle lowde  
One *sir* Cador the kene, with *cruelle* wordez, 1804  
“Thowe hase wyrchipe wonne, and wondyde knyghttez !  
Thowe wenes fore thi wightenez the werlde es thy  
nowene !

I salle wayte at thyne honnde, wy, be my trowthe !  
I haue warnede *the* wele, be ware ȝif the lykez !” 1808  
With cornuse and clariones *theis* newe made knyghttez  
Lythes vn-to *the* crye, and castez in fewtire ;  
fferkes in one a ffrounte one fferaunte stedez,  
fellede at *the* fyrste come fyfty att ones ! 1812  
Schotte thorowe the schilttrouns, and scheuere de launcez,  
Laid doune in *the* lumppe lordly biernez !  
And thus nobilly oure newe mene notez *theire* strenghez.  
Bot new notte es onone *that* noyes me sore. 1816

The kynge of Lebe has laughte a stede *that* hym lykede,  
And comes in lordely in lyonez of siluere,  
Vmbelappez *the* lumpe, and lattes in sondre ;  
Many lede with his launce *the* liffe has he refede ! 1820  
Thus he chaces *the* childire of *the* kyngez chambire,  
And killez in *the* champanyse cheualrous knyghttez !  
With a chasyngge spere he choppes doune many ! 1823

Thare was *sir* Alyduke slayne, and Achinour wondyde,  
Sir Origge and *sir* Ermyngalle hewene al to pecez !  
And ther was Lewlyne laughte, and Lewlyns brothire,  
With lordez of Lebe, and lede to *theire* strenghez :  
Ne hade *sir* Clegis comene, and Clemente *the* noble,  
Oure newe mene hade gone to noghte, and many ma  
*other*.

Thane *sir* Cador *the* kene castez in fewtire 1830  
A *cruelle* launce and a kene, and to *the* kynge rydez,  
Hittez hym heghe one *the* helme with his harde wapene,  
That alle *the* hotte blode of hym to his hande rynnez !  
The hethene harageous kynge appone *the* hethe lyggez,

<sup>1</sup> MS. repeats and temez.

And of his hertly hurte helyde he neuer !

ground mortally wounded.

Thane *sir* Cador *the* kene cryez fulle lowde,— 1836

“Thow has corne botte, *sir* kynge, *thare* God gyfe *the* sorowe,

Sir Cador triumphs over him.

Thow killyde my cosyne, my kare es the lesse !

Kele *thé* nowe in the claye, and comforthe thi selfene !

Thow skornede vs lang ere *with* thi skornefulle wordez,

And nowe has *thow* cheuede soo ; it es *thyne* awene skathe !

Holde at *thow* hente has, it harmez bot lyttille,

ffor hethynge es hame holde, vse it who so wille.”

The kyng of Surry *thane* es sorowfulle in herte, 1844

The king of Syria, full of grief, assembles his Saracens for vengeance.

fforsake of thissoueraygne, *that thus* was supprissede ;

Semblede his Sarazenes, and senatours manye :

Vnsaughtly *they* sette *thane* appone ouresere knyghttez ;

Sir Cador of Cornewaile he cownterez *theme* sone, 1848

Sir Cador and his men slay fifty thousand of them at once.

With his kydde companye clenlyche arrayede ;

In the frount of *the* fyrthe, as *the* waye forthis,

flyfty thosande of folke was fellide at ones !

Thare was at *the* assemblé certayne knyghttez, 1852

Certain knights are sorely wounded by the Saracens.

Sore wondede sone appone sere halfes ;

The sekereste Sarzanez that to *that* sorte lengede,

Be-hynde the sadylls ware sette sex fotte large ;

They scherde in the schiltrone scheldyde knyghttez,

Schalke they schotte thrughe schrenkande maylez,

The fight rages furiously.

Thurghre brenys browdene brestez they thirllede,

Brasers burnyste bristez in sondyre ;

Blasons blode and blankes they hewene, 1860

The field runs blood.

With brandez of browne stele brankkand stedez !

The Bretones brothely brittenez so many,

The bente and *the* brode felde alle one blode rynnys !

Be *thane* *sir* Cayous *the* kene a capitayne has wonnene,

Sir Clegis clynges in, and clekes another ; 1865

Sir Clegis takes prisoner the captain of Cordova.

The capitayne of Cordewa, vndire *the* kynge selfene,

That was keye of *the* kythe of alle *that* coste ryche,

Vtolfe and Ewandre, Ioneke had nommene, 1868

With *the* erle of Affryke and *other* grette lordes.

Sir Cador takes  
the king of Syria.

The kynge of Surry the kene to *sir* Cador es *zeldene*,<sup>1</sup>  
*The* synechalle of Sotere to Segramoure hym selfene.

The Romans fly  
into the forest.

When *the* cheualrye saw theire cheftanes were *nommene*,  
To a cheefe foreste they chesene theire wayes, 1873  
And felede theme so feynte, they falle in *the* greues,  
In the ferynne of *the* fyrthe, fore ferde of oure pople.

Arthur's men  
slay many of  
them there.

Thare myght mene see the ryche ryde in the schawes,  
To rype vpe the Romayne<sup>r</sup>z ruydlyche wondyde, 1877  
Schowttes aftyre mene, harageous knyghttez,  
Be hunndrethez they hewede doune be *the* holte eynys !  
Thus oure cheualrous mene chasz *the* pople ; 1880  
To a castelle they eschewede a fewe *that* eschappede.

A few escape to  
a castle.

Thane relyez *the* renkez of *the* Rounde Table,  
ffor to ryotte *the* wode, *ther* *the* duke restez ;  
Ransakes the ryndez alle, raughte vp theire feres, 1884  
That in *the* fightynge be-fore fay ware by-leuyde.

Arthur's knights  
seek for their  
companions who  
are slain.

Sir Cador bids  
them carry them  
to the king.

He goes to Paris  
with the pri-  
soners, and  
quickly returns  
to Arthur.

Sir Cador garte chare theym, and couere theme faire,  
Kariede theme to *the* kynge with his beste knyghttez ;  
And passez vn-to Paresche with presoners hym selfene,  
Be-toke theyme the proueste, prynce<sup>r</sup>z and *other* ; 1889  
Tase a sope in the toure, and taryez no langere,  
Bot tournes tytte to *the* kynge, and hym wyth tunge telles.

Then he tells him  
of the case that  
has befallen.

“*Syr*,” sais *sir* Cador, “a caas es be-fallene ; 1892  
We hafe cownterede to day, in *zone* co<sup>st</sup>e ryche

They have fought  
and slain many.

With kyngez and kayseres, krouelle and noble,  
And knyghtes and kene men clenlych arayede !  
Thay hade at *zone* foreste forsette vs *the* wayes, 1896  
At the furthe in *the* fyrthe, with ferse mene of armes ;  
Thare faughtte we in faythe, and foynede with sperys,  
One felde with thy foo-mene, and fellyd theme on lyfe.

[leaf 73, back]

The kynge of Lebe es laide, and in *the* felde leuyde,  
And manye of his lege mene *that* yare to hym langede !  
*Other* lordez are laughte of vncouthle ledes ; 1902  
We hafe lede them at lenge, to lyf whi<sup>h</sup>es *the* lykez.

Divers of their  
best knights are  
taken prisoners,

Sir Vtere and *sir* Ewaynedyre, theis honourable  
knyghttez,

Be a nawntere of armes Ioneke has nommene,  
 With erlez of *the* Oryentte, and austerene knyghttez,  
 Of awncestrye *the* beste mene *that to the* oste langede ;  
 The senatour Barouns es kaughte with a knyghtte,  
 The capitayne of Cornette, that crewelle es haldene,  
 The syneschalle of Sutere vnsaughte wyth *thes other*,  
 The kynge of Surry hym selfene, and Sarazenes. 1911

the senator  
 Barouns, the  
 king of Syria, the  
 seneschal of  
 Suter.

**B**ot fay of ours in *the* felde a fourtene knyghttez,  
 I willenoghte feynene forbere, bot faythfully tellene ;

But of Arthur's  
 knights fourteen  
 are slain.

Sir Berelle es one, a banerette noble,  
 Was killyde at *the* fyrste come *with* a kynge ryche ;  
 Sir Alidoyke of Towelle, *with* his tende knyghtez, 1916  
 Emange *the* Turkys was tynte, and in tyme fondene ;  
 Gude sir Mawrelle of Mauncez, and Mawrene his brother,  
 Sir Meneduke of Mentoche, *with* meruailous knyghttez."

Sir Berill was  
 killed at the  
 beginning of the  
 fray.

**T**hane the worthy kynge wrythes, and wepede *with*  
 his eghne<sup>1</sup>, 1920

Then Arthur is  
 grieved,

Karpes to his cosyne sir Cador theis wordez,—

"Sir Cador, thi corage confundez vs alle !

Kowardely thow castez owtte alle my beste knyghttez !

To putte mene in perille, it es no pryce holdene, 1924

Bot *the* partyes ware puruayede, and powere arayedede ;

When they ware stade on a strenghe, *thou* sulde hafe  
*with-stondene*,

Bot 3if thowe wolde alle my steryne stroye fore *the* nonys !"

"Sir," sais sir Cador, "3e knowe wele 3our selfene ;

3e are kynge in *this* kythe, karpe whatte 3ow lykys !

Salle neuer vpbrayde me, *that to thi* burde langes, 1930

That I sulde blyne fore theire boste, thi byddyngde to  
 wyrche ;

Whene any stirttez to stale, stuffe *thame the* bettere,

Ore thei wille be stonayede, and stroyede in 3one strayte  
 londez. 1933

I dide my delygens to daye, I doo me one lordez,

And in daungere of dede fore dyuerse knyghttez,

I hafe no grace to *thi* gree, bot syche grett wordez ; 1936

He has only done  
 his duty,

but is ill repaid  
 by such hard  
 words.

<sup>1</sup> MS. eughne.

3if I heuen my herte, my hape es no bettyre."

Then Arthur re-  
tracts.  
He acknowledges  
Cador has done  
his duty.

He is one of the  
bravest of the  
brave,

and heir apparent  
to the throne.

[leaf 74]

Then he makes a  
noble feast in his  
own tent for the  
knights who  
were engaged in  
the fight.

But the senators  
of Rome tell the  
emperor of the  
defeat of his men.

He has been be-  
trayed by those  
he trusted most.

Then the em-  
peror is very  
wroth.

He assembles a  
council of war.

He tells them his  
purpose to go  
into Saxony,

and enter into  
Augusta,

to riot and revel  
till the arrival of  
Sir Leo and the  
lords of Lom-  
bardy.

3ofe *sir* Arthure ware angerde, he ansuers faire,  
"Thow has doughttily donne, *sir* duke, with thi handez,  
And has donne thy deuer with my dere knyghttez;  
ffor-thy thow arte demyde, with dukes and erlez, 1941  
ffor one of *the* doughtyeste that dubbede was euer!  
Thare es none ischewe of vs, on this erthe sprongene;  
Thow arte apparant to be ayere, are one of thi childyre;  
Thow arte my sister sone, for-sake salle I neuer!" 1945

Thane gerte he in his awene tente a table be sette,  
And tryede in with *trompez* trauaillede biernez;  
Serfede them solempnely with selkouthe metez; 1948  
Swythe semly in syghte with syluerene dischees.  
Whene the *senatours* harde saye that it so happenede,  
They saide to *the* emperour, "thi seggez are suppryssede!  
*Sir* Arthure, thyne enemy has owterayed *thi* lordez,  
That rode for *the* rescowe of 3one riche knyghttez! 1953  
Thow dosse bot tynnez *thi* tyme, and turmenttez *thi* pople;  
Thow arte be-trayed of *thi* mene, that moste thow on  
traystede.

That schalle turne the to tene and torfere for euer." 1956  
Than the emperour irus was angerde at his herte,  
ffor oure valyant biernez siche prowesche had wonnene.  
With kyng and with kaysere to consayle they wende,  
Souerayngez of Sarazenez, and *senatours* manye; 1960  
Thus he semblez full sone certayne lordez,  
And in the assemble thane he sais them theis wordez,—  
"My herte sothely es sette, assente 3if 3owe lykes,  
To seke in-to Sexone, with my sekrye knyghttez, 1964  
To fyghte with my foo-mene, if fortune me happene,  
3if I may fynde the freke with-in the foure haluez;  
Or entire in-to Awguste awnters to seke, 1967  
And byde with my balde mene with-in *the* burghe ryche;  
Riste vs and reuelle, and ryotte oure selfene,  
Lende *thare* in delytte in lordechipez ynewe,  
To *sir* Leo be comene with alle his lele knyghtez, 1971  
With lordez of Lumberdye, to lotte hyme *the* wayes."

**B**ot owre wyese kyng es warre to wayttene his renkes,  
And wyesly by *the* woddez voydez his oste ;

King Arthur, getting intelligence of this, withdraws his men secretly by the woods ;

Gerte felschene his fyrez, flawmande fulle heghe,  
Trussene fulle traystely, and treunt there-aftyre. 1976

Sethene in-to Sessoyne, he soughte at the gayneste,  
And at the surs of *the* sonne disseuerez his knyghttez :  
fforsette theme the cité appone sere halfez,

takes the shortest road into Saxony ;

So-daynly on iche halfe, with seuene grett stales. 1980  
Anely in the vale a vawewarde enbusches ;

suddenly besets the city with seven bands.

Sir Valyant of Vylaris, with valyant knyghttez,  
Be-fore *the* kynggez visage made siche avowez,

Sir Valiant makes a vow to vanquish the viscount of Rome.

To venquyse by victorie the vescownte of Rome ! 1984  
ffor-thi the kyngge chargez hym, what chaunce so be-falle,  
Cheftayne of *the* cheekke, with cheualrous knyghttez,  
And sythyne meles with mouthe, *that* he moste traistez ;  
Demenys the medylwarde menskfully hyme selfene,  
ffittes his fote-mene, aHs hym faire thynkkes ; 1989

The king gives him command of the vanguard ;

On frounte in the fore breste, the flour of his knyghtez,

he himself directs the centre.

His archers on aythere halfe he ordaynede *ther*-aftyre

He arranges the archers on either flank ;  
[leaf 74, back]

To schake in a sheltroñe, to schotte whene *thame* lykez ;

He arrayed in *the* rerewarde fulle rialle knyghtez,

places renowned knights for a rearguard.

With renkkes renownnd of *the* Rounde Table,

Sir Raynalde, sir Richere, that rade was neuer,

The riche duke of Rowne wyt[h] ryders ynewe ; 1996

Sir Cayous, sir Clegis, and elene mene of armes,

The kyng castes to kepe be *thaa* clere strands.

Sir Lott and *sir* Launcelotte, *thise* lordly knyghttez,

Sir Lott and Sir Lancelot command a band on the left hand, which is to move in the mist of early morning. Sir Cador and his men are to keep guard over the passes.

Salle lenge on his lefte hande, wyth legyones ynewe,

To meue in *the* morne-while, 3if *the* myste happynne ;

Sir Cador of Cornewaile, and his kene knyghtez,

To kepe at *the* karfuke, to close in *ther* othere :

He plantez in siche placez prynce and erlez, 2004

That no powere sulde passe be no *preué* wayes.

**B**ot the emperour onone, with honourable knyghtez

The emperor and his knights quickly enter the vale in search of adventures. He finds Arthur's host drawn up in battle array,

And erlez, enteres the vale, awnters to seke,

And fyndez sir Arthure with hostez arayede ; 2008

And at his in-come, to ekkene his sorowe,

Oure burlyche bolde kynge appone the bente howes,  
 With his bataile one brede, and baners displayede.  
 He hade *the* ceté for-sett appone sere halfes, 2012  
 Bothe the clewez and *the* clyfez with clene mene of armez !  
 The mosse and *the* marrasse, the mounttez so hye,  
 With gret multytude of mene, to marre hym in *the*  
 wayes.

and all the posi-  
 tions occupied.

Whene *sir Lucius* sees, he sais to his lordez, 2016

Then Sir Lucius  
 declares with  
 wrath that there  
 is no way else but  
 to fight, for fly  
 he may not.

“This traytour has treunt this tresone to wyrche !  
 He has the ceté forsett appone sere halfez,  
 Alle *the* clewez and the cleyffez with clene mene of armez !  
 Here es no waye i-wys, ne no wytt elles, 2020  
 Bot feghte with oure foo-mene, for flee may we neuer !

He arrays his  
 rich Romans.

Thane this ryche mane rathe arayes his byernez,  
 Rewlede his Romayne, and realle knyghtez ;  
 Buschez in the avawmewarde the vescounte of Rome,  
 ffro Viterbe to Venyse, theis valyante knyghtez : 2025

The viscount is  
 in the van.

He hoists his  
 standard, the  
 golden dragon  
 enamelled with  
 eagles.  
 They drink and  
 make merry.

Dresses vp dredfully the dragone of golde,  
 With egles alouer, enamelede of sable ;  
 Drawene dreghely the wyne, and drynkynne thare-aftyre,  
 Dukkez and dusseperez, dubbede knyghtez, 2029  
 ffor dauncesyng of Duche-mene, and dynnyng of pypez,  
 Alle dynned fore dyne that in *the* dale houede.

Sir Lucius ex-  
 horts them to  
 think on the  
 great renown of  
 Rome—how it  
 had conquered all  
 Christendom,

And thane *sir Lucius* on lowde said lordlyche wordez,  
 “Thynke one the myche renownne of *3our* ryche  
 fadyrs ; 2033

[leaf 75]

and all the land  
 of the Saracens,  
 from Jaffa to the  
 gates of Paradise.

And the riatours of Rome, *that* regnede with lordez ;  
 And the renkez ouer-rane alle that regnede in erthe,  
 Encrochede alle Cristyndome be craftes of armes ;  
 In eueriche a viage the victorie was haldene ; 2037  
 In sette alle *the* Sarazenes with-in seuene wyntter,  
 The parte ffro the porte Iaffe to Paradyse zatez !  
 Thoghe a rewme be rebeHe, we rekke it bot lyttille !

Without doubt  
 they will quickly  
 reduce these  
 rebels.

It es resone and righte the renke be restreynede ! 2041  
 Do dresse we thare-fore, and byde we no langere,  
 ffore dredlesse with-owttyne dowtte, the daye schalle be  
 ourez !”



Whene *theise* wordez was saide, the Walsche kynge  
 hym selfene 2044  
 Whas warre of this wyderwyne, *that* werrayed his  
 knyghttez :

Brothely in the vale *with* voyce he ascryez,—  
 “Viscownte of Valewnce, enuyous of dedys,  
 The vassallage of Viterbe to daye schalle be reuengede !  
 Vnuenquiste for *this* place voyde schalle I neuer !”

Arthur calls upon  
 the viscount of  
 Valence, and  
 threatens him  
 with vengeance.

Thane the vyscownte valiante, *with* a uoyse noble,  
 Auoyeddyde the avawewarde, enuerounde his horse ;  
 He drissede in a derfe schelde, endenttyd *with* sable,  
 With a dragone engowschede, dredfulle to schewe, 2053  
 Deuorande a dolphyne *with* dolefulle lates,  
 In seyne that oure soueraygne sulde be distroyede,  
 And alle done of dawez *with* dynttez of swerddez ;<sup>1</sup>  
 ffor thare es noghte bot dede thare the dragonees raissede !

The viscount  
 boldly prepares  
 for the fray.

His device is a  
 dragon devour-  
 ing a dolphin.

Thane the comlyche kynge castez in fewtyre, 2058  
 With a crewelle launce cowpez fulle euene  
 A-bowne *thespayre*<sup>2</sup> a spanne, emange *the* schortte rybbys,  
 That the splent and the spleene on the spere lengez !  
 The blode sprete owtte and sprede as *the* horse sprynggez,  
 And he sproulez fulle spakely, bot spekes he no more !  
 And thus has *sir* Valyant haldene his a-vowez, 2064  
 And venqwyste *the* viscownte, *thate* victor was haldene !

The king lays  
 his lance in rest,  
 and pierces him  
 through the short  
 ribs.

And thus has *Sir*  
 Valiant kept his  
 vow.

Thane *sir* Ewayne *sir* Fytz Vrieneffulle enkerlye rydez  
 Onone to the emperour his egle to towche ;  
 Thrughe his brode bataile he buskes be-lyfe, 2068  
 Braydez owt his brande *with* a blyth chere,  
 Reuerssede it redelye, and awaye rydys ;  
 fferkez in *with* the fewle in his faire handez,  
 And ffittez in freely one frounte *with* his feris. 2072

*Sir* Ewain makes  
 a bold attempt to  
 reach the em-  
 peror.

Now buskez *sir* Launcelot, and braydez fulle euene  
 To *sir* Lucius the lorde, and lothelye hyme hyttez ;  
 Thurghe pawnce *and* platez he percede the maylez,  
 That the prowde penselle in his pawncche lengez ! 2076  
 The hede haylede owtt be-hynde ane halfe fote large,

*Sir* Lancelot slays  
 the lord Lucius.

<sup>1</sup> MS. swreddez.

<sup>2</sup> MS. *the* spayre the spayere.

Thurghe hawberke and hanche, *with the harde wapyne !*  
 The stede and the steryne mane strykes to *the grownde,*  
 Strake downe a standerde, and to his stale wendez !

Sir Lott rejoices  
 that his turn is  
 now come.

“Me lykez wele,” sais *sir Loth,* “*zone lordez are*  
*delyuerede !* 2081

The lott lengez nowe on me, *with leue of my lorde :*  
 To day salle my name be laide, and my life aftyre,  
 [leaf 75, back] Bot some leppe fro the lyfe, that one *zone lawnde houez !*  
 Thane strekez the steryne, and streynys his brydylle,  
 Strykez in-to the stowre on a stede ryche,

He slays a giant,

Enjoynede with a geaunt, and jaggede hym thorowe !  
 Jolyly this gentille for-justede a-*nother,* 2088

Wroghte wayes fulle wyde, werrayande knyghtez,  
 And wondes alle wathely, that in *the waye stondez !*  
 ffyghttez *with alle the ffrappe a furlange of waye,*

and many war-  
 riors beside.

ffelled fele appone felde *with his faire wapene,* 2092  
 Venqwiste and has the victorie of valyaunt knyghtez,  
 And alle enverounde the vale, and voyde whene hym  
 likede !

The British bow-  
 men discharge  
 their arrows.

**T**hane bowmene of Bretayne brothely ther-aftyre  
 Bekerde *with bregaundez of ferre in tha laundez,*  
 With flonez fleterede *thay flitt fulle frescly ther frekez,*  
 ffichene *with fetheris thurghe the fyne maylez :*  
 Siche flyttynge es foule *that so the flesche derys,*  
 That flowe o ferrome in flawnkkes of stede ; 2100

The Dutchmen  
 throw darts.

Dartes the Duche-mene daltene azaynes,  
 With derfe dynttez of dede, dagges thurghe schelde ;  
 Qwarelles qwayntly swappez thorowe knyghtez,  
 With iryne so wekyrly, that wynche they neuer. 2104

Many are slain  
 by the sharp  
 arrows.

So they scherenkene fore schotte of *the scharppe arowes,*  
 That alle the scheltrone schonte, and schoderide at ones !

Thane riche stedes rependez, and rasches one armes ;  
 The hale howndrethe one hye appone heyghe lygges,  
 Bott zitte *the hathelieste on hy, haythene and other ;*

But the giants  
 make a terrible  
 charge,

Alle hoursches ouer hede harmes to wyrke. 2110  
 And alle theis geauntez be-fore, engenderide *with fendez,*  
 Ioynez on sir Ienitalle, and gentille knyghtez,

With clubbez of clene stele clenkkede in helmes,  
 Craschede doune crestez, and craschede braynez ;  
 Kyllede cou[r]sers and couerde stedes, 2115  
 Choppode thurgh cheualers one chalke-whytte stede.

and with their  
 steel clubs destroy  
 many knights  
 on white steeds.

Was neuer stele ne stede myghte stande them a-3ayne,  
 Bot stonays and strykez doune, that in *the* stale houys.  
 Tille *the* conquerour come with his kene knyghttez,  
 With crewelle contenaunce he cryede fulle lowde,—

Nothing can  
 stand against  
 them until Ar-  
 thur comes.

“ I wende no Bretones walde bee basschede for so lyttille,  
 And fore bare-legyde boyes, *that* one the bente houys !”

He despises  
 them,

**H**e clekys owtte Colbrande fulle clenlyche burneschte,  
 Graythes hyme to Golapas, *that* greuyde moste ;  
 Kuttess hyme euene by *the* knees clenly in sondyre.

and plucking out  
 Colbrand, quickly  
 cuts the giant  
 Golapas in two  
 at the knees,

“ Come downe,” *quod* the kyng, “ and karpe to thy ferys !  
 Thowe arte to hye by *the* halfe. I hete *the* in trouthe !  
 Thow salle be handsomere in hye, with *the* helpe of my  
 Lorde !” 2128

telling him he is  
 too high by half.

With *that* stelene brande he strake ofe his hede.  
 Sterynly in *that* stoure he strykes a-nother.

Then he strikes  
 off his head.

Thus he settez on seuene with his sekyre knyghttez :  
 Whylls sixty ware seruede soo, ne sessede they neuer !  
 And thus at the joynenye the geauntez are distroyede,  
 And at *that* journey for-justede with gentille lordez.

[leaf 76]  
 He and his  
 knights slay sixty  
 giants.

Than the Romaynes, and the rennkkez of *the* Rounde  
 Table,

The Romans  
 rally and make  
 a fierce  
 resistance.

Rewles theme in arraye, rerewarde ande other, 2136  
 With wyghte wapynez of werre, thay wroghtene one  
 helmes,

Rittez with rannke stele fulle ryalle maylez ;  
 Bot they fitt<sup>1</sup> theme fayre, thes frekk byernez,  
 ffewters in freely one fferaunte stedes, 2140  
 ffoynes fulle felly with flyschande speris,  
 ffretene of orfrayes feste appone scheldez.

So fele fay es in fyghte appone *the* felde leuyde, 2143  
 That iche a furthe in the firthe of rede blode rynnys !  
 By that swyftely one swarthe *the* swett es by-leuede,

So many are left  
 dead on the field,  
 that each path  
 in the forest runs  
 with red blood.

<sup>1</sup> Or fut.

Swerdez swangene in two, sweltand knyghtez  
 Lyes wyde opyne welterande one walopande stede; ;  
 Wondes of wale mene werkande sydys, 2148  
 ffacez feteled vn-faire in filterede lakes,

Alle craysed for-trodyne with trappede stede; ,  
 The faireste figured folde<sup>1</sup> that figured was euer,  
 Ahs ferre alls a furlange, a thosande at ones ! 2152

The Romans  
 begin to retreat,  
 and Arthur  
 presses on them.

Be than the Romayne ware rebuykyde a lyttill,  
 With-drawes theyme drerely, and dreches no lengare ;  
 Oure prynce with his powere persewes theyme aftyre,  
 Prekez one<sup>2</sup> the proudeste with his price knyghttez.

Sir Cayous, Sir  
 Clegis, and their  
 men slay five  
 hundred.

Sir Kayous, sir Clegis, with clene mene of armez, 2157  
 Encontres theme at the clyffe with clene mene of armes ;  
 ffyghttes faste in the fyrth, frythes no wapene,  
 ffelled at the firste come fyfe hundrethe at ones !  
 And when they fand the them foresett with oure fers  
 knyghtez, 2161

ffewe mene agayne fele mot fyche theme bettyre ;  
 ffeghttez with alle the frappe, foynes with speres,  
 And faughte with the frekkeste that to Fraunce langez.

Sir Cayous rides  
 to a king and  
 thrusts him  
 through with his  
 lance,

Bot sir Kayous the kene castis in fewtyre,  
 Chasez one a courser, and to a kynge rydys ; 2166  
 With a launce of Lettowe he thirleth his sydez,  
 That the lyuer and the lunggez on the launce lengez.  
 The schafte se[h]odyrde and schott in the schire byerne,  
 And soughte thorowowte the schelde, and in the schalke  
 rystez.

but is sorely  
 wounded by a  
 coward knight.

Bot Kayous at the in-come was kepyd vn-fayre  
 With a cowarde knyghte of the kythe ryche ; 2172  
 At the turnynge that tym the traytoure hym hitte  
 In thorowe the felettes, and in the flawnke aftyre,  
 That the boustous launce the bewells attamede,  
 That braste at the brawlynge, and brake in the myddys.  
 Sir Kayous knewe wele, be that kyde wounde, 2177  
 That he was dede of the dynte, and done owte of lyfe.

[leaf 76, back]

<sup>1</sup> Or felde.

<sup>2</sup> Or over.

Than he raykes in arraye and one rawe rydez,  
One this ryalle his dede to reuenge ; 2180

"Kepe the, cowarde," and calles hym sone,  
Cleues hym wyth his clere brande clenliche in sondire !  
"Hadde thow wele delte thy dynt with thi handes,  
I hade for-geffene *the* my dede, be Crist now of hewyne !"

He weyndes to *the* wyese kyng, and wynly hym gretes,  
"I am wathely woundide, waresche mone I neuer !  
Wirke nowe thi wirchiþe, as *the* worlde askes,  
And brynge me to beryelle, byd I no more ! 2188

He goes to the king, tells him he is mortally wounded, and bids him greet well the queen, the ladies of the court, and his wife.

Grete wele my ladye *the* qwene, ȝife *the* werlde happyne,  
And alle *the* burliche birdes *that* to hir boure lengez,  
And my worthily weife, *that* wrethide me neuer,  
Bid hire fore hir wyrechiþe wirke for my saulle !" 2192

The kynges confessour come, *with* Criste in his handes,  
ffor to comforth the knyghte, kende hym *the* wordes.  
The knyghte coueride on his knees *with* a kaunt herte,  
And caughte his Creatoure *that* comfurthes vs alle !

Then comes the king's confessor to comfort the knight.

Thane remmes *the* riche kyng fore rewthe at his herte,  
Rydes in-to rowte his dede to reuenge ;

Then Arthur, full of grief, rushes into the fray to avenge him.

Presede in-to *the* plumpe, and with a prynce metes,  
That was ayere of Egipt in thos este marches ; 2200  
Cleues hym with Collbrande clenlyche in sondyre !  
He broches euene thorowe *the* byerne, and *the* sadille  
bristes,

He cleaves an Egyptian prince asunder.

And at *the* bake of *the* blonke *the* bewelles entamede !

Manly in his maly[n]coly he metes a-nother, 2204  
The medille of *that* myghtty, *that* hym myche greuede ;  
He merkes thurghe the maylez the myddes in sondyre,  
That the myddys of *the* mane on *the* mounte fallez,  
*The* tother halfe of *the* haunche on *the* horse leuyde.

Another he chops in half.

Of *that* hurte, als I hope, heles he neuer ! 2209  
He schotte thorowe *the* schilttrouns *with* his scharpe  
wapene,

He speeds his way through the battle, cutting men in sunder, bearing down banners,

Schalkez he schrede thurghe, and schrenkede maylez ;  
Baneres he bare downne, bryttenede scheldes, 2212

and fiercely  
wreaking his  
wrath on his foes.

Brothely with browne stele his brethe he *thare* wrekis ;  
Wrothely he wryththis by wyghtnesse of strenghe,  
Woundes *these* whydyrewyns, werrayed knyghttes,  
Threppede thorowe *the* thykkys thryttene sythis, 2216  
Thryngez throlly in the thrange, and chis euene aftyre !

Sir Gawaine goes  
forward and meets  
with the emperor.

Thane sir Gawayne the gude, with wyrchipfulle  
knyghttez,

Wendez in the a-vawewarde be tha wodde hemmys ;  
Was warre of *sir* Lucius, one launde there he houys,  
With lordez and ligge mene, that to hyme selfe lengede.  
Thane the emperor enkerly askes hym sonne, 2222  
“ What wille thou, Gawayne, wyrke with thi wapyne ?

[leaf 77]

I watte be thi wauerynge, thou willnez aftyre sorowe ;  
I salle be wrokyne on thi wrethe, fore alle thi grete  
wordez ? ”

Lucius with his  
long sword  
wounds Sir  
Lionel,

He laughte owtte a lange swerde, and luyschede one  
ffaste,

And *sir* Lyonelle in the launde, lordely hym strykes,  
Hittes hym on *the* hede, *that the* helme bristis ; 2228  
Hurttes his herne-pane an hannde-brede large !

and many wor-  
shipful knights.

Thus he layes one *the* lumppe, and lordlye *theme* seruede,  
Wondide worthily wirchipfulle knyghttez !  
ffighttez with Florent that beste es of swerde, 2232  
Tille *the* fomande blode tille his fyste rynnes !

The Romans, ex-  
cited by his  
bravery, get the  
better of Arthur's  
men.  
Sir Bedwere is  
slain.

Thane *the* Romayns releuyde, *that* are ware rebuykkyde,  
And alle to-rattys oure mene with theire riste horsse ;  
ffore they see *thaire* cheftayne be chauffede so sore,  
They chasse and choppedoune oure cheualrous knyghttes !  
Sir Bedwere was borne thurghe, and his breste thyrllede,  
With a burlyche brannde, brode at *the* hiltis ;  
The ryalle rannke stele to his herte rynmys, 2240  
And he rusches to *the* erthe, rewthe es the more !

Then Arthur  
comes to the  
rescue.

Thane *the* conquerour tuke kepe, and come with his  
strengthes

To reschewe *the* ryche mene of *the* Rounde Table,  
To owtraye *the* emperor, 3if auntire it schewe, 2244  
Ewyne to *the* egle, and “ Arthure ! ” askryes.

The *emperour* thane egerly at *Arthure* he strykez,  
Awkwarde on *the* vmbrere, and egerly hym hittez !

The emperor  
strikes Arthur on  
the visor, and  
wounds his nose.

The nakyde swerde at *the* nese noyes hym sare, 2248

The blode of [the] bolde kyng *ouer the* breste rynnys,  
Beblede at *the* brode schelde and *the* bryghte mayles !

Oure bolde kyng bowes *the* blonke be *the* bryghte brydylle,

With his burlyche brande a buffette hym reches, 2252

Arthur gives him  
a buffet that cuts  
through his  
cuirass and his  
breast.

Thourgh *the* brene and *the* breste with his bryghte wapayne,

O-slante doune fro *the* slote he slyttes at ones !

Thus endys *the* *emperour* of *Arthure* hondes,

Sir Lucius dies,  
and the Romans  
fly.

And alle his austeryne oste *thare-ofe* ware affrayede !

Now they ferke to *the* fyrthe, a fewe *that* are leuede,

ffor ferdnesse of oure folke, by *the* fresche strandez !

The floure of oure ferse mene one fferant stede

ffolowes frekly on *the* frekes, thate ffrayed was neuer.

Arthur's men  
pursue them.

Thane *the* kyde conquerour cryes fulle lowde,— 2261

“Cosyne of Cornewaile, take kepe to *thi* selfene,

That no captayne be-kepyde for none siluer,

Or *sir* Kayous dede be cruelly vengede !” 2264

The king bids  
them take venge-  
ance for Sir  
Cayous.

“Nay,” sais *sir* Cador, “so me Cryste helpe !

Thare ne es kayser ne kyng, *that* vndire Criste ryngnes,

Sir Cador de-  
clares that he  
will spare neither  
king nor kaiser.

*That* I ne schalle kille colde dede be crafte of my handez !”

Thare myghte mene see chiftaynes, on chalke whittestedez,

Choppe doune in the chaas cheualrye noble ; 2269

Romaynes *the* rycheeste and ryalle kynges,

Braste with ranke stele theire rybbys in sondyre !

[leaf 77, back]  
A fearful carnage  
follows.

Braynes fore-brustene thurghe burneste helmes, 2272

With brandez for-brittenede one brede in *the* laundez.

They hewed doune haythen mene with hiltedeswerdez,

Heathen men are  
hewn down by  
hundreds.

Be hole hundrethez on hye, by *the* holte eynyes !

Thare myghte no siluer thaym saue, ne socoure theire

lyues, 2276

Sowdane, ne Sarazene, ne senatour of Rome !

Thane releuis *the* renkes of the Rounde Table,

Be *the* riche reuare that rynnys so faire ;

Lugegez thaym lufye by *tha* lyghte strandez, 2280

Alle on lawe in *the* lawnde, thas lordlyche byernes.

Arthur's men  
plunder the rich  
camp of the  
Romans.

Thay kaire to *the* karyage, and tuke whate them likes,  
Kamelles and sekadrisses, and cofirs fulle riche,  
Hekes, and hakkenays, and horses of armes, 2284  
Howsynge and herbergage of heythene kynges ;

Horses, camels,  
dromedaries,  
milk-white mules,  
and many mar-  
vellous beasts are  
captured.

They drewe owt of dromondaries dyuerse lordes,  
Moyllez mylke whitte, and meruayllous bestez,  
Elfaydes, and arrabys, and olyfauntez noble, 2288  
*Ther* are of *the* Oryent, with honourable kynges.

**B**ot *sir* Arthure onone ayeres *ther*-aftyre  
Ewyne to *the* emperour, with honourable kyngis ;  
Laughte hym vpe fulle louelyly with lordlyche knyghttez,  
And ledde hyme to *the* layere, thare the kyng lygges.  
Thane harawdez heghely, at heste of the lordes,  
Hunttes vpe the haythemene, that on heghte lygges,  
The Sowdane of *Surry*, and certayne kynges, 2296  
Sexty of *the* cheefe senatours of Rome.

The bodies of the  
emperour and  
the chief men of  
Rome are em-  
balmed and  
wrapped in lead,

Thane they bussches and bawmed *thaire* honourliche  
kyngis,

Sewed theme in sendelle sexti-faulde aftire,  
Lappede them in lede, lesse that they schulde 2300  
Chawnge or chawffe, 3if *thay* myghte escheffe ;

enclosed in  
chests, and sent  
to Rome with  
their hanners  
over them.

Closed in kystys clene vn-to Rome,  
With their baners a-bowne, their bagis there-vndyre,  
In whate countré *thay* kaire that knyghttes myghte knawe  
Iche kyng be his colours, in kyth whare [he] lengede.  
Onone one *the* secounde daye, sone by *the* morne,

Two senators  
come barefoot  
and kneel before  
the conqueror.

Twa senatours ther come, and certayne knyghttez,  
Hodles fro *the* hethe, ouer *the* holte eynes, 2308  
Barefote ouer *the* bente, with brondes so ryche,  
Bowes to *the* bolde kyng, and biddis hym *the* hiltes,  
Whethire he wille hang theym or hedde, or halde  
theyme on lyfe ; 2311

Knelyde be-fore *the* conquerour in kyrtilles allone ;  
With carefulle contenaunce *thay* karpide these wordes,—

“Twa senatours we are, thi subgettez of Rome,  
That has sauede oure lyfe by *the*ise salte strandys ;  
Hyd vsin *the* heghe wode, thurghe *the* helpynge of Criste ;



Be-sekes the of socoure, as soueraygne and lorde ; 2317

Grante vs lyffe and lyme with leberalle herte,

[leaf 78]

ffor his luffe that the lente this lordchiþe in erthe !”

“ I graunte,” *quod* [the] gude kynge, “ thurghe grace of  
my selfene, 2320

The king grants  
them their lives  
on condition of  
their carrying a  
message for him  
to Rome.

I giffe 3owe lyffe and lyme, and leue for to passe,

So 3e doo my message menskefully at Rome,

That ilke charge *that* I 3ow 3iffe here be-fore my cheeffe  
knyghttez.”

“ 3is,” sais the senatours, “ that salle we ensure, 2324

Sekerly be oure trowhes thi sayenges to fullfille ;

We salle lett for no lede *that* lyffes in erthe,

ffore pape, ne for potestate, ne prynce so noble,

That ne salle lelely in lande thi letteres pronounce, 2328

ffor duke ne fore dussepere, to dye in *the* payne !”

**T**hane the banerettez of Bretayne broghte *theme* to  
tentis ;

The Britons cause  
barbers to shave  
them, in token of  
their submission.

There barbouris ware bownne, with basyns one lofte,

With warme watire<sup>1</sup> i-wys they wette *theme* fulle sone ;

They schouene thes schalkes schappely ther-aftyre,

To rekkene theis Romaynes recreaunt and 3oldene ;

ffor-thy schoue they *theme* to schewe, for skomfite of  
Rome.

They coupylde *the* kystys on kameles be-lyue, 2336

They fasten the  
chests on camels.

On asses and arrabyes, theis honourable kynges ;

The emperoure for honoure, alle by hym one,

Euene appone ane olyfaunte, hys egle owtt ouere ;

The emperor's  
body, for honour,  
is by itself on an  
elephant.

Be-kende *theme* the captyfis, the kyngedide hyme selfene,

And alle by-fore his kene mene karpede thees wordes,—

“ **H**ere are the kystis,” *quod* the kynge, “ kaire ouer  
*the* mownttez ;

Arthur charges  
them to say  
that they have  
brought the ar-  
rears of tribute  
due from him to  
Rome.

Mette fulle monce *that* 3e haue mekyll 3ernede,

The taxe and *the* trebutte of tene schore wynteres, 2344

That was tenefully tynte in tyme of oure elders.

Saye to *the* senatoure, *the* ceté *that* 3emes,

That I sende hyme *the* somme, assaye how hyme likes !

<sup>1</sup> MS. wartire.

This is the only  
tribute they will  
ever get from  
him.

Bott byde theme neuere be so bolde, whylles my blode  
regnes, 2348

Efte for to brawlle *theme* for my brode landez,  
Ne to aske trybut ne taxe be nakyne tytyle,  
Bot syche tresoure as this, whilles my tyme lastez."

They hasten to  
Rome and sum-  
mon the people  
to the Capitol.

Nowe they raike to Rome the redyeste wayes, 2352

Knylles in the Capatoylle, and comowns assemblies,  
Souerayngez and senatours, the ceté *that* jemes ;  
Be-kende theme the caryage, kystis and *other*, 2355

They perform  
Arthur's message  
as he directed.

Alls *the* conquerour comaunde *with* cruelle wordes.

They have  
brought the taxes  
from England and  
Ireland, and all  
the west.

"We hafe trystily trayuellede *this* tribute to feche,  
The taxe and *the* trewage of fowre score wynteris,  
Of I[n]glande, of Irelande and alle *thir* owtt illes,  
That Arthure in the Occedente occupyes att ones. 2360

He byddis 3ow neuere be so bolde, whills his blode regnes,  
To brawle 3owe fore Bretayne ne his brode landes,  
Ne aske hyme tribute ne taxe be nonkyns tytyle,  
Bot syche tresoure as this, whills his tyme lastis. 2364

[leaf 78, back]  
They declare that  
they have suffer-  
ed defeat and  
great loss,

We haffe foughttene in ffraunce, and vs es foule happenede,  
And alle oure myche faire folke faye are by-leuede !  
Eschappide there ne cheuallrye, ne cheftaynes *nother*,  
Bott choppede downne in the chasse, syche chawmse es  
be-fallene ! 2368

and bid the Ro-  
mans beware.

We rede 3e store 3owe of stone, and stuffene 3our walles :  
3ow wakkens wandrethe and werre ; be ware, 3if 3ow  
lykes !"

This great battle  
between Arthur  
and the Romans  
was fought in the  
calends of May.

I[n] the kalendez of Maye this caas es be-fallene : 2371

The roy ryaffe renownde, *with* his Rownde Table,  
One the coste of Costantyne by *the* clere strandez,  
Has *the* Romaynes ryche rebuykede for euer !

Whene he hade foughttene in Fraunce, and the felde  
wonnene,

And fersely his foomene fellde owtte of lyfe, 2376

Arthur buries his  
knights,

He bydes for *the* beryenge of his bolde knyghtez,  
That in batelle *with* brandez ware broughte owte of lyfe.

Sir Bedwere at  
Bayonne,  
Sir Cayons at  
Came.

He beryes at Bayone *sir* Bedwere *the* ryche ;  
The cors of Kayone *the* kene at Came es be-leuefede,

Koueride *with* a crystalle clenly alle ouer ; 2381

His fadyre *conqueride that* kyth knyghtly *with* hondes.

Seyne in Burgoyne he bade to bery mo knyghttez,

Sir Berade and Bawdwyne, sir Bedwar *the* ryche,

Gud *sir* Cador at Came, as his kynde askes.

Thane *sir* Arthure onone, in *the* Auguste *ther*-aftyre,

Enteres to Almayne wyth ostez arrayed ; 2387

Lengez at Lusscheburgh, to lechene hys knyghttez,

With his lele ligge mene, as lorde in his awene.

And on *Christofre* daye a concelle he haldez,

Withe kynges and kaysers, clerkkes and *other*,

Comandez them kenely to caste alle *theire* wittys, 2392

How he may *conquere* by crafte the kythe *that* he claymes.

Bot the *conquerour* kene, curtais and noble,

Karpes in the concelle theys knyghtly wordez,—

“Here es a knyghte in theis kleuys, enclesside with hilles,

That I haue cawayte to knawe, be-cause of his wordez,

That es Lorayne *the* lele, I kepe noghte to layne ;

The lordchipe es louely, as ledes me telles. 2399

I wille that ducherye devyse, and dele as me lykes,

And seyne dresse wyth *the* duke, if destyny suffre :

The renke rebelle has bene vn-to my Rownde Table,

Redy aye with Romaines, and ryotte my landes !

We salle rekkene fulle rathe, if resone so happene, 2404

Who has ryghte to *that* rente, by ryche Gode of heuene !

Thane wille I by Lumbardye lykande to schawe,

Sett lawe in *the* lande, *that* laste salle euer ;

The tyrauntez of Tur kayne tempeste a littyll, 2408

Talke with *the* temperalle, whilles my tyme lastez ;

I gyffe my protteccion to alle *the* pope landez,

My ryche penselle of pes my pople to schewe.

It es a foly to offende oure fadyr vndire Gode, 2412

Owther Peter or Paule, *tha* postles of Rome.

3if we spare the *spirituelle*, we spede bot the bettire ;

Whills we haue for to speke, spille salle it neuer ! ”

Now they spede at *the* spurres, with-owttyne speche  
more, 2416

In the August  
after Arthur en-  
ters into Ger-  
many,

and tarries at  
Luxemburg to  
heal his knights.

He holds a coun-  
cil to devise how  
he may conquer  
all the territory  
that he claims.

He makes a  
speech in the  
council, saying  
that he much de-  
sires the posses-  
sions of the duke  
of Lorraine,

who has long been  
a rebel to his  
Round Table.

Full soon will he  
reckon who has  
right to the rent.

Afterwards he  
will go to Lom-  
bardy and then  
visit the tyrants  
of Turkey,

but he will give  
protection to all  
the lands of the  
[leaf 79]

Pope, for it is  
folly to offend  
our father under  
God.

If we spare the  
goods of the  
spiritualty we  
shall speed the  
better.

To *the* marche of Meyes, theis manliche knyghtez,  
 That es Lorryne alofede, as Londone es here ;  
 Ceté<sup>1</sup> of *that* seyn<sup>3</sup>owre, that soueraynge es holdene.  
 The kyng ferkes furthe on a faire stede, 2420  
 With Ferrer and <sup>2</sup> Ferawnte, and *other* foure knyghtez ;  
 A-bowte the ceté *tha* seuene, they soughte at *the* nextte,  
 To seke theme a sekyre place to sett withe engeynes ;  
 Thane they beneyde in burghe bowes of vyse, 2424  
 Bekyrs at *the* bolde kyng with boustouse lates,  
 Allblawsters at Arthure egerly schottes,  
 ffor to hurte hym or his horse with *that* hard wapene.  
 The kyng schonte for no schotte, ne no schelde askys,  
 Bot schewes hym scharpely in his schene wedys ; 2429  
 Lenges alle at laysere, and lokes one the wallys,  
 Whare *they* ware laweste the ledes to assaille.  
 "Sir," said *sir* fferrere, "a ffoly thowe wirkkes,  
 Thus nakede in thy noblaye to neghe to *the* walles,  
 Sengely in thy surcotte, this ceté to reche, 2434  
 And schewe *the* with-ine, there to schende vs alle.  
 Hye vs hastyllye heyne, or we mone fulle happene,  
 ffor hitt they the or thy horse, it harmes for euer !"

"Ife thow be ferde," *quod* the kyng, "I rede thow  
 ryde vttere, 2438  
 Lesse *that* they rywe the with theire rownnd wapyne !  
 Thow arte bot a fawntyne, no ferly me thynkkys !  
 Thou wille beflayedefor a flye *that* one thy fleschelyghttes !  
 I ame nothyng agaste, so me Gode helpe ! 2442  
 Thof siche gadlynges be greuede, it greues me botlyttill !  
 Thay wyne no wirchipe of me, bot wastys theire takle !  
 They salle wante or I weende, I wagene myne hevede !  
 Salle neuer harlotte haue happe, thorowe helpe of my  
 Lorde,  
 To kylle a corownde kyng with<sup>3</sup> krysome enoynttede !"

Thane come *the* herbariours, harageous knyghtez, 2448  
 The hale batelles one hye harrawnte ther-aftyre ;  
 And oure forreours ferse, appone fele halves,

<sup>1</sup> MS. Pety.    <sup>2</sup> MS. ferrerande.    <sup>3</sup> MS. with with.

Come flyeande be-fore one ferawnt stedes ;  
 fferkande in arraye theire ryalle knyghttez, 2452

The renkez renownde of *the* Rownnd Table.

and the renowned  
 champions of the  
 Round Table ;  
 and all the bold  
 men of France  
 following them.

[leaf 79, back]

Alle *the* frekke mene of Fraunce folowede thare-aftyre,

ffaïre fittyde one frownte, and one the felde houys.

Thane the schalkes scharpelye scheftys theire horsez,  
 To schewene them semly in theire scheene wedes ; 2457

Buskes in batayle with baners displayede,

They proceed in  
 batle-array with  
 banners and broad  
 shields, and  
 pennons adorned  
 with precious  
 stones.

With brode scheldes enbrassede, and burlyche helmys,  
 With penouns and penselles of ylke prynce armes, 2460

Appayrehde with perrye and *precious* stones.

The lawnces with loraynes, and lemande scheldes,

The lances gleam  
 like lightning.

Lyghtenande as *the* leuenynge, and lemand al ouer.

Thane the price mene prekes, and proues *theire* horsez,  
 Satilles to *the* ceté, appone sere halves ; 2465

Enserches the subbarbes sadly thare-aftyre,

They encompass  
 the city on diuers  
 sides,

Discoveris of schotte-mene, and skyrmys a lyttill ;

Skayres *thaire* skottefers, and theire skowtte-waches,

skirmish with the  
 garrison,  
 and break down  
 their defences.

Brittenes theire barrers with theire bryghte wapyns ;

Bett downe a barbycane, and *the* brygge wynnys. 2470

Ne hade the garnysone bene gude at *the* grete zates,

But the garrison .  
 at the great gates  
 checks them.

Thay hade wonne that wone be theire awene strenghe !

Thane with-drawes oure mene, and drisses theme bettyre,  
 ffor dred of *the* drawe-brigge dasschede in sondre ;

Arthur's men  
 withdraw to  
 where the king  
 is waiting.

Hyes to *the* harbergage, thare the kyngde houys

With his batelle one heghe, horsyde on stedys ; 2476

Thane was *the* prynce puruayede, and *theire* places  
 nommene,

Pyghte paulylyons of paHe, and plattes in seegge.

They pitch their  
 tents, and pre-  
 pare for a regular  
 siege.

Thane lenge they lordly, as *theme* leefte thoghte,

Waches in ylke warde, as to *the* werre falles, 2480

Settes vp sodaynly certayne engynes.

One Sonondaye be *the* Soone has a flethe goldene.

The kyngde calles one Florente, *that* flour was of  
 knyghttez,—

Arthur calls Sir  
 Florent,

“The Fraunche-meñe enfeblesches, ne farly me thynkkys !

They are vn-fondyde folke in *tha* faire marches, 2485

and sends him to  
forage for cattle.

Sir Gawaine him-  
self, the wor-  
shipful warden,  
shall accompany  
them,

and many other  
knights of re-  
nown.

These fresh men  
of arms start on  
their journey  
through woods  
and over hills.  
[leaf 80]

They fall upon a  
field of grass  
newly mown,

where they bait  
their horses,  
while the birds  
sweetly sing.

Sir Gawaine goes  
forth by himself  
to seek adven-  
tures.

He sees a knight  
well armed,

ffor theme wantes *the flesche* and fude that theme lykes.  
Here are fforestez faire appone fele halues, 2487

And thedyre feemene are fiede with freliche bestes !  
Thow salle foonde to *the felle*, and forraye the mountes ;  
Sir fforawnt and *sir* Florydas salle folowe thi brydylle ;  
Vs moste with some fresche mette refresche oure pople,  
That are feedde in *the fyrthe* with *the* froyte of *the* erthe.

Thare salle weende to *this* viage sir Gawayne hymselfene,  
Wardayne fulle wyrchipfulle, and so hym wele semes ;  
Sir Wecharde, *sir* Waltyre, theis wyrchipfulle knyghtes,  
With alle wyseste mene of *the* weste marches ; 2496  
Sir Clegis, *sir* Clarybalde, *sir* Clarymownde *the* noble,  
The capytayne of<sup>1</sup> Cardyfe clenlyche arrayede.

Goo now, warne alle *the* wache, Gawayne and *other*,  
And weendes furthe on *your* waye withowttyne moo  
wordes." 2500

Now ferkes to *the* fyrthe thees fresche mene of armes,  
To *the felle* so fewe, theis fresclyche byernes,  
Thorowe hopes and hymlande hillys and *other*,  
Holtis and bare woddes with heslyne schawes, 2504

Thorowe marasse and mosse and montes so heghe ;  
And in the myste mornynge one a mede falles,  
Mawene and vne-made, maynoyrede bott lyttlylle,  
In swathes sweppene downe, fulle of swete floures. 2508

Thare vnbrydilles theis blode, and baytes *theire* horses,  
To *the* grygyng of *the* daye, *that* byrdez<sup>2</sup> gane synge,  
Whylles the surs of *the sonne*, *that* sonde es of Cryste,  
That solaces alle synfulle, *that* syghte has in erthe. 2512

Thane weendes owtt the wardayne, *sir* Gawayne hyme  
selfene,

AHs he *that* weysse was and wyghte,<sup>3</sup> wondyrs to seke ;  
Thane was he warre of a wye, wondyre wele armyde,  
Baytand one a wattire banke by *the* wodde eynis, 2516  
Buskede in brenyes bryghte to be-halde,  
Enbrassede a brode schelde on a blonke ryche,  
With birenne ony borne, bot a boye one,

<sup>1</sup> MS. oo. <sup>2</sup> MS. *that* byrdez *that* byrdes <sup>3</sup> MS. wyghte wyghtc

- Houes by hym on a blonke, and his spere holdes. 2520 and a page carry-  
 ing his spear.  
 He bare gessenande in golde, thre grayhondes of sable,  
 With chapes a cheynes of chalke whytte syluer,  
 A chareboocle in *the* cheefe, chawngawnde of hewes,  
 And a cheefe anterous, chalange who lykes. 2524 On his shield his  
 coat of arms is  
 depicted.  
 Sir Gawayne glyftes on the gome *with* a glade wille ! Sir Gawaine be-  
 holds him with  
 great joy, and  
 goes across the  
 stream towards  
 him.  
 A grete spere fro his grome he grypes in hondes,  
 Gyrdes ewene ouere *the* streme one a stede ryche,  
 To *that* steryne in stour, one strenghe *thare* he houys !  
 Egerly one Inglisce "Arthure !" he askryes, 2529 He shouts his  
 cry, "Arthur."  
 The *tother* irouslye ansuers hym sone  
 On a launde of Lorrayne with a lowde steuen,  
 That ledes myghte lystene *the* lenghe of a myle ! 2532 The other answers  
 with a loud voice.  
 "Whedyr prykkes thow, pilouur, *that* profers so large ?  
 Here pykes thowe no praye, profire whene *the* lykes !  
 Bot thow in *this* perelle <sup>1</sup> put of the bettire,  
 Thow salle be my presonere, for alle thy prowde lates !"  
 "Sir," sais *sir* Gawayne, "so me Gode helpe ! 2537 Then the strange  
 knight declares  
 that Gawaine  
 shall be his  
 prisoner.  
 Sicke glauerande gomes greues me bot lyttille !  
 Bot if thowe graythe thy gere, the wille grefe happene,  
 Or thowe goo of *this* greue, for alle thy grete wordes !"  
 Thane *theire* launces they lachene, thes lordlyche byernez,  
 Laggene *with* longe speres one lyarde stedes ;  
 Cowpene at awntere be krafes of armes,  
 Tille bothe *the* crowelle speres broustene att ones ! 2544 Both the spears  
 strike fair, and  
 wound the  
 knights.  
 Thorowe scheldys *they* schotte, and scherde thorowe  
 ma[i]les,  
 Bothe schere thorowe schoulders a schaft-monde large !  
 Thus worthylye *thes* wyes wondede ere bothene ;  
 Or they wreke *theme* of wrethe a-waye wille *they* neuer !  
 Than they raughte in the reyne and a-gayne rydes,  
 Redely theis rathe mene rusches owtte swerdez, 2550 Then they rein  
 in their horses  
 [leaf 80, back]  
 and return to  
 the fight with  
 swords.  
 Hittes one hellmes fulle hertelyche dynttys,  
 Hewes appone hawberkes with fulle harde wapyns !  
 ffulle stowttly *they* stryke, thire steryne knyghttes,  
 Stokes at *the* stomake with stelyne poyntes, 2554 Fearful blows are  
 exchanged.

<sup>1</sup> MS. *pererelle*.

feghttene and floresche withe flawmande swerdez,  
Tille *the* flaws of fyre flawmes one theire helmes.

Sir Gawaine  
waxes wroth, and  
strikes grimly  
with his sword  
Galuth.

Thane *sir* Gawayne was greuede, and grychgide fulle  
sore ;

He cleaves the  
knight's shield  
asunder, and lays  
open his side.

With Galuthe his gude swerde grymlye he strykes !  
Clefte *the* knyghttes schelde clenliche in sondre ! 2559  
Who lukes to *the* lefte syde, whene his horse launches,  
With *the* lyghte of *the* sonne men myghte see his  
lyuere !

The knight  
strikes fiercely at  
Sir Gawaine.

Thane granes *the* gome fore greefe of his wondys,  
And gyrdis at *sir* Gawayne, as he by glentis ;  
And awkewarde egerly sore he hym smyttes ; 2564  
An alet enamelde he oches in sondire,  
Bristes *the* rerebrace with the bronde ryche,  
Kerues of at *the* coutere with *the* clene egge,  
Ane[n]tis *the* awawmbrace, vrayllede with siluer ! 2568

He cuts through  
his armour and  
draws blood,

Thorowe a dowble vesture of veluett ryche,  
With *the* venymous swerde a vayne has he towchede !  
That voydes so violently *that* alle his witte changede !  
The vesere, the aventaille, his vesturis ryche, 2572

which flows over  
all his dress.

With the valyant blode was verrede alle ouer !  
Thane this tyrante tite turnes *the* brydille,  
Talkes vn-tendirly, and sais, "*thow* arte towchede !  
Vs bus haue a blode-bande, or thi ble change, 2576  
ffor alle *the* barbours of Bretayne salle noghte thy blode  
stawncho !

Then the knight  
jeers at him, and  
says the blood  
shall never be  
staunched.

ffor he *that* es blemeste with *this* brade brande, blyne  
schalle he neuer."

Sir Gawaine de-  
spises his words,

"3a," quod *sir* Gawayne, "*thow* greues me bot  
lyttille ! 2579 \*

Thowe wenys to glopyne me with thy gret wordez !  
Thow trowes with thy talkynge *that* my harte talmes !  
Thow be-tydes *tour*ffere or thowe hyene turne,  
Bot *thow* telle me tytte, and tarye no lengere,  
What may staunche this blode *that* thus faste rynnes."  
"3ise, I say *the* sothely, and sekire *the* my trowthe,  
No surgyone in Salarne salle saue *the* bettyre ;

and bids him tell  
what will stop  
the bleeding.

The knight will  
tell Gawaine if



With-*thy that* thouwe suffre me, for sake of thy Cryste,  
To schewe shortly my schrifte, and schape for myne  
ende." 2588

he will allow  
him to have  
shrift and pre-  
pare himself for  
his end.

"*3is,*" *quod sir* Gawayne, "so me God helpe!  
I gyfe *the* grace and graunt, *thofe thou* hafe grefe *seruede*,  
With-*thy* thouwe say me sothe what thouwe here sekes,  
Thus sengilly and sulayne alle *thi* selfe one; 2592  
And whate laye thow leues one, layne noghte *the* sothe,  
And whate legyaunce, and whare *thow* arte lorde."

Gawayne readily  
grants this.

"My name es *sir* Priamus; a prynce es my fadyre,  
Praysede in his partyes with prouede kynges; 2596  
In Rome thare he regnes he es riche haldene;  
He has bene rebelle to Rome, and redene theire landes,  
Werreyand wisely wyntters and *3eres*, 2599  
Be witt, and be wyssdome, and be wyghte strenghe,  
And be wyrchipfulle werre, his awene has he wonne.

The stranger  
knight tells him  
that he is Sir  
Priamus, son  
of a prince,

who rebelled  
against Rome,  
and gained a  
[leaf 81]  
kingdom.

He es of Alexandire blode, ouerlynge of kynges,  
The vncler of his ayele, *sir* Ector of Troye; 2603  
And here es the kynredene that I of come,  
And Iudas and Iosue, *thise* gentille knyghtes.

He is of the blood  
of Alexander and  
Hector of Troy;

I ame apparaunt his ayere, and eldeste of *other*;  
Of Alexandere and Aufrike, and alle *tha* owte landes,  
I am in possessione, and plenerly sessede. 2608

related also to  
Judas and  
Joshua;

and is heir of  
Africa.

In alle *the* price cetees that to *the* porte langes,  
I salle hafe trewly the tresour and the londes,  
And bothe trebute and taxe whilles my tyme lastes.  
I was so hawtayne of herte, whilles I at home lengede,  
I helde nane my hippe heghte vndire heuene ryche;  
ffor-*thy* was I sente hedire with seuene score knyghttez,  
To a-saye of this werre, be sente of my fadire; 2615  
And I am for Cyrus witrye schamely supprisede,  
And be aw[n]tire of armes owtrayed fore euere!  
Now hafe I taulde the *the* kyne that I ofe come,  
Wille thow for knyghthede kene me thy name?" 2619

When at home he  
was so proud and  
overbearing,

that he was sent  
by his father to  
this war with a  
band of knights.

"Be Criste," *quod sir* Gawayne, "knyghte was I neuer!  
With *the* kyldde conquerour a knafe of his chambyre  
Has wroghte in his wardrope wynters and *3eres*,

He desires to  
know Sir Ga-  
waine's name.  
Sir Gawayne an-  
swers deceitfully  
that he is only a  
knave of Arthur's  
chamber.

"He made me a  
yeoman at Yule,  
and gave me  
great gifts."

"If his knaves  
be such, his  
knights are no-  
ble!" exclaims  
Sir Priamus.  
Alexander and  
Hector will be  
nothing to him.

Then Sir Gawaine  
tells him the  
truth.

He is Sir Ga-  
waine, cousin to  
the conqueror,  
the richest knight  
of all the Round  
Table.

[leaf 81, back]  
Then Sir Priamus  
says he is better  
pleased than if he  
were prince of  
Provence and  
Paris.

Then he warns  
Gawaine that the  
duke of Lorraine  
with his knights  
is lying in the  
wood near.

One his longe armour that hym beste lykid ; 2623  
I poyne alle his pavelyouns *that* to hym selfe pendes,  
Dyghttes his dowblettez for dukes and erles,  
Aketouns auenaunt fore Arthure hym selfene,

That he vsede in werre alle this aughte wyntter ! 2627

He made me ȝomane at ȝole, and gafe me gret gyftes,  
And c.<sup>1</sup> pounde, and a horse, and harnayse fulle ryche ;  
Gife I hadde to my hele that hende for to serue,

I be holpene in haste, I hette the for-sothe ! " 2631

"Giffe his knafes be syche, his knyghttez are noble !  
Therees no kynge vndire Criste may kempe *with* hym one !  
He wille be Alexander ayre, that alle *the* erthe lowttede,  
Abillere *thane* euer was *sir* Ector of Troye. 2635

Now fore the krisome *that* thou kaghte *that* day thou  
was crystenede,

Whethire thoue be knyghte or knaffe, knawe now *the*  
sothe."

"My name es *sir* Gawayne, I graunt *the* for sothe,  
Cosyne to *the* conquerour, he knawes it hym selfene ;  
Kydd in his kalendar a knyghte of his chambyre, 2640  
And rollede the richeste of alle *the* Rounde Table !

I ame *the* dussepere and duke he dubbede *with* his hondes,  
Deynttely on a daye be-fore his dere knyghtes ;  
Gruche noghte, gude *sir*, *thofe* me this grace happene ;  
It es *the* gifte of Gode, the gree es hys awene ! " 2645

"Petire !" sais Priamus, "now payes me bettire  
Thane I of Provynce warre prynce, and of Paresche ryche !  
ffore me ware leuer preuely be prykkyd to *the* harte,  
Thane euer any prikkere had siehe a pryse wonnyne !

Bot here es herberde at hande, in ȝone huge holtes,  
Halle bataile one heyghe, take hede ȝif the lyke ! 2651  
The duke of Lorryne the derfe, *with* his dere knyghtes,  
The doughtyest of Dolfinede, and Duche mene many,  
The lordes of Lumbardye that leders are haldene,  
The garnysone of Godarde gaylyche arrayede, 2655  
The wyese of *the* Westuale, wirchipfulle biernez,

Of Sessoyne and Surylande Sarazenes enewe ;  
 They are nowmerde fulle neghe, and namede in rollez,  
 Sixty thowsande and tene for-sothe of sekyre mene of  
 armez ; 2659

There is a  
mighty host  
well armed.

Bot ȝif thow hye fro *this* hethe, it harmes vs bothe,  
 And bot my hurtes be sone holpene, hole be I neuer !  
 Tak heede to *this* hansemane, *that* he no horne blawe,  
 Are thowe heyly in haste beese hewene al to peces ;  
 ffor they are my retenuz to ryde whare I wylle, 2664  
 Es none redyare renkes regnande in erthe ;  
 Be thow raghte *with that* rowtt, thow rydes no forther,  
 Ne thow bees neuer rawnsone for reches in erthe !”

He bids him be-  
ware lest they  
should discover  
and destroy him.

Sir Gawayne wente or *the* wathe come, whare hym beste  
 lykede, 2668

Sir Gawaine goes  
with the wound-  
ed knight to Ar-  
thur's men,

With this wortheliche wye, that wondyd was sore ;  
 Merkes to *the* mountayne there oure mene lenges,  
 Baytaynde theire blonkes *ther on the* brode mede ;  
 Lordes lenande lowe one lemande scheldes, 2672

who are baiting  
their horses on the  
broad mead and

With lowde laghttirs one lofte for lykyng of byrdez,  
 Of larkes, of lynkwhyttez, *that* lufflyche songene,  
 And some was sleghte one slepe *with* slaughte of *the* pople,  
 That sange in *the* sesone in the schenne schawes,  
 So lawe in *the* lawndez so lykande notes.

listening to the  
songs of the  
birds.

Thane *sir* Whycher whas warre *thaire* wardayne was  
 wondyde, 2678

Sir Whycher per-  
ceives that Sir  
Gawaine is  
wounded,

And went to hym wepand, and wryngande his handes ;  
 Sir Wychere, *sir* Walchere, theis weise mene of armes,  
 Had wondyre of *sir* Gawayne, and wente hyme a-gayns,  
 Mett hym in the mydwaye, and meruaile theme t[h]oghte  
 How he maisterede *that* mane, so myghtty of strenghes !  
 Be alle *the* welthe of *the* werlde, so woo was *theme* neuer !  
 “ ffor alle oure wirchi pe i-wysse awaye es in erthe !”

and wonders how  
he could have  
conquered this  
mighty knight.

“ Greue ȝow noghte,” *quod* Gawayne, “ for Godis luffe  
 of heuene ;

Sir Gawaine  
makes light of  
his wounds.

flore this es bot goesomere, and gyffene one erles ; 2687  
 Thoffe myschouldire beschrede, and myschelde thyrllede,  
 And the wielde of myne arme werkkes a littille,

His prisoner, Sir  
Priamus, has  
salves that will  
heal them.

They assist him  
to dismount.

[leaf 82]

The knights lift  
Sir Priamus  
from his horse.

They lay him  
down, and take  
off his weeds.

A knight dresses  
their wounds.

Then wine and  
provisions are  
brought to them.

The scouts bring  
news of the army  
in the wood.

Sir Gawaine is for  
attacking them,

This prisonere *sir Priamus*, that has *perilous* wondes,  
Sais *that* he has *saluez* *salle* *softene* vs *bothene*." 2691  
Thane stirttes to his *sterape* *sterynfulle* knyghttez,  
And he lordely lyghttes and laghte of his brydille,  
And lete his burlyche blonke baite on *the* flores ;  
Braydes of his bacenette and his ryche wedis, 2695  
Bownnes to his brode schelde and bowes to *the* erthe,  
In alle the bodye of that bolde es no blode leuede !  
Than preses to *sir Priamous* precious knyghtes,  
Auyssely of his horse hentes hym in armes ; 2699  
His helme and his hawberke *thay* taken of aftyre,  
And hastily for his hurtte alle his herte chawngyd ;  
They laide hyme downe in the lawndez, and laghte of  
his wedes,  
And he lenede hym one lange, or how hym beste lykede.  
A ffoyle of fyne golde they fande at his gyrdille, 2704  
*That* es fulle of *the flour* of *the four* welle,  
*That* flowes owte of *Paradice* whene *the* flode ryces,  
That myche froyt of fallez, *that* feede schalle vs alle ;  
Be it frette on his flesche, *thare* synues are entamede,  
The freke schalle be fische halle with-in fowre howres.  
They vncouere *that* cors with fulle clene hondes ;  
With clere watire a knyghte clensis theire wondes,  
Keled theyme kyndly, and comforthed *ther* hertes.  
And whene *the* carffes ware clene, *thay* clede them a3ayne ;  
Barelle ferrers they brochede, and broghte theme the wyne,  
Bothe brede and brawne, and bredis fulle ryche ; 2715  
Whene *thay* hade etene anone they armede after.  
Thane tha awntrende men "*as armes !*" askryes,  
With a claryoune clere, thire knyghtez to-gedyre,  
Callys to concelle, and of this case tellys :— 2719  
"*3ondyr* es a compagne of clene mene of armes,  
The keneste in contek *that* vndir Criste lenges ;  
In *3one* okene wode an oste are arrayede,  
Vndir-takande mene of *thiese* owte londes ; 2723  
As sais vs *sir Priamous*, so helpe seynt Peter !"  
"Go, mene," quod Gawayne, "and grape in *3oure* hertez,

Who salle graythe to 3one greue to 3one gret lordes ;  
 3if we gettlesse goo home, the kyng wille be greuede,  
 And say we are gadlynges, agaste for a lyttille. 2728

but refers to Sir  
 Florent, the  
 leader of the  
 party.

We are with *sir* Florente, as to-daye falles,  
 That es floure of ffraunce, for he fleede neuer ;  
 He was chosene and chargegide in chambire of *the* kyng,  
 Chiftayne of *this* journee with cheualrye noble ; 2732  
 Whethire he fyghte or he flee, we salle folowe aftyre ;  
 ffore alle *the* fere of 3one folke forsake salle I neuer ! ”

“ ffadyre,” sais *sir* Florent, “ fulle faire 3e it telle !  
 Bot I ame bot a fawntkyne, vn-fraystede in armes ;  
 3if any foly be-falle, *the* fawte salle be owrs,  
 And fremdly o Fraunce be flemede for euer ! 2738

Sir Florent ex-  
 presses his defer-  
 ence to Sir Ga-  
 waine, the warden  
 of the knights of  
 the Round Table,

Woundes noghte 3our wirchipe, my witte es bot symple ;  
 3e are owre wardayne i-wysse, wyrke as 3owe lykes ;  
 3e are at the ferreste noghte passande fyve huñdrethe,  
 And *that* es fully to fewe to feghte with theme alle,  
 ffore harlottez and hansemene salle helpe bott littille ;  
 They wille hye theyme hyene for alle *theire* gret wordes !  
 I rede 3e wyrke aftyre witte, as wyesse men of armes,  
 And warpes wylily a-waye, as wirchipfulle knyghtes.”

and thinks they  
 are too few to  
 [leaf 82, back]  
 fight with so  
 many.

“ I grawnte,” quod *sir* Gawayne, “ so me Gode helpe !  
 Bot here are galyarde gomes *that* of *the* gre seruis,  
 The kreuelleste knyghttes of *the* kynges chambyre,  
 That kane carpe with the coppe knyghtly wordes ;  
 We salle proue to-daye who salle the prys wyne.” 2751

He is for a care-  
 ful retreat.

Nowe ferriours fers vn-to *the* fyrthe rydez,  
 And fonngez a faire felde, and on fotte lyghttez ;  
 Prekes aftyre *the* pray, as pryce mene of armes.  
 florent and Floridas, with fyve score knyghttez, 2755  
 ffollowede in *the* foreste, and on *the* way fowndys,  
 fflyngande a faste trotte, and on *the* folke dryffes.

Arthur's men  
 advance to the  
 wood.

Than felewes fast to oure folke wele a fyve hundreth  
 Of freke mene to *the* fyrthe, appone fresche horses ;  
 One *sir* Feraunt be-fore, apone a fayre stede, 2760  
 Was fosterde in Famacoste, the fende was his fadyre,

A band of 500 of  
 the enemy meet  
 them, headed by  
 Sir Feraunt.

He flenges to *sir* Florent, and pristly he kryes,—

He calls scorn-  
fully on Sir Flo-  
rent,

“Why flees thou, falls knyghte? *thefende* hafe *thi* saule!”

Thane *sir* fflorent was fayne, and in fewter castys ;  
One Fawnelle of ffryselande to<sup>1</sup> fferaunt he rydys, 2765  
And raghte in *the* reyne on *the* stede ryche,

who with his  
lance in rest  
pierces him  
through the  
brain.

And rydes to-warde the rowte, restes he no lengere !  
ffulle butt in *the* frounte he flysches hym eueue, 2768

And alle dysfegoures his face with his felle wapene !  
Thurgh *he* his bryghte bacenette his brayne has he towchede,  
And Brustene his neke-bone, *that* alle his breste stoppede !

His cousin vows  
vengeance for his  
death,

Thane his cosyne askryede, and cryede fulle lowde,  
“Thowe has killede colde dede *the* kyng of alle knyghttes !

He has bene fraistede on felde in fyftene rewmes ; 2774  
He fonde neuer no freke myghte feghte *with* hym one !  
Thow schalle dye for his dede *with* my derfe wapene,  
And alle *the* doughtty for dule *that* in *3*one dale houes !”

but Sir Floridas  
quickly disposes  
of him.

“ffy,” sais *sir* ffloridas, “thow fflieryande wryche !  
Thow wenes for to flay vs, ffloke-mowthede schrewe !”  
Bot ffloridas *with* a swerde, as he by glenttys, 2780  
Alle *the* flesche of *the* flanke he flappes in sondyre,  
That alle *the* filthe of *the* freke and fele of *the* guttes  
ffoloes his fole fotte, whene he furthe rydes ! 2783

Sir Raynald, the  
renegade, proudly  
presses in ;

Than rydes a renke to reschewe *that* byerne,  
That was Raynalde of *the* Rodes, and rebelle to Criste,  
Peruertede *with* paynyns *that* Cristene persewes ;  
Presses in prowldy, as *the* praye wendes, 2787  
ffore he hade in Prewsslande myche pryce wonnene ;  
ffor-thi in presence thare he profers so large !

but Sir Richer,  
of the Round  
Table, runs him  
through with a  
[leaf 83]  
spear.

Bot thane a renke, *sir* Richere of *the* Rounde Table,  
One a ryalle stede rydes hym azaynes ; 2791  
Thorowe a rownnde rede schelde he ruschede hym sone,  
That the rosselde spere to his herte rynnes !

The renke relys a-bowte and rusches to *the* erthe,  
Roris fulle ruydlye, bot rade he no more ! 2795

The rest of the  
five hundred

Now alle *that* es fere and vnfaye of *thes* fyve hundreth

ffalles on *sir* florent, a ffyve score knyghttes,  
 Be-twyx a plasche and a flode, appone a flate lawnde ;  
 Oure folke fongene theire felde, and fawghte theme  
 agaynes. 2799

fall on Sir Florent  
 and his men.

Than was lowde appoñe lofte "Lorraine !" askryede,  
 Whene ledys with longe speris lasschene to-gedyrs,  
 And "Arthure !" one ouresyde, whene theymeoghteaylede.

The one side  
 shouts "Lor-  
 raine," the other  
 "Arthur."

Than *sir* florent and Floridas in fewtyre *they* caste,  
 ffruschene one alle *the* ffrape, and biernes affrayede ;  
 ffeHis fyve at *the* frounte thare they fyrste enteride,  
 And, or they ferke forthire, fele of *these othere* ! 2806  
 Brenyes browddene they briste, brittenede scheldes,  
 Bettes and beres downe the best *that theme* byddes ;  
 Alle *that* rewlyde in the rowtte they rydene awaye,  
 So rewldy they rere theys ryalle knyghttes !

Sir Florent and  
 Sir Floridas per-  
 form great deeds  
 of valour.

When *sir* Priamous, *that* prince, persayuede theire  
 gamene, 2811

Sir Priamus be-  
 seeches Gawaine  
 that he may help  
 Arthur's knights  
 against the Sara-  
 cens.

He hade peté in herte *that* he ne durste profire ;  
 He wente to *sir* Gawayne, and sais hym *these* wordes,—  
 "Thi price mene fore thi praye putt are alle vndyre,  
 They are with Sarazenes ouer-sette, mo *thane* seucne  
 hundreth 2815

Of *the* Sowdanes knyghtes owt of sere londes ;  
 Walde *thow* suffire me, *sir*, for sake of thi Criste,  
 With a soppe of thi mene suppowelle theym ones."

"I grouche noghte," *quod* Gawayne, "*the* gree es  
*thaire* awene ! 2819

Sir Gawaine says  
 that they have  
 not fought their  
 fill these fifteen  
 winters.

They mone hafe gwerddouns full grett graunt of my  
 lorde,

Bot the freke mene of Fraunce fraiste theme selfene !  
 ffrekes faughte noghte *theire* fille this fyftene wynter !  
 I wille noghte stire with my stale halfe a stede lenghe,  
 Bot they be stedde with more stufte *thane* one zone stede  
 houys." 2824

**T**hane *sir* Gawayne was warre, with-owttyne *the* wode  
 heñmes,

He sees, outside  
 the wood,

men of West-  
phalia,

Wyes of *the* Westfale appone wyght horsez,  
Walopande wodely, as *the* waye forthes, 2827  
With alle *the* wapyns i-wys *that* to *the* werre longe.

headed by the  
Earl Antele, who  
leads 8000  
knights.

The erle Antele the olde the awawmwarde he buskes,  
Ayerande one ayther hande heghte thosande knyghtez ;  
His pelours and pauysers passede alle nombyre, 2831  
That euer any prynce lede puruayede in erthe !

Than *the* duke of Lorraine dresesse thare-aftyre,  
With dowbille of *the* Duche-mene, *that* doughtty ware  
holdene ;

Paynymes of Pruyslande, prekkers fulle noble, 2835  
Come prekkande be-fore with Priamous knyghttez.

The Earl is in-  
dignant that Ar-  
thur's knights  
should venture  
to resist so great  
a host.

Than saide the erle Antele to Algere his brother,—

“ Me angers earnestly at Arthures knyghtez !

Thus enkerly one an oste awnters *theme* selfene ; 2839

[leaf 83, back]

They wille be owtrayed anone, are vndrone rynges,

Thus folily one a felde to fyghte with vs alle !

Bot they be fesede in faye, ferly me thynkes ! 2842

They had better  
retreat while  
they are able.

Walde they *purposse* take, and passe one theire wayes,

Prike home to theire prynce, and theire pray leue,

They myghtelenghene theirelyefe, and lossene bott littille !

It wolde lyghte my herte, so helpe me oure Lorde ! ”

Sir Alger, his  
brother, says that  
though they are  
so few they are  
a match for an  
army.

“ Sir,” sais *sir* Algere, “ thay hafe littille vsede 2847

To be owtrayed withe oste : me angers *the* more !

The fayreste schalle be fulle feye, *that* in oure floke ryddez,

Alls fewe as they bene, are they the felde leue ! ”

Sir Gawaine  
encourages his  
knights.

**T**hane gud Gawayne, gracious and noble, 2851

Alle with glorious gle he gladdis his knyghtes ;

“ Gloppyns noghte, gud mene, for gleterand scheldes,

3ofe 3one gadlyngez be gaye one 3one gret horses !

Banerettez of Bretayne, buskes vp 3our hertes ! 2855

Bees noghte baiste of 3one boyes, ne of *thaire* bryghte wedis !

We salle blenke theire boste for alle theire bolde profire,

Als bouxome as birde es in bede to hir lorde !

“ If we fight to-  
day, the field  
shall be ours.”

3effe we feghte to-daye, *the* felde schalle be owrs, 2859

The fekillle faye salle faile, and falssede be distroyede !



3one folk is one ffrountere, vnfraistede theyme semes ;  
 Thay make faythe and faye to *the* fend seluene !  
 We salle in this viage victoures be holdene, 2863  
 And avauntede with voyce of valyant biernez ;  
 Praysede with prynce in presence of lordes,  
 And luffede with ladyes in dyuerse londes !  
 Aughte neuer sicke honoure none of oure elders, 2867  
 Vnwyne ne Absolone, ne none of thies *other* !

Great shall be the  
 rewards and joys  
 of victory.

Whene we are moste in destresse, Marie we mene,<sup>1</sup>  
 That es oure maisters seyne, *that* he myche traistez ;  
 Melys of *that* mylde qwene, that menskes vs alle ; 2871  
 Who so meles of *that* mayde, myskaries he neuer !”

In distress let  
 them complain to  
 Mary the mild  
 queen.

Bethese wordes ware saide, they ware noghte ferre be-hynde  
 Bot the lenghe of a launde, and “Lorayne !” askryes.

The enemy come  
 upon them.

Was neuer sicke a justynge at journé in erthe, 2875  
 In the vale of Iosephate, as gestes vs telles,  
 Whene Iulyus *and* Ioatalle ware juggede to dy,  
 As was whene *the* ryche mene of *the* Rownde Table  
 Ruschede in-to *the* rowte one ryalle stedes ! 2879

Never was there  
 such a jousting.  
 Even that in the  
 valley of Jehosha-  
 phat was not  
 equal to it.

ffor so raythely *thay* rusche with roselde speris,  
 That the raskaille was rade, and rane to *the* grefes,  
 And karede to *that* courte as cowardes for euer !

The rascal rout  
 run to the groves.

“Peter !” sais *sir* Gawayne, “this gladdez myne herte !  
 That 3one gedlynges are gone, that made gret nowmbre ;  
 I hope that thees harlottez salle harme vs bot littille,  
 ffore they wille hyde theme in haste with-in 3one holte  
 enis ! 2886

Gawaine rejoices  
 at the flight of  
 the rabble.

Thay are fewere one ffelde *than* *thay* were fyrste nombirde,  
 Befourtty thousande in faythe, for alle theyre faire hostes.”

[leaf 84]

Bot one Iolyan of Iene, a geante fulle howge,  
 Has joneded one *sir* Ierante, a justis of Walis ;  
 Thorowe a jerownde schelde he jogges hym thorowe,  
 And a fyne gesserawnte of gentille mayles, 2892  
 Ioynter and gemows, he jogges in sondyre !  
 One a jambe stede *this* jurnee he makes ;

A huge giant is  
 slain by a justice  
 of Wales.

<sup>1</sup> neuene struck out, and mene written instead.

Thus es *the* geante for-juste, that errawnte Iewe, 2895  
And Gerarde es jocunde, and joyes hym *the* more !

Sir Frederick attacks the British forayers.

Than the genatours of Genne enjoynes att ones,  
And frykis one *the* frowntere wellle a fyve hundreth ;  
A freke highte *sir* ffederike, with fulle fele *other*, 2899  
fferkes one a frusche, and fresclyche askryes  
To fyghte with oure fforreours, *that* one felde houis.

The knights of the Round Table advance and fight valiantly.

And thane the ryalle renkkes of *the* Rownde Table  
Rade furth fulle earnestly, and rydis theme agaynes,  
Mellis with the medille-warde, bot they ware illemachede ;  
Of siche a grett multytude was meruayle to here.  
Seyne at *the* assemblé the Sarazenes discoueres  
The soueraynge of Sessoyne, that saluede was neuer ;  
Gyawntis for-justede with gentille knyghtes, 2908  
Thorowe gesserawntes of Iene jaggede to *the* herte !  
They hewe thorowe helmes hawtayne biernez,  
*That the* hiltede swerdes to *thaire* hertes rynnys !  
Than *the* renkes renownde of *the* Rownd Table  
Ryffes and ruyssches downe renayede wreches ; 2913  
And thus they dreuene to *the* dede dukes and erles,  
Alle *the* dreghe of *the* daye, with dredfulle werkes !

Sir Priamus and his followers desert to the side of Arthur's men.

**T**thane *sir* Priamous *the* prynce, in presens of lordes,  
Presez to his penowne, and pertly it hentes,  
Reuertede it redily, and a-waye rydys  
To *the* ryalle rowte of *the* Rownde Table ; 2919  
And heyly his retenuz raykes hym aftyre,  
ffor they his resone had rede on his schelde ryche.

They upbraid the Duke of Lorraine for not having paid them their wages.

Owte of *the* scheltrone *they* schede, as schepe of a folde,  
And steris furth to *the* stowre, and stode be *theire* lorde !  
Seyne they sent to *the* duke, and saide hym *thise* wordes,—  
“ We hafe bene thy sowdeours this sex 3ere and more ;  
We for-sake *the* to-daye be serte of owre lorde ; 2926  
We sewe to oure soueraynge in sere kynges londes.  
Vs defawtes oure feez of *this* foure wyntteres ;  
Thow arte feble and false, and noghte bot faire wordes ;  
Oure wages are werede owte, and *thi* werre endide,

We maye *with* oure wirchipe weend whethire vs lykes !

I red *thowe* trette of a trewe, and trofle no lengere,  
Or *thow* salle tyne of thi tale ten thosande or euene."

"ffya debles!" saide *the* duke, "the deuelle haue *3our* bones! The Duke answers furiously.  
The dawngere of *3on* doggez drede schalle I neuer ! [leaf 84, back]

We salle dele this daye, be dedes of armes, 2936

My dede, and my ducherye, and my dere knyghtes !

Siche sowdeours as *3e* I sett bot att lyttile,

That sodanly in defawte for-sakes theire lorde !" 2939

The duke in his schelde and dreches no lengere,

Drawes hym a dromedarie, with dredfulle knyghtez ; He charges Arthur's knights on a dromedary.

Graythes to *sir* Gawayne, with fulle gret nowmbyre

Of gomes of Gernaide, that greuouse are holdene. 2943

Thas fresche horsesede mene to *the* frownt rydes,

ffelles of oure fforreours be fourtty at ones !

They hade foughttene be-fore with a fyve hundrethe ; His men fell many of the forayers.

It was no ferly, in faythe, *thofe* they faynt waxene.

Thane *sir* Gawayne was grefede, and grypys his spere, Sir Gawayne grasps his spear.

And gyrdez in agayne with galyarde knyghttez ; 2949

Metes *the* maches of Mees, and melles hym thorowe,

As man of *this* medille-erthe, *that* moste hade greuede.

Bot on Chastelayne, a childe of *the* kynges chambyre, Child Chastelaine slays Sir Cheldrik,

Was warde to *sir* Wawayne of *the* weste marches,

Cheses to *sir* Cheldrike, a cheftayne noble,

With a chasyng spere he chokkes hym thurghe ! 2955

This chekke hyme eschewede be chauncez of armes ;

So *thay* chase *that* childe, eschape may he neuer !

Bot on Swyane of Swecy, with a swerde egge,

The swyers swyre-bane he swappes in sondyre ! 2959

He swounande diede, *and* on *the* swarthe lengede, and is slain by Swyan.

Sweltes ewynne swiftly, and swanke he no more !

**T**han *sir* Gawayne gretes with his gray eghne ; Gawaine grieves for him.

The guyte was a gude mane, be-gynnande of armes.

ffore the charry childe so his chere chawngide, 2964

That the chillande watire one his chekes rynnnyde !

"Woo es me," quod Gawayne, "that I ne wetene hade ;

He slays one Sir  
Dolphin,

then Hardolf,  
happy in arms,

and sixty more.

He avenges the  
child,

[leaf 85]

and cuts his way  
through the  
enemy.

The great deeds  
of Arthur's chiv-  
alrous men se-  
cure the victory.

Sir Florent  
presses on with  
five score  
knights.

I salte wage for that wye alle *that* I welde, 2967  
Bot I be wrokene on that wye, that thus has hym wondyde !”

He dresses hym drerily, and to *the* duke rydes,  
Bot one *sir* Dolphyn the derfe dyghte hym agaynes,  
And *sir* Gawayne hym gyrd with a grym launce, 2971  
That the groundene spere glade to his herte !

And egerly he hente owte, and hurte a-nother,  
An haythene knyghte, Hardolfe, happye in armes ;  
Sleyghly in at the slotte slyttes hym thorowe, 2975  
That the slydande spere of his hande sleppes !

Thare es slayne in *that* slope, be elagere of his hondes,  
Sexty slongene in a slade of sleghe men of armes !

*Thofe sir* Gawayne ware wo, he wayttes hym by,  
And was warre of *that* wye that the childe wondyde,  
And with a swerde swiftly he swappes hym thorowe,  
That he swyftly swelte, and on *the* erthe swounes !

And thane herayke to *the* rowte, and ruysches one helmys ;  
Riche hawberkes he rente, and rasede schyldes ; 2984  
Rydes one a rawndoune, and his rayke holdes ;  
Thorow-owte *the* rerewarde he holdes wayes,  
And thare raughte in the reyne this ryalle *the* ryche,  
And rydez in-to *the* rowte of *the* Rownde Table.

**T**hane oure cheualrous<sup>1</sup> men changene their horsez,  
Chases and choppes downe cheftaynes noble,  
Hittes fulle hertely on helmes and scheldes, 2991  
Hurtes and hewes downe haythene knyghtez !  
Ketelle-hattes they cleue euene to *the* scholdirs !  
Was neuer siche a clamour of capitaynes in erthe !  
Thare was kynges sonnes kaughte, curtays and noble,  
And knyghtes of *the* contré, that knawene was ryche ;  
Lordes of Lorayne and Lumbardye bothene 2997  
Laugh[t]e was, and lede in with oure lele knyghttez ;  
Thas *that* chasede that daye, their chaunce was bettire,  
Swiche a cheke at a chace escheuede theyme neuer !

**W**hen *sir* florent, be fyghte, had *the* felde wonene,  
He fferkes ine be-fore with fyve score knyghttez ;

<sup>1</sup> MS. cheualrours.

Theire prayes and *theire* presoneress passes one aftyre,  
 With pylours, and pausers, and pryse mene of armes.  
 Thane gudly *sir* Gawayne gydes his knyghttez,  
 Gas in at *the* gayneste, as gydes hym telles,  
 ffore greffe of a garysone of fulle gret lordes 3007  
 Sulde noghte gripe vpe his gere, ne swyche grame wirche.  
 ffore-*thy* they stode at the straytez, and with his stale  
 houede,

Sir Gawaine follows with caution,

Tille his prayes ware paste the pathe that he dredis ;  
 Whene they the ceté myghte see that the kyng seggede,  
 Sothely the same daye was wit[h] asawte wonnene. 3012  
 An hawrawde hys be-fore, the beste of the lordes,  
 Hom at *the* herbergage, owt of tha hyghe londes ;  
 Tornys tytte to *the* tente, and to the kynge telles 3015  
 Alle the tale sothely, and how they hade spede ;—  
 “ Alle *thy* forreours are fere, that forrayede with-owt*tyne*,  
 Sir fflorient, and *sir* ffloridas, and alle *thy* ferse knyghtez ;  
 Thay hafe forrayede and foghtene with fulle gret nowm-  
 byre, 3019

and sees the city which Arthur is besieging won on the same day.

A herald hies to Arthur and tells him of the victory of his knights,

And fele of *thy* foo-mene has broghte owt of lyffe !  
 Oure wirchipulle wardayne es wele escheuynde,  
 ffor he has wonne to-daye wirchipe for euere,  
 He has Dolfyne slayne, and *the* duke takyne ! 3023  
 Many dowghty es dede be dynt of his hondes !  
 He has presoners price, pryncez and erles,  
 Of *the* richeste blode *that* regnys in erthe !  
 Alle *thy* cheuallrous mene faire are eschewede, 3027  
 Bot a childe Chasteleynne myschance es be-fallene.”  
 “ Hawtayne,” sais *the* kyng, “ harawde, be Criste !  
 Thow has helyd myne herte, I hete the for-sothe !  
 I 3ife the in Hamptone a hundreth pownde large.” 3031

and how Sir Gawaine has won worship for ever.

Then the king rejoices and gives him a hundred pounds.

[leaf 85, back]

**T**he kynge *than* to assawte he sembles his knyghtez,  
 With somercastelle and sowe appone sere halves ;  
 Skyftis his skotiferis, and skayles the wallis,  
 And iche wache<sup>1</sup> has his warde with wiese mene of  
 armes. 3035

Arthur assembles his knights to assault the city.

<sup>1</sup> Or wathe.

Churches and  
chapels are beaten  
to earth.

Thane boldly *thay* buske, and bendes engynes,  
Payses in pylotes and proues theire castes ;  
Mynsteris and masondewes they malle to *the* erthe,  
Chirches and chapelles chalke-whitte blawnchede. 3039  
Stone [s]tepelles fulle styffe in *the* strete ligges,  
Chawmbyrs with chymnés, and many cheefe inns,  
Paysede and pelid downe playsterede walles ;

The pain of the  
people is pity to  
hear.

The pyne of *the* pople was peté for to here ! 3043  
Thane *the* ducheze hire dyghte with damesels ryche,  
The cowntas of Crasyne with hir clere maydyns,  
Knelis downe in *the* kynnelles thare the kyng honede,  
On a couerede horse comlyli arayedé ; 3047

The ladies sue  
for merey.

They knewehym by contenaunce, and criede fulle lowde,—  
“Kyng crownede of kynde, take kepe to *these* wordes !  
We be-seke 3ow, *sir*, as soueraynge and lorde,  
That 3e safe vs to-daye, for sake of 3oure Criste ! 3051  
Send vs some socoure, and saughte with the pople,  
Or *the* ceté be sodaynly with assawte wonnene !”  
He weres his vesere with a vowe noble ;  
With vesage vertuous, this valyante bierne 3055  
Meles to hir myldly with fulle meke wordes,—

Arthur promises  
that no hurt shall  
befall them.

“Salle no mysse do 3ow, ma dame, *that* to me lenges ;  
I gyf 3ow chartire of pes, *and* 3oure cheefe maydens,  
The childire *and the* chastemene, the cheualrous knyghtez ;  
The duke es in dawngere, dredis it bott littylle ! 3060  
He salle idene *the* fulle wele, dout 3ow noghte ehes.”

The city is sur-  
rendered.

Thane sent he one iche a syde to certayne lordez,  
ffor to leue *the* assawte, the ceté was 3oldene ; 3063  
With *the* erle eldeste sone he sent hym *the* kayes,  
And seside *the* same nyghte, be sent of *the* lordes.

The Duke is sent  
to Dover as a  
prisoner.

The duke to Douere es dyghte, and alle his dere knyghtez,  
To duelle in dawngere and dole *the* dayes of hys lyue.

Many of the in-  
habitants escape.

Thare fleede, at the ferrere 3ate, folke withowttynne  
nombyre, 3068

ffor ferde of *sir* fflorent and his fers knyghtez ;  
Voydes the ceté and to the wode rynnys,  
With vetaile, and vesselle, and vestoure so ryche. 3071

Thay buske vpe a banere abowne *the* brode 3ates.

Of *sir* fflorent, in ffay so fayne was he neuer !

The knyghte houys on a hylle, be-helde to *the* wallys,

And saide, "I see be 3one syngne the ceté es oures !"

Sir Florent sees  
by a sign that  
the city is won.

Sir Arthure enters anone with hostes arayede, 3076

Euene at *the* vndrone etles to lenge.

Arthur enters  
with his hosts.

In iche leuere on lowde the kynge did crye,

Of payne of lyf and lym and lesyng of londes,

[leaf 86]

That no lele ligemane, that to hym lonngede, 3080

Sulde lye be no ladysse, ne be no lele maydyns,

He forbids his  
liegemen to lie  
with the ladies.

Ne be no burgesse wyffe, better ne werse ;

Ne no biernez myse-bide, that to *the* burgh longe.

Whene *the* kyng Arthure had lely conquerid, 3084

And the castelle couerede of *the* kythe riche,

Arthur provides  
for the govern-  
ment of Lorraine  
which he has  
conquered.

Alle *the* crowelle and kene, be craftes of armes,

Captayns and constables, knewe hym for lorde.

He deuysede and delte to dyuerse lordez,

3088

A dower for *the* ducheze and hir dere childire ;

Wroghte wardaynes by wytte to welde alle *the* londez,

That he had wonnene of werre, thorowe his wise

knyghtez.

3091

Thus in Lorayne he lenges as lorde in his awene,

Settez lawes in the lande, as hym leefe t[h]oghte ;

And one *the* Lammese day to Lucerne he wendez,

At Lammas he  
goes to Lucerne.

Lengez thare at laysere with lykyng i-nowe ; 3095

Thare his galays ware graythede, a fulle gret nombyre,

His fair galleys  
are assembled.

Alle gleterand as glase, vndire grene hyllys,

With cabanes couerede for kynges a-noyntede,

With clothes of clere golde for knyghtez and *other* ;

Sone stowede theire stufte, and stablede *theire* horses,

Strekes streke ouer *the* strem in-to *the* straye londez.

He leads his  
forces over the  
high mountains  
by marvellous  
ways ;

Now he moues his myghte with myrthles of herte,

Ouere mowntes so hye, *thase* meruailous wayes ; 3103

Gosse in by Goddarde, the garett he wynnys,

passes the St  
Gothard after de-  
feating the gar-  
rison ;

Graythes the garnisone grisely wondes !

Whene he was passede the heghte, than the kyng houys

With his hole bataylle, be-haldaunde a-bowte, 3107

looks down on  
Lombardy, and  
advances to  
Como.

Lukande one *Lumbarddye*, and one lowde melys,—  
 “In 3one lykande londe, lorde be I thynke.”  
 Thane they cayre to Combe, with kyngez a-noyntede,  
 That was kyde of *the* coste, kay of alle *other*. 3111  
 Sir fflorent and *sir* floridas *than* fowndes be-fore,  
 With fireke mene of ffraunce welle a fyve hundreth ;  
 To *the* ceté vn-sene thay soghte at *the* gayneste,  
 And sett an enbuschement, als *theme* selfe lykys. 3115  
 Thane ischewis owt of *that* ceté, fulle sone be *the* morne,  
 Slale discourours, skyftes theire horses ;  
 Than skyftes *thes* skouerours, and skippes one hyllis,  
 Diskoueres for skulkers that they no skathe lymppene ;  
 Poueralle and pastorelles passede one aftyre, 3120  
 With porkes to pasture at the price 3ates ;  
 Boyes in *the* subarbis bourdene ffulle heghe,  
 At a bare synglere that to *the* bente rynnys.  
 Thane brekes oure buschemeñt, and the brigge wynnes,  
 Brayedez in-to *the* burghes with baners displayede, 3125  
 Stekes and stabbis<sup>1</sup> thorowe that them a-3ayne-stondes ;  
 ffowre stretis, or *thay* stynte, they stroyene fore euer !  
 Now es the conquerour in Combe, and his courte holdes  
 Within *the* kyde castelle, with kynges enoyntede ;  
 Reconsaillez<sup>2</sup> the comouns *that* to *the* kyth lengez,  
 Comfourthes *the* careffulle with knyghtly wordez ; 3131  
 Made a captayne kene a knyghte of hys awene ;  
 Bot alle *the* contré and he fulle sone ware accordide.

Sir Florent and  
Sir Floridas plant  
an ambush,

and capture the  
city.  
[leaf 86, back]

The conqueror  
holds his court  
in Como.

The lord of  
Milan sends to  
offer submission  
and tribute.

The syre of Melane herde saye *the* ceté was wonnene,  
 And send to Arthure sertayne lordes, 3135  
 Grete sommes of golde, sexti horse chargegid,  
 Be-soghte hyme as souerayne to socoure *the* pople,  
 And saide he wolde sothely be sugette for euer,  
 And make hyme *seruece* and suytte for his sere londes ;  
 ffor plesaunce of Pawnce, and of Pownte Tremble, 3140  
 ffor Pyse, and for Pavy, he *profers* fulle large,  
 Bothe purpur, and palle, and precious stonys,  
 Palfrayes for any prynce, and prouede stedes ; 3143

<sup>1</sup> MS. stablis.

<sup>2</sup> Or Beconsaillez.



And ilke a 3ere for Melane a melione of golde,  
 Mekely at Martynmesse to menske *with* his hordes ;  
 And euer withowttyne askynge he and his ayers  
 Be homagers to Arthure, whilles his lyffe lastis. 3147  
 The kynge be his concelle a condethe hym sendis,  
 And he es comene to Combe, and knewe hym as lorde.

He pays homage  
 to Arthure at  
 Como.

**I**n-to Tuskane he tourne, whene *thus* wele tymede,  
 Takes townnes fulle tyte with towrres fulle heghe ;  
 Walles he welte downe, wondyd knyghtez, 3152  
 Towrres he turnes, and turmentez *the* pople,  
 Wroghte wedewes fulle wlonke, wrotherayle synges,  
 Ofte wery and wepe, and wryngene theire handis ; 3155  
 And alle he wastys with werre, thare he awaye rydez,  
 Thaire welthes and theire wonny[n]ges, wandrethe he  
 wroghte !

Arthur enters  
 Tuscany,

and ravages the  
 country.

Thus they spryngene and sprede, and sparis bot lyttille,  
 Spoylles dispetouslye, and spillis theire vynes ; 3159  
 Spendis vn-sparely, *that* sparede was lange,  
 Spedis theme to Spolett with speris inewe !  
 ffro Spayne in-to Spruyslande the worde of hyme  
 sprynges, 3162

And spekyngs of his spencis, disspite es fulle hugge !  
 Towarde Viterbe this valyant avires the reynes ;  
 Avissely in *that* vale he retailles his biernez,  
 With vernage, and *other* wyne, and venysone bakene ;  
 And one the vicounte londes he visez to lenge. 3167

In the Vale of  
 Viterbo he  
 victuals his men.

Vertely the avawmwarde voydez theire horsez,  
 In the Vertennone vale, the vines i-mangez ;  
 Thare suggeournes this souerayne, with solace in herte,  
 To see whene the senatours sent any wordes ; 3171  
 Reuelle *with* riche wyne, riores hym selfene,  
 This roy with his ryalle mene of *the* Rownde Table,  
 With myrthis, and melodye, and manykyne gamēes ;  
 Was neuer meriere men made one this erthe ! 3175

The king and his  
 knights make  
 [leaf 87]  
 great merriment.

**B**ot one a Seterdaye at none, a seuenyghte thare-aftyre,  
 The konyngeste cardynalle that to the courte lengede  
 Knelis to *the* conquerour, and karpes thire wordes,

The cunningest  
 Cardinal of Rome  
 is sent to him,

and offers that  
the Pope shall  
crown him as  
sovereign in  
Rome.

Hostages are  
given for the  
truth of his  
words.

The Roman sena-  
tors are solemnly  
feasted.

Arthur glorifies  
himself for his  
great success.

Prayes hym for *the* pes, and profyrs fulle large, 3179  
To hafe peté of *the* pope, *that* put was at-vndere ;  
Be-soghte hym of surrawns, for sake of oure Lorde,  
Bot a seuenyghte daye to *thay* ware alle semblede,  
And they schulde sekerlye hym see the Sonondaye  
*ther*-aftyre, 3183

In the ceté of Rome, as soueraynge and lorde ;  
And crowne hyme kyndly *with* krysomede hondes,  
*With* his ceptre, as soueraynge and lorde.  
Of this vndyrtakynge ostage are comyne, 3187  
Of ayers fulle auenaunt awughte score childrenne,  
In toges of tarsse fulle richelye attyryde,  
And be-tuke theme the kynge, and his clere knyghttes.  
When they had tretide thiere trewe, *with* trowmpynge  
*ther*-after 3191

They tryne vn-to a tente, whare tables whare raysede ;  
The kynge hyme selfene es sette, and certayne lordes,  
Vndyre a sylure of sylke, sawghte at the burdez,  
Alle the senatours are sette sere be *thame* one, 3195  
Serfed solemply *with* selcouthe metes :  
The kynge myghtty of myrthe, *with* his mylde wordes,  
Rehetez the Romaynes at his riche table,  
Comforthes the cardynalle so knyghtly<sup>1</sup> hyme seluene ;  
And this roye ryalle, as romawns vs tellis, 3200  
Reuerence the Romayns in his riche table.

The tawghte mene and *the* conynge, whene theme tyme  
thoghte,

Tas theire lefe at *the* kynge, and tornede agayne ; 3203  
To *the* ceté *that* nyghte thaye soughte at *the* gayneste,  
And thus the ostage of Rome *with* Arthure es leuede.

**T**han this roy royalle rehersys theis wordes,—  
“ Now may we reuelle and riste, fore Rome es oure  
awene ! 3207

Make oure ostage at ese, *thise* auenaunt<sup>2</sup> childyrene,  
And luk 3e hondene theme alle that in myne oste lengez,  
The emperour of Almayne, and alle theis este marches ;

<sup>1</sup> MS. knyghtly.

<sup>2</sup> MS. auenaunt.

We salle be ouerlynge of alle *that* one the erthe lengez !  
 We wille by *the* Crosse dayes encroche<sup>1</sup> *theis* londez,  
 And at *the* Crystynmesse daye be crowned<sup>2</sup> ther-aftyre ; He will be crown-  
 Ryngne in my ryalltés, and holde my Rownde Table, ed at Christmas  
 Withe the rentes of Rome, as me beste lykes ; 3215 in Rome, and  
 Syne graythe ouer *the* grette see with gud mene of armes, hold his Round  
 To reuenge the renke that one the rode dyede !” Table there.  
 Thane this comlyche kyng, as cronycles tellys,  
 Bownnys brathely to bede with a blythe herte ; 3219 He goes to bed  
 Of he slynges with sleghte, and slakes gyrdille, and dreams.  
 And fore slewthe of slomowre one a slepe fallis.  
 Bot be ane aftyre mydnyghte alle his mode changede ;  
 He mett in the morne-while fulle *meruaylous* dremes ! [leaf 87, back]  
 And whene his dredefulle drem whas drefene to *the* ende,  
 The kyng dares for dowte, dye as he scholde ; 3225  
 Sendes aftyre phylosophers, and his affraye telles,— He sends for his  
 “ *Sene* I was formede in fayth, so ferde whas I neuer ! philosophers, and  
 ffor-thy rawnsakes redyly, and rede me my swefennys, tells them the  
 And I salle redily and ryghte rehersene the sothe. dream.  
 Me thoughte I was in a wode willed myne one, He was in a  
 That I ne wiste no waye whedire *that* I scholde, 3231 wood among wild  
 ffore woluez, and whilde swynne, and wykkyde bestez ; beasts,  
 Walkede in that wasternne, wathes to seche ;  
 Thare lyouns fulle lothely lykkyde *theire* tuskes,  
 Alle fore lapyng of blude of my lele knyghtez ! 3235 which were lick-  
 Thurghe *that* foreste I flede, thare floures whare heghe, ing from their  
 ffor to fele me for ferde of tha foule thynges ; teeth the blood  
 Merkede to a medowe with montayngnes enclosyde, of his knights.  
 The meryeste of medillerthe that mene myghte be-holde !  
 The close was in compas castyne alle abowte,  
 With clauer and clereworte clede euene ouer ;  
 The vale was enuerownde<sup>3</sup> with vynes of siluer,  
 Alle with grapis of golde, gretter ware neuer, 3243  
 Enhorilde with arborye and alkyns trees,  
 Erberis fulle honeste, and hyrdez *there*-vndyre ;

<sup>1</sup> MS. Encroche encroche.<sup>2</sup> MS. crownend.<sup>3</sup> MS. euene rownde.

Alle froytez foddened was *that* floreschede in erthe,  
 ffaire frithed in frawnke appone tha free bowes; 3247  
 Whas thare no downkyng of dewe that oghte dere  
 scholde,

With *the* drowghte of *the* daye alle drye ware *the* flores!

A beautilful  
 duchess de-  
 scended from the  
 clouds,

Than discendis in the dale, downe fra *the* clowddez,  
 A duchess dereworthily dyghte in dyaperde wedis, 3251

dressed in gor-  
 geous apparel.

In a surcott of sylke fulle selkouthely hewede,  
 Alle with loyotour ouer-laide lowe to *the* hemmes,  
 And with ladily lappes the lenghe of a 3erde,  
 And alle redily reuersside with rebanes of golde, 3255  
 Bruchez and besauntez, and *other* bryghte stonys,  
 With hir bake and hir breste was brochede alle ouer,  
 With kelle and with corenalle clenliche arrayede,  
 And *that* so comly of colour one knowene was neuer!

She whirled a  
 strange wheel  
 with her hands.

A-bowte cho whirllide a whele with hir whitte hondez,  
 Ouer-whelme alle qwayntely *the* whele as cho scholde;  
 The rowelle whas rede golde with ryalle stonys,  
 Raylide with reched and rubyes i-newe; 3263

Thereon was a  
 chair of silver,  
 ornamented with  
 carbuncles.

Kings clawe to  
 the wheel one  
 after another.

The spekes was splentide alle with speltis of siluer,  
 The space of a spere lenghe springande fulle faire;  
 There-one was a chayere of chalke-whytte siluer,  
 And chekyrde with charebocle chawngyng of hewes;  
 Appone *the* compas ther clewide kyngis one rawe,  
 With corowns of clere golde *that* krakede in sondire:  
 Sex was of *that* setille fulle sodaynliche fallene, 3270  
 Ilke a segge by hyme selfe, and saide theis wordez,—  
 ‘That euer I rengnede one *this* rog, me rewes it euer!

Six had fallen  
 from the settle,  
 and lamented  
 their misfortune.

[leaf 88]

Was neuer roye so riche that regnede in erthe!  
 Whene I rode in my rowte, roughte I noghte elles,  
 Bot reuaye, and reuelle, and rawnsone the pople! 3275  
 And thus I drife forthe my dayes, whilles I dreghe  
 myghte,

The first was a  
 little man with  
 lean loins and  
 long hair.

And there-fore derflyche I am dampnede for euer!’  
 The laste was a litylle mane that laide was be-nethe,  
 His leskes laye alle lene and latheliche to schewe, 3279

The lokkes lyarde and longe the lenghe of a 3erde,  
 His lire and his lyghame lamede fulle sore ;  
*The two eyne of the byeryne was brighttere thane siluer,*  
 The *tother* was 3alowere thene the 3olke of a naye.

‘I was lorde,’ *quod* the lede, ‘of londes i-newe, 3284  
 And alle ledis me lowttede that lengede in erthe ;  
 And nowe es lefte me no lappe my lygham to hele,  
 Bot lightly now ame I loste, leue iche mane the sothe !’

He had been lord  
 of many lands,  
 but now was lost.

The secunde *sir* for-sothe *that* sewede theme aftyre,  
 Was sekerare to my sighte, and saddare in armes ;  
 Ofte he syghede vn-sownde, and said theis wordes,—  
 ‘On 3one see hafe I sittene, als souerayne and lorde,  
 And ladys me louede to lappe in theyre armes ; 3292  
 And nowe my lordchippes are loste, and laide for euer !’

The second had  
 sat on the seat as  
 sovereign and  
 lord.

The thirde thorowely was throo, and thikke in the  
 schuldrys,

The third was  
 stout and strong.

A thra man to thrette of, there thretty ware gaderide ;  
 His dyademe was droppede downe, dubbyde with stonys,  
 Endente alle with diamawndis, and dighte for *the* nonis ;  
 ‘I was dredde in my dayes,’ he said, ‘in dyuerse rewmes,  
 And now dampnede to *the* dede, and dole es the more !’

He had been  
 dreaded in his  
 day.

The fourte was a faire mane, and forsesy in armes,  
 The fayreste of fegure that *fourmede* was euer !

The fourth was a  
 fair man, but foul  
 mischance had  
 now happened to  
 him.

‘I was frekke in my faithe,’ he said, ‘whilles I one  
 fowlde regnede,

ffamows in fferre londis, and floure of alle kynges ; 3303  
 Now es my face defadide, and foule es me hapnede,  
 ffor I am fallene fro ferre, and frendles by-leuyde !’

The fifte was a faire mane *thane* fele of *thies other*,  
 A fforsesy mane and a ferse, with fomand lippis ; 3307  
 He fongede faste one *the* feleyghes, and fayled his armes,  
 Bot 3it he failede and felle a fyfty fote large ;

The fifth was very  
 fierce and violent.

Bot 3it he sprange and sprete, and spraddene his armes,  
 And one *the* spere-lenghe spekes, he spekes *thire* wordes—

‘I was in Surrye a syr, and sett be myne one, 3312  
 As souerayne and seyngnour of sere kynges londis ;

He had been  
 sovereign in  
 Syria, but was  
 now fallen.

Now of my solace I am fulle sodanly fallene,  
And for sake of my syne, 3one sete es me rewede !'

The sixth had a  
psalter well-  
bound, a harp,  
and a sling.

The sexte hade a sawtere semliche bowndene,  
With a surepel of silke sewede fulle faire, 3317

A harpe and a hande-slynge with harde flynte stones ;  
What harmes he has hente he halowes fulle sone,—  
'I was demede in my dayes,' he said, 'of dedis of armes

He had been  
among the  
[leaf 88, back]  
doughtiest in  
his day, but had  
been marred by  
the maiden.

One of the doughtyeste that duelled in erthe ;  
Bot I was merride one molde in my moste strengthethis,  
With this maydene so mylde, *that* mofes vs alle.' 3323

Two kynges ware clymbande, and clauerande one  
heghe,

Two kings were  
climbing to the  
chair, but failed  
to reach it.

The creste of *the* compas they couette fulle 3erne ;  
'This chaire of charbokle,' they said, 'we chalange  
here-aftyre,

As two of *the* cheffeste chosene in erthe !' 3327

The childire ware chalke-whitte, chekys and *other*,  
Bot the chayere a-bownne cheuede they neuer :

The one was pass-  
ing fair of feature,  
and arrayed in  
blue with fleurs-  
de-lis of gold.

The forthirmaste was freely, *with* a frount large,  
The faireste of fyssnamy *that* fourmede was euer ; 3331

And he was buskede in a blee of a blewe noble,  
With flourdelice of golde floreschede al ouer ;

The other was  
clad in silver,  
with a cross of  
gold.

The *tother* was cledde in a cote alle of clene siluer,  
With a comliche crosse coruene of golde, 3335

flore crosselettes kرافty by *the* crosse ristes,  
And ther-by knewe I the kyng, *that* crystnede hyme  
semyde.

Arthur greeted  
the Duchess, who  
welcomed him.

Thane I went to *that* wlonke, and wynly hire gretis,  
And cho said, 'welcome i-wis ! wele arte thou  
fowndene ; 3339

The aughte to wirchipe my wille, and thou wele cowthe,  
Of alle the valyant men that euer was in erthe ;  
flore alle thy wirchipe in werre by me has thou wonnene,  
I hafe bene frendely, freke, and fremmede tille *other* ;  
That has *thow* fowndene in faithe, and fele of *thi* biernez,  
flore I fellid downe *sir* Frolle *with* frowarde knyghtes ;  
flore-thi the fruytes of Fraunce are freely thynne awene.

Thow salle *the* chayere escheue, I chese *the* my selfene, He was chosen to achieve the chair,  
Be-fore alle *the* cheftaynes chosene in this erthe.' 3348

Scho lifte me vp lightly with hir lene hondes,  
And sette me softly in the see, *the* septre me rechede ; and was set therein.  
Craftely with a kambe cho kembede myne heuede, 3351

That the krispane kroke to my crownne raughte ;  
Dressid oñe me a diademe, that dighte was fulle faire, The kingly ornaments were given to him.  
And syne profres me a pome pighte fulle of faire stonys,  
Enamelde with azoure, the erth there-one depayntide,  
Selkylde with the salte see appone sere halves, 3356  
In sygne *that* I sothely was souerayne in erthe.

Than broght cho me a brande with fulle bryghte hiltes, A sword with a bright hilt was brought to him.  
And bade me brawdysche *the* blade, '*the* brande es  
myne awene : 3359

Many swayne with *the* swynge has the sw[e]tte leuede ;  
ffor whilles thow swanke with the swerde, it swykkede  
*the* neuer.'

Than raykes cho with roo, and riste whene hir likede,  
To *the* ryndes of *the* wode, richere was neuer ; 3363  
Was no pomarie so pighte of prynce in erthe,  
Ne nonne apparaylle so prowde, bot *paradys* one.

Scho bad *the* bewes scholde bewe downe, and bryng to He was taken to the wood, and the boughs were made to yield their fruit to him.  
my hondes 3366

Of *the* beste that they bare one brawnches so heghe ;  
Than they heldede to hir heste alle holly at oñes,  
The hegheste of iche a hirste, I hette 3ow for-sothe :  
Scho bade me fyrthe noghte *the* fruyte, bot fonde whilles  
me likede,

He was bid take  
[leaf 89]  
freely of the  
finest.

'ffonde of *the* fyneste, thow freliche byerne, 3371  
And reche to *the* ripeste, and ryotte thy seluene !  
Riste, thow ryaHe roye, for Rome es thyne awene !

And I salle redily rolle *the* roo at *the* gayneste,  
And reche *the* *the* riche wyne in rynsede coupes.' 3375 The lady drew wine for him from the spring,

Thane cho wente to *the* welle by *the* wode enis,  
That alle wellyde of wyne, and wondirliche rynnnes ;  
Kaighte vp a coppe-fulle, and couerde it faire ; 3378  
Scho bad me dereliche drawe, and drynke to hir selfene. and bade him drink to her.

And thus cho lede me abowte the lenghe of an owre,  
 With alle likynge and luffe, *that* any lede scholde ;  
 Bot at *the* myddaye fulle ewyne alle hir mode chaungede,  
 And mad myche manace with meruayllous wordez ;  
 Whene I cryede appone hire, cho kest downe hir browes :  
 ‘ Kyng, thow karpes for noghte, be Criste *that* me made !  
 ffor thow salle lose this layke, and thi lyfe aftyre,  
 Thow has lyffede in delytte and lordchippes inewe !’

But at mid-day  
 all was changed.

She spoke to  
 him fiercely, and  
 told him that he  
 should lose his  
 life.

She whirled the  
 wheel round, till  
 his quarters were  
 quashed and his  
 chine chopped  
 asunder by the  
 chair.

Abowte scho whirles the whele, and whirles me vndire,  
 Tille alle my qwaters *that* whille where qwaste al to  
 peces ! 3389

And with that chayere my chyne was chopped in sondire !  
 And I hafe cheueride for chele, sen me this chance  
 happenede.

Than wakkenyde I iwys, alle wery for-dremyde, 3392  
 And now wate thow my woo, worde as *the* lykes.”

The philosopher  
 interprets the  
 dream, and tells  
 Arthur that his  
 good fortune is  
 passed.

“ffreke,” sais the philosopfre, “thy fortune es passede !  
 ffor thow salle fynd hir thi foo, frayste whene the lykes !  
 Thow arte at *the* hegheste, I hette the for-sothe ! 3396  
 Chalange nowe when thow wille, thow cheuys no more !  
 Thow has schedde myche blode, and schalkes distroyede,  
 Sakeles, in cirquytrie, in sere kynges landis ; 3399

He is to prepare  
 for his end,

Schryfe the of thy schame, and schape for thyne ende !  
 Thow has a schewynge, *sir* kynge, take kepe 3if the lyke,  
 ffor thow salle fersely falle with-in fyve wynters ! 3402

and to found ab-  
 beys in France.

ffownde abbayes in ffraunce, *the* froytez are theyne awene,  
 ffore ffroille, and for fferawnt, and for thir ferse knyghttis,  
 That thowe fremydly in ffraunce has faye be-leuede ;

He is bid take  
 heed of the other  
 kings who tried  
 the chair.

Take kepe 3itte of *other* kynges, and kaste in thyne herte,  
 That were conquerours kydde, and crownnede in erthe ;  
 The eldeste was Alexandere, *that* alle *the* erthe lowttede ;

The first was  
 Alexander,  
 the second  
 Hector,  
 the third Julius  
 Cæsar,

The *tother* Ector of Troye, the cheualrous gume ;  
 The thirde Iulyus Cesare, *that* geant was holdene,  
 In iche jorné jentille, a-juggede with lordes ; 3411

the fourth Judas  
 the Maccabee,

The ferthe was *sir* Iudas, a justere fulle noble,  
 The maysterfulle Makabee, the myghttyeste of strenghes ;



The fyfte was Iosue, *that joly mane of armes*, 3414 the fifth Joshua,  
*That in Ierusalem oste fulle myche joye lymppede ;*

The sexte was Dauid *the dere*, demyd *with* kynges the sixth David,  
 One of *the* doughtyeste *that* dubbede was euer, the great Goliath.

ffor he slewe with a slynge, be sleyghte of his handis,  
 Golyas the grette gome, grymmeste in erthe ; 3419

Syne endittede in his dayes alle the dere psalmes, [leaf 89, back]  
*That in the sawtire ere sette with selcouthē wordes.*

The two clymbande kynges, I knawe it for-sothe,  
 Salle Karolus be callide, the kyng sone of Fraunce ; Of the two kings  
 He salle be crowelle and kene, and conquerour holdene, who were climb-  
 Couere be conqueste contres ynewe ; 3425 ing, one shall  
 be Carolus of  
 France ;

He salle eneroche the crowne that Crist bare hym selfene, he shall win the  
 And *that* lifeliche launce, that lepe to his herte, crown that Christ  
 When he was crucyfiende one crose, and alle *the* kene bare, and the  
 naylis, lance that leapt  
 to his heart ;

Knyghtly he salle conquere to Cristyne men hondes.

The tother salle be Godfraye, that Gode schalle reuenge  
 One *the* Gud Frydaye with galyarde knyghtes ; 3431

He salle of Lorryne be lorde, be leefe of his fadire, the other shall be  
 And syne in Ierusalem myche joye happyne, Godfrey, the lord  
 ffor he salle couer the crosse be craftes of armes, 3434 of Lorraine, who  
 shall recover the  
 true cross.

And synne be corownde kyng, with krysomeenoyntede ;

Salle no duke in his dayes siche destanye happyne,

Ne siche myschefe dreghe, whene trewth the salle be tryede !

ffore-ty ffortune *the* fetches to fulfille the nowmbyre, Arthur is needed  
 to make up the  
 number of the  
 nine noblest.

AHs nynne of *the* nobileste namede in erthe ; 3439

This salle in romance be redde *with* ryalle knyghttes,

Rekkenede and renownde with ryotous kynges,

And demyd one domesdaye, for dedis of armes, 3442 He shall be cele-  
 brated for ever  
 as the doughtiest  
 on earth.

ffor *the* doughtyeste *that* euer was duelland in erthe : Many clerks shall  
 tell of his deeds.

So many clerkis and kynges salle karpe of 3oure dedis,

And kepe 3oure conquestez in cronycle for euer !

Bot the wolfes in the wode, and the whilde bestes,

Are some wikkyd mene that werrayes thy rewmes, 3447

Es entirde in thyne absence to werraye thy pople,

The wolves in  
 the wood and the  
 wild beasts are  
 wicked men that  
 are warring on  
 his pople.

And alyenys and osten of vncouthelands.

He will have  
some tidings  
within ten days.

Thow getis tydandis I trowe, with-in tene dayes, 3450  
That some torfere es tydde, sene thow fro home turnede ;

He is bid to re-  
pent and amend.

I rede thow rekkyne and reherse vn-reasonable dedis,  
Ore the repenttes fulle rathe alle thi rewthe werkes !

Mane, amende thy mode, or thow myshappene,  
And mekely aske mercy for mede of thy saule !” 3455

The king rises  
and puts on his  
robes.

**T**hane rysez the riche kyng, and rawghte one his wedys,

A reedde actone of rosse, the richeste of floures,

A pesane, and a paunsone, and a pris girdille ;

And one he henttis a hode of scharlette fulle riche,

A pauys pillione hatt, that pighte was fulle faire 3460

With perry of the Oryent, and precyous stones ;

His gloues gayliche gilte, and grauene by the hemmys,

With graynes of rubyes fulle gracious to schewe ;

His bede grehownde, and his bronde, ande no byerne  
elles, 3464

And bownnes ouer a brode mede, with breth at his herte ;

ffurth he stalkis a styte by the stille enys,

Stotays at a hey strette, studyande hymne one ;

He sees a man  
approaching in  
the garb

Att the surs of the sonne, he sees there commande,

Raykande to Romewarde the redyeste wayes, 3469

A renke in a rownde cloke, with righte rowmme clothes,

With hatte, and with heyghe schone homely and rownde ;

With flatte ferthynges the freke was floreschede alle ouer,

[leaf 90]

Manye schredys and schragges at his skyrttes hynnges,

With scrippe, ande with slawyne, and skalopis i-newe,

of a pilgrim.

Both pyke and palme, alls pilgram hym scholde. 3475

The gome graythely hym grette, and bade gode morwene ;

The kyng lordelye hym selfe, of langage of Rome,

Of Latyne corroumpede alle, fulle louely hym menyng,—

He asks him  
whither he is  
going,

“ Whedire wilnez thowe, wye, walkande thyne onne ?

Qwhylls this werlde es o werre, a wawhte I it holde ;

Here es ane enmye with oste, vndire zone vynes ;

And they see the, for-sothe, sorowe the be-tyddes ;

Bot zif thow hafe condethe of the kyng selfene, 3483

Knaues wille kille the, and keppe at thow haues ;  
 And if *thou* halde *the* hey waye, they hente the also,  
 Bot if thow hastily hafe helpe of his hende knyghttes."

and tells him the  
 dangers of the  
 way.

Thane karpes *sir* Cradoke to the kynge selfene, 3487

"I salle for-gyffe hym my dede, so me Gode helpe !  
 Onye grome vndire Gode, that one this grownde walkes !  
 Latte the keneste come, that to *the* kyng langes,

The stranger  
 says that he fears  
 no dangers.

I salle encountire hyme as knyghte, so Criste hafe my  
 sawle ! 3491

ffor thow may noghte reche me, ne areste thy selfene,  
 Thoffe *thou* be richely arayed in fulle riche wedys ;  
 I wille noghte wonde for no werre, to wende whare me  
 likes, 3494

Ne for no wy of this werlde, *that* wroghte es one erthe !

Bot I wille passe in pilgrimage *this* pas vn-to Rome,

To purchese me *pardonne* of the pape selfene ;

And of paynes of purgatorie be plenerly assoyllede ;

Thane salle I seke sekirly my souerayne lorde, 3499

Sir Arthure of Inglande, that auenaunt byerne !

ffor he es in this empire, as hathelle men me telles,

Ostaynde in this Oryente with awfulle knyghtes."

He is bound in  
 pilgrimage to  
 Rome.

"**F**ro qwyne come *thoue*, kene mane," *quod the* kynge  
 thane, 3503

Then he has to  
 find Arthur of  
 England.

"That knawes kynge Arthure, and his knyghttes also ?

Was *thoue* euer in his courte, qwylls he in kyth langede ?

Thow karpes so kyndly, it comforthes myne herte !

Well wele has *thou* wente, and wysely *thou* sechis,

ffor *thoue* arte Bretowne bierne, as by thy brode speche."

"Me awghte to knowe *the* kynge, he es my kydde lorde,

And I calde in his courte a knyghte of his chambire ;

Sir Craddoke was I callide, in his courte riche, 3511

Kepare of Karlyone, vndir the kynge selfene ;

Nowe am I cachede owtt of kyth, with kare at my herte,

And that castelle es cawghte with vncowthe ledys."

Than the comliche kynge kaughte hym in armes, 3515

Keste of his ketille-hatte, and kyssede hyme fulle sone,

The king asks  
 him whence he  
 comes, and  
 whether he knows  
 Arthur and his  
 knights.

He tells him that  
 his name is Sir  
 Cradok, a knight  
 of Arthur's cham-  
 ber, and keeper of  
 Caerleon.

The king kisses  
 and welcomes Sir  
 Cradok.

Saide, "welcome, *sir Craddocke*, so *Criste mott me helpe!*  
 Dere cosyne of kynde, thowe coldis myne herte!  
 How faris it in *Bretaynne*, with alle my bolde beryns?  
 Are they brittenede, or brynte, or broughte owte of lyue?  
 Kene thou me kyndely whatte caase es be-fallene; 3521  
 I kepe no credens to crafe, I knowe the for trewe."

Sir Cradok tells  
 him of the evil  
 [leaf 90, back]  
 deeds of Modred.

"Sir, thi wardane es wikkede, and wilde of his dedys;  
 ffor he wandreth has wroghte, sen thou a-waye passede;  
 He has castelles encrochede, and corownde hym seluene,  
 Kaughte in alle the rentis of the Rownde Tabille;  
 He devisede the rewme, and delte as hym likes; 3527  
 Dubbede of the Danmarkes, dukes and erlles,  
 Disseueride them sondirwise, and cites dystroyede,  
 To Sarazenes and Sessoynes, appone sere halues,  
 He has semblede a sorte of selcouthē berynes, 3531  
 Soueraynes of Surgenale, and sowdeours many,  
 Of Peygh̄tes, and paynymms, and prouede knyghttes  
 Of Irelande and Orgaile, owtlawede berynes;  
 Alle thaa laddes are knyghttes that lange to the mowntes,  
 And ledyngē and lordechippe has alle, ahs theme selfe  
 likes; 3536

who rob the re-  
 ligious and ravish  
 the nuns.

And there es *sir Childrike* a cheftayne holdyne,  
 That ilke cheualrous mane, he chargges thy pople;  
 They robbe thy religious, and ravische<sup>1</sup> thi nonnes, 3539  
 And redy ryddis with his rowtte to rawnsone the pouere;  
 ffro Humbyre to Hawyke he haldys his awene,  
 And alle the cowntré of Kentt be couenawnte entayllide;  
 The comliche castelles that to the corowne langede,  
 The holttes, and the hare-wode, and the harde bankkes,  
 Alle that Henguste and Hors hent in theire tyme;  
 Att Southamptone on the see es seuene skore chippes,  
 ffrawghte fulle of ferse folke, owt of ferre landes, 3547  
 ffor to fyghte with thy ffrappe, whene thou theme  
 assailles.

He has seized the  
 whole of England  
 and all Arthur's  
 castles.

He has a fleet of  
 seven score ships  
 at Southampton.

But, worst of all,  
 he has taken  
 Guinever, and  
 holds her as  
 his wife!

Bot ȝitt a worde witterly, thowe watte noghte the werste!  
 He has weddede Waynore, and hir his wieffe holdis,

<sup>1</sup> MS. ravichse

And woynys in the wilde bowndis of *the* weste marches,  
 And has wroghte hire with childe, as wittnesse tellis !  
 Off alle *the* wyes of *this* worlde, woo motte hym worthe,  
 Als wardayne vnworthye womene to zeme !

Thus has *sir* Modrede merrede vs alle ! 3555  
 ffor-*thy* I merkede ouer thees mowntes, to mene *the* the  
 sothe."

Than the burliche kynge, for brethe at his herte,  
 And for this botelesse bale alle his ble chaungede !  
 "By *the* rode," sais *the* roye, "I salle it revenge ! 3559

Hym salle repente fulle rathe alle his rewthe werkes !"

Alle wepande for woo he went to his tentis ;

Vnwynly this wyesse kynge, he wakkenysse his berynes,  
 Clepid in a clarioune kynges and othire, 3563

Callys theme to concelle, and of *this* cas tellys,—

"I am *with* tresone be-trayede, for alle my trewe dedis !

And alle my trauayle es tynt, me tydis no bettire !

Hym salle torfere be-tyde, *this* tresone has wroghte,

And I may traistely hym take, as I am trew lorde !

This es Modrede, *the* mane that I moste traystede,

Has my castelles encrochede, and corownde hyme seluene,

*With* renttes and reches of the Rownde Table ; 3571

Has made alle hys retenewys of renayede wrechis,

And devysed my rewme to dyverse lordes,

To sowdecours and to Sarazenes owtte of sere londes !

He has weddyde Waynore, and hyr to wyefe holdes,

And a childe es eschapede, the chaunce es no bettire !

They hafe semblede on the see seuene schore chippis,

fulle of ferrome folke, to feghte with myne one !

ffor-*thy* to Bretayne the brode buske vs by-houys, 3579

ffor to brettyne *the* berynne that has this bale raysede !

Thare salle no freke men fare, bott alle one fresche horses,

That are fraistede in fyghte, and floure of my knyghttez :

Sir Howelle and *sir* Hardolfe here salle be-leue, 3583

To be lordes of the ledis that here to me lenges ;

Lokes in-to Lumbardy, *that* thare no lede chaunge,—

Arthur is over-  
 come by the  
 tidings, and vows  
 revenge.

He calls a council  
 and tells them the  
 ill news.

[leaf 91]

They must pro-  
 ceed to Britain  
 with all speed.

Sir Howell and  
 Sir Hardolf shall  
 remain behind to  
 govern Rome and  
 Italy.

And tendirly to Tuskayne take tente alls I byde ;  
 Resaywe the rentis of Rome qwene *thay* are rekkenede ;  
 Take sesyne the same daye that laste was assygnede,  
 Or elles alle *the* ostage, with-owttyne *the* wallys, 3589  
 Be hynggyde hye appone hyghte alle holly at ones ! ”

Arthur and his  
 best knights  
 journey rapidly  
 towards Britain.

Nowe bownes the bolde kyng with [his] besteknyghtes,  
 Gers trome and trusse, and trynes forth aftyre ;  
 Turnys thorowe Tuskayne, taries bot littille, 3593  
 Lyghte noghte in Lumbarddye bot whene *the* lyghte  
 failede ;

Merkes ouer the mowntaynes fulle mervaylous wayes,  
 Ayres thurghe Almaygne evyne at the gayneste ; 3596  
 fferkes evynne in-to flawndresche with *hys* ferse  
 knyghttes ;

In fifteen days his  
 fleet is assembled.  
 He embarks and  
 sets sail.

With-in fyftene dayes his flete es assemblede,  
 And thane he schoupe hyme to chippe, and schownnes  
 no lengere, 3599

Scherys with a charpe wynde ouer *the* schyre waters ;  
 By *the* roche with ropes he rydes one ankkere,  
 Thare the false mene fletyde, and one flode lengede,  
 With chefe chaynes of chare chokkode to-gedyrs, 3603  
 Charggede evyne chekefulle of cheualrous knyghtes ;  
 And in *the* hynter one heghte, helmes and crestes,  
 Hatches with haythene mene hillyd ware thare vndyre,  
 Prowdlicke purtrayed<sup>1</sup> with payntede clothys, 3607  
 Iche a pece by pece prykkyde tylle *other*,  
 Dubbyde with dagswaynnes dowblede they seme ;  
 And thus *the* derfe Danamarkes had dyghte alle theyre  
 chippys, 3616

He discovers the  
 fleet of the enemy  
 armed and pre-  
 pared for fight.

That no dynte of no darte dere theme ne schoulde.  
 Than the roye and *the* renkes of the Rownde Table  
 Alle ryally in rede arrayes his chippis ;  
 That daye ducheryes he delte, and doubbyde knyghttes,  
 Dresses dromowndes and dragges, and drawene vpe  
 stonys ; 3615

Then he makes  
 ready his ships  
 for the battle,

<sup>1</sup> MS. prutrayede.

The toppe-castelles he stuffede *with* toyelys, as hym  
lykyde,

Bendys bowes of vys brothly *thare*-aftyre ;

Tolowris tentyly takelle they ryghttene,

Brasene hedys fulle brode buskede one flones,

Graythes for garnysones gomes arrayes ; 3620

Gryme gaddes of stele, ghywes of iryne,

Stizttelys<sup>1</sup> steryne one sterynne *with styffe mene of armes* ;

Mony luffiche launce appone lofte stonndys,

Ledys one leburde, lordys and *other*, 3624

Pyghte payvese one porte, payntede scheldes,

One hyndire hurdace one highte helmede knyghtez.

Thus they scheftene foreschotys one thas schirestrandys, [leaf 91, back]

Ilke schalke in his schrowde, fulle scheene ware *theire*

wedys. 3628

The bolde kynge es in a barge and a-bowtte rowes,

Alle bare-heuvede for besye *with* beueryne lokkes ;

And a beryne *with* his bronde, and ane helme betyne,

Mengede *with* a mawncelet of maylis of siluer, 3632

Compaste *with* a coronalle, and couerde<sup>2</sup> fulle riche ;

Kayris to yche a cogge, to comfurthe his knyghttes :

To Clegys and Cleremownde he cryes one lowde,—

“ O Gawayne ! O Galyrane ! thies gud mens bodyes.”

To Loth and to Lyonelle fulle louefly he melys, 3637

And to *sir* Lawncelot de Lake lordliche wordys,—

“ Lat vs couere *the* kythe, the coste es owre ownne ;

And gere theme brotheliche blenke, alle *3*one blod-hondes !

Bryttyne them *with-in* bourde, and brynne theme *thare*

aftyre ! 3641

Hewe downe hertly *3*one heythene tykes !

Thay are harlotes halfe, I hette *3*ow myne honnde !”

Than he coueres his cogge, and caches one ankere,

Kaughte his comliche helme *with the* clere maylis ;

Buskes baners one brode, betyne of gowles,

With coronows of clere golde clenliche arraiede ; 3647

The tool-men  
righten the  
tackle,

grim goads of  
steels and gyves  
of iron.

The bold king in  
a barge rows  
about bareheaded.

He cries aloud to  
Cleges and Clerem-  
ownde, to Lionel  
and Lancelot,

“ let us recover  
our land and  
make you blood-  
hounds blench ;  
hew down heartily  
the heathen  
hounds.”

He reaches his  
ship, takes his  
helmet and mail,  
and displays his  
banners.

<sup>1</sup> MS. Stürttelys.

<sup>2</sup> MS. couererde.

His chief device  
is a picture of our  
Lady and the  
Child.

Bot *thare* was chosene in *the* chefe a chalke-white  
maydene,

And a childe in hir arme, *that* chefe es of hevynne :

With-owttene changynge in chace, thies ware *the* cheefe  
armes 3650

Of Arthure *the* auenaunt, qwhylles he in ertlie lengede.

The sailors busy  
themselves to get  
the ships under  
weigh.

Thane the marynerse mellys, and maysters of chippis,

Merily iche a mate menys tille *other* ;

Of theire termys they talke, how *thay* ware tydd,

Towynne trvsselle one trete, trvssene vpe sailes, 3655

Bet bonettez one brede, bettrede hatches ;

Brawdeste browne stele, braggede in trompes ;

Standis styffe one the stamyne, steris one aftyre ;

They strike across  
the stream and  
the strife begins.

Strekynne ouer *the* streme, thare stryvynge be-gynnes.

firo *the* wagande wynde owte of *the* weste rysses, 3660

Brethly bessomes with byrre in berynes sailles ;

With hir bryngges one burde burliche cogges,

Qwhylles *the* bilynge and *the* beme brestys in sondyre ;

So stowtly *the* forsterne one *the* stam hyttis, 3664

*That* stokkes of *the* stere-burde strykkys in peces !

There is great  
dashing together  
of ships.

Be thane cogge appone cogge, krayers and *other*,

Grapplings are  
thrown out.

Castys crepers one crosse als to *the* crafte langes : 3667

Thane was hede-rapys hewene *that* helde vpe *the* mastes ;

A mighty strug-  
gle ensues.

Thare was conteke fulle kene, and crachynge of chippys !

Grett cogges of kampe crasseches in sondyre !

Mony kabane clevede, cabilles destroyede ! 3671

Knyghtes and kene mene killide the braynes !

Kidd castelles were corvene with alle theire kene wapene,

Castelles fulle comliche, *that* coloured ware faire !

Vpcynes eghelynge *thay* ochene *thare*-aftyre, 3675

Masts fall and kill  
the mariners.

With *the* swynge of *the* swerde sweys *the* mastys ;

Ovyre-fallys in *the* firste frekis and othire,

firkke in *the* forchi pe fey es byleuefede !

[leaf 92]

Than brothely they bekyre with boustouse tacle, 3679

Boardings are  
made and hand-  
to-hand fights  
take place.

Bruschese boldlye one burde brynyede knyghtes,

Owt of botes one burde was buskede with stonys,

Bett downe of *the* beste, brystis the hetches ;



Som gomys thourghe-gyrde with gaddys of yryne,  
Gomys gayliche clede<sup>1</sup> englaymous wapene! 3684

Archers of Englande fulle egerly schottes,  
Hittis thourghe *the* harde stele fulle hertly dynnttis!

The archers of  
England make  
havoc among the  
heathen knights.

Sonne hotchene in holle the *hethenne* knyghtes,  
Hurte thourghe *the* harde stele, hele they neuer! 3688

Than they falle to *the* fyghte, ffoynes with sperys,  
Alle the frekkeste one frownte *that* to *the* fyghte langes;

And ilkone frechely fraystez theire strengthes, 3691  
Were to fyghte in *the* flete with theire felle wapyne.

Thus they dalte *that* daye, thire dubbide knyghtes,  
Tille alle *the* Danes ware dede, and in *the* depe throwene!

The Danes of  
Modred's fleet  
are all slain.

Than Bretones brothely with brondis they hewene,  
Lepys in vp one lofte lordeliche berynes; 3696

When ledys of owt-loñdys leppyne in waters,  
Alle oure lordes one lowde laughene at ones!

Arthur's lords  
laugh to see their  
foes leap into the  
water.

Be thane speris whare spronngene, spalddyd chippys,  
Spanyolis spedily sprentyde ouer burdez; 3700

Alle *the* kene mene of kampe, knyghtes and *other*,  
Killyd are colde dede, and castyne ouer burdez!

All Modred's  
keen men are  
killed.

Theire swyers sweyftly has *the* swete leuyde,  
Hethene heuande on hache in *ther* hawe ryse, 3704

Synkande in *the* salte see seuene hundrethe at ones!

Thane *sir* Gawayne the gude, he has *the* gree wonnene,  
And alle *the* cogges grete he gafe to his knyghtes, 3707

Sir Gawaine gives  
the ships to his  
knights.

Sir Geryne, and *sir* Grisswolde,<sup>2</sup> and othir gret lordes;  
Garte Galuth, a gud gome, girde of *thaire* hedys!

Thus of *the* false flete appone *the* flode happenede,  
And thus *theis* feryne folke fey are beleuede! 3711

Thus befell the  
false fleet.

3itt es *the* traytoure one londe with tryede knyghttes,  
And alle trompede they trippe one trappede stedys,

But Modred the  
traitor has a land  
army of tried  
knights.

Schewes theme vndir schilde one *the* schire bankkes;  
He ne schownttes forno schame, bot schewes fulle heghe!

Sir Arthure and Gawayne avyede theme bothene 3716  
To sixty thosandez of mene, *that* in theire syghte houede.

Be this the folke was fellyde, thane was *the* flode passede;

<sup>1</sup> Or clade.

<sup>2</sup> MS. Grifswolde.

Arthur waits for  
the tide to rise  
before he lands.

Sir Gawaine  
wades ashore.

[leaf 92, back]

He bids his  
standard-bearer  
advance against  
Modred's host.

"We shall fell  
yon false men,  
the field shall be  
ours."

He and his little  
band charge the  
whole army.

Thane was it slyke a slowde in slakkes fulle hugge,  
That let *the* kyng for to lande, and the lawe watyre ;  
ffor-thy he lengede one laye for lesynng of horsesys,  
To loke of his lege mene, and of his lele knyghtes,  
3if any ware lamede or loste, life 3ife they scholde.  
Than *sir* Gawayne *the* gude a galaye he takys, 3724  
And glides vp at a gole with gud mene of armes ;  
Whene he growndide, for grefe he gyrdis in *the* watere,  
That to *the* girdylle he gos in alle his gylte wedys ;  
Schottis vpe appone *the* sonde in syghte of *the* lordes,  
Sengly with hys soppe, my sorowe es the more !  
With baners of his bagys beste of his armes, 3730  
He braydes vp-on the banke in his bryghte wedys ;  
He byddys his baneoure, " buske *thow* be-lyfe  
To 3one brode batayle that one 3one banke houes ;  
And I ensure 3ow sothe I salle 3owe sewe aftyre ; 3734  
Loke 3e blenke for no bronde, ne for no bryghte wapyne,  
Bot beris downe of *the* beste and bryng theme o-dawe !  
Bees noghte abayste of their boste, abyde one *the* erthe ;  
3e haue my baneres borne in batailles fulle hugge ;  
We salle felle 3one false, *the* fende hafe their saules !  
ffightes faste with *the* frape, *the* felde salle be owres ;  
May I *that* traytoure ouer-take, torfere hyme tyddes,  
That this tresone has tymbyrde to my trewe lorde !  
Of sicke a engendure fulle littylle joye happyns, 3743  
And *that* salle in this journee be juggede fulle euene !"  
Now they seke ouer *the* sonde *this* soppe at *the* gayneste,  
Sembles one *the* sowdecours, and settys their dyntys ;  
Thourghe *the* scheldys so schene schalkes *they* towche,  
With schaftes scheueride schorte of *thas* schene launces ;  
Derfe dynttys they dalte with daggande sperys ;  
One *the* danke of *the* dewe many dede lyggys, 3750  
Dukes, and duszeperis, and dubbide knyghttys ;  
The doughttyste of Danemarke vndone are for euer !  
Thus *thas* renkes in rewthe rittis their brenyes,  
And rechis of *the* richeste vn-rekene dynttis ; 3754  
Thare they thronge in the thikke, and thristis to *the* erthe

- Of the thraeste mene thre hundrethe at ones ! 3756  
 Bot *sir* Gawayne for grefe myghte noghte agayne-stande,  
 Vmbegrippys a spere, and to a gome rynnys,  
 That bare of gowles fulle gaye, with gowces of syluere ;  
 He gyrdes hym in at the gorge with his gryme<sup>1</sup> launce,  
 That the growndene glayfe graythes in sondyre ! 3761  
 With that boystous brayde he bownes hym to dye !  
 The kynge of Gutlande it was, a gude mane of armes.  
 Thayre avawwarde than alle voydes thare-aftyre,  
 AHs venqueste verrayely with valyant berynes ; 3765  
 Metis with medilwarde, that Modrede ledys !  
 Oure mene merkes theme to, as theme myshappenede—  
 ffor hade *sir* Gawayne hade grace to halde the grene hille,  
 He had wirchipe i-wys womnnene for *uer* ! 3769  
 Bot *thane sir* Gawayne i-wysse, he waytes hym wele  
 Towreke hyme on this werlaughe, that this werremouede ;  
 And merkes to *sir* Modrede amonge alle his beryns,  
 With the Mowntagus, and other gret lordys.  
 Than *sir* Gawayne was greuede, and with a gret wylle  
 ffewters a faire spere, and freschely askryes,— 3775  
 “ ffals fosterde foode, the fende haue thy bonys !  
 ffy one the, felone, and thy false werkys !  
 Thow salle be dede and vndone for thy derfe dedys,  
 Or I salle dy this daye, 3if destanye worthe ! ” 3779  
**T**thane his enmye, with oste of owtlawede berynes,  
 Alle enangylles abowte oure excellente knyghttez,  
 That the traytoure be tresone had tryede hym seluene ;  
 Dukes of Danemarke he dyghttes fulle sone, 3783  
 And leders of Lettowe, with legyons inewe,  
 Vmbylappyde oure mene with launcez fulle kene,  
 Sowdeours and Sarazenes owte of sere landys,  
 Sixty thosande mene semlyly arrayede, 3787  
 Sekerly assembles thare one seuenschore knyghtes,  
 Sodaynly in dischayte by tha salte strandes.  
 Thane *sir* Gawayne grette with his gray eghene,  
 ffor grefe of his gud mene that he gyde schulde ; 3791

They slay three hundred of the bravest.

Sir Gawaine kills the king of Gothland.

The vanguard of the army flies.

Gawaine rashly advances against the centre, where Modred is, with the Montagus and other great lords.

Gawaine puts a good spear in rest, and assails Modred with reproaches.

[leaf 93]

The host of the enemy, numbering sixty thousand men, surround Gawaine and his little band.

Gawaine weeps and laments for the danger of his men.

<sup>1</sup> growne struck out, and gryme written instead.

He wyste that *thay* wondyde ware, and wery for-  
foughttene ;

And what for wondire and woo, alle his witte faylede.

And thane syghande he saide, *with* sylande terys,—

“ We are with Sarazenes be-sett appone sere halfes !

I syghe noghte for my selfe, sa helpe oure Lorde ; 3796

Bot for to [see] vs supprysede, my sorowe es the more.

Bes dowghtty to-daye, 3one dukes schalle be 3oures !

ffor dere Dryghttyne this daye, dredys no wapyne.

He comforts  
them with pro-  
mises of blessings  
in heaven.

We salle ende this daye aHs excellent knyghttes, 3800

Ayere to endelesse joye with angelles vnwemmyde.

*Thofe* we hafe vnwittyly wastede oure selfene,

We salle wirke alle wele in *the* wirchipe of Cryste.

We salle for 3one Sarazenes, I sekire 3ow my trowhe,

Scuppe *with* oure Saueoure solemply in heuene,

In *presence* of *that* precious, prynce of alle *other* 3806

They shall sup  
with prophets,  
patriarchs, and  
apostles.

With prophetes, and patriarkes, and apostlys fulle nobille,

Be-fore his freliche face that *fourmede* vs alle !

He that yields  
unslain, be he  
nevermore saved  
or succoured of  
Christ !

3ondire to 3one 3aldsones, he *that* 3eldes hyme euer,

Qwhyllles he es qwykke and in qwerte vnquellyde *with*  
handis,

Be he neuer mo sauede, ne socourede *with* Cryste,

Bot Satanase his sawle mowe synke in-to heHe ! ” 3812

Then Gawaine  
grimly grips his  
weapon,

**T**han grymly *sir* Gawayne gryppis hys wapyne,

Agayne *that* gret bataille he graythes hym sone ;

Radly of his riche swerde he reghttes *the* cheynys,

In he schokkes his schelde, schountes he no lengare ;

Bot aHs vnwyse, wodewyse, he wente at *the* gayneste,

and rushes into  
the fray.

Wondis of thas wedirwyns *with* wrakfulle dynttys,

Alle wellys fulle of blode, thare he awaye passes ; 3819

And *thofe* hym ware fulle woo, he wondys bot lyttille,

Bot wrekyis at his wirchipe *the* wrethe of hys lorde !

He performs  
mighty deeds of  
arms.

He stekys stedis in stoure, and sterenefulle knyghttes,

That sterynemene in theire sterapes stone-dede *thay* lygge !

He ryvys *the* ranke stele, he rittes *the* mayles ; 3824

Thare myghte no renke hym areste, his resone was  
passedde !

He felle in a fransye for fersenesse of herte,  
 He feghttis and fellis downe *that* hyme be-fore standis !  
 ffelle neuer fay mane siche fortune in erthe ! 3828

He fights like a  
 madman.

In-to *the* hale bataile hedlynys he rynnys,  
 And hurtes of *the* hardieste *that* one the erthe lenges !  
 Letande aHs a lyone, he lawnches theme thorowe,  
 Lordes and ledars, that one the launde houes ! 3832

[leaf 93, back]

3it *sir* Gawayne for wo wondis bot lyttille,  
 Bot woundis of thas wedirwynes *with* wondirfull dyntes,  
 Alls he *that* wold wilfully wastene hyme selfene ;  
 And for wondsome and wille alle his wit failede, 3836

That wode aHs a wylde beste he wente at *the* gayneste ;  
 Alle walewede one blode, thare he a-waye passede ;  
 Iche a wy may be warre, be wreke of an-*other* ! 3839

Mad as a wild  
 beast, he leaves  
 all wallowing in  
 blood where he  
 passes.

**T**han hemoues to *sir* Modrede amange alle his knyghttes,  
 And mett hyme in *the* myde schelde, and mallis hyme  
 thorowe ;

Bot the schalke for the scharpe he schownttes a littille,  
 He schare hyme one *the* schorte rybbys a schaftmonde  
 large ! 3843

He wounds Mo-  
 dred in the side.

The schafte schoderede and schotte in the schire beryne,  
*That the* schadande blode ouer his schanke rynnys,  
 And schewede one his schynbawde, *that* was schire  
 burneste ! 3846

And so they schyfte and schove, he schotte to *the* erthe ;  
*With the* lussche of *the* launce he lyghte one hysschuldrys,  
 Ane akere lenghe one a launde, fulle lothely wondide.

Modred falls to  
 the earth.

Than Gawayne gyrde to *the* gome, and one *the* groffe  
 fallis ; 3850

AHs his grefe was graythede, his grace was no bettyre !  
 He schokkes owtte a schorte knyfe schethede *with* siluere,  
 And scholde haue slottede hyme in, bot no slytte  
 happenede ;

Gawaine strikes  
 at him with a  
 knife, but misses  
 his blow.

His hand sleppid and slode o slante one *the* mayles,  
 And *the* tother slely slynges hym vndire : 3855

With a trenchande knyfe the traytoure hym hyttes,

The traitor hits  
 him

through the  
helmet and the  
head.

Thorowe *the* helme and *the* hede, one heyghe one *the*  
brayne :

Gawaine is gone,  
the good man of  
arms!

And thus *sir* Gawayne es gone, the gude man of armes,  
With-owttyne reschewe of renke, and rewghe es *the* more !  
Thus *sir* Gawaynne es gone, that gyede many othire ;  
ffro Gowere to Gernesay, alle *the* gret lordys 3861  
Of Glamour, of Galys londe, *this* galyarde knyghtes,  
ffor glent of gloppynyng<sup>1</sup> glade be they neuer !

King Frederick  
asks who he was.

**K**ying ffroderike of Fres faythely *thare*-aftyre, 3864  
ffraynes at the false mane of owre ferse knyghte ;

“ Knew thow euer this knyghte in thi kithe ryche,  
Of whate kynde he was comene? be-knowe now *the* sothe ;  
Qwat gome was he this *with* the gaye armes, 3868  
With *this* gryffoun of golde, *that* es one growffe fallyne ?  
He has grettly greffede vs, sa me Gode helpe !

Modred tells  
him that he was  
*Sir* Gawaine the  
good, the merri-  
est, the kindest,  
and the bravest  
of knights!

Gyrde downe oure gude mene, and greuede vs sore !  
He was *the* sterynneste in stoure that euer stele werryde,  
ffore he has stonayed oure stale, and stroyede for euer !”  
Than *sir* Mordrede *with* mouthe melis fulle faire ; 3874

The hardest of  
hand, the hap-  
piest in arms, the  
most courteous in  
hall!

“ He was makles one molde, mane, be my trowhe ;  
This was *sir* Gawayne the gude, *the* gladdeste of othire,  
And the gracioseste gome that vndire God lyffede,  
Mane hardyeste of hande, happyeste in armes, 3878  
And *the* hendeste in hawle vndire heuene riche ;  
*The* lordelieste of ledyng qwhylls he lyffe myghte,  
ffore he was lyone allossede in londes i-newe ;

[leaf 94]

Had thow knawene hym, *sir* kyng, in kythe thare he  
lengede, 3882

His konyng, his knyghthode, his kyndly werkes,  
His doying, his doughtynesse, his dedis of armes,  
Thow wolde hafe dole for his dede *the* dayes of thy  
lyfe !”

Modred weeps  
and curses his  
destiny,

3it *that* traytour aHs tite teris lete he falle, 3886  
Turnes hym furthe tite, and talkes no more,  
Went wepand a-waye, and veries the stowndys,

<sup>1</sup> MS. gloppynyng.

*That* euer his werdes ware wroghte sicke wandrethe to  
wyrke : that ever he was  
fated to work  
such woe.

Whene he thoghte on *this* thyng, it thirlede his herte ;  
ffor sake of his sybb blode sygheande he rydys ; 3891

When *that* renayede renke remembirde hym seluene,  
Of reuerence and ryotes of *the* Rownde Table,

He remyd and repent hyme of alle his rewthe werkes, He repents of his  
wickedness and  
retreats,  
Rode away with his rowte, ristys he no lengere, 3895  
ffor rade of oure riche kyng, ryve *that* he scholde.

Thane kayres he to Cornewaile, carefull in herte, goes into Corn-  
wall,

Be-cause of his kynsemane that one the coste ligges :  
He taries tremlande ay, tydandis to herkene. 3899

Than the traytoure treuntede *the* Tyseday *thar*-aftyre,  
Trynnys in with a trayne tresone to wirke,

And by *the* Tambire *that* tide his tentis he reris, and pitches his  
tents by the Ta-  
mar,

And thane in a mette-while a messangere he sendes,  
And wraite vn-to Waynor how the werlde chaungede, and from thence  
writes to Guine-  
ver,

And what comliche coste the kyng was aryuede, 3905  
One floode foughtene with his fleete, and fellyd theme  
o lyfe ;

Bade hir ferkene oo ferre, and flee with hir childre,  
Whills he myghte wile hyme awaye, and wyne to hir  
speche, 3908

Ayere in-to Irelande, in-to *thas* owte-mowntes, bidding her fly  
into Ireland,  
And wonne thare in wildernesse with-in *tha* wast landys.

Than cho 3ermys and 3ee at 3orke in hir chambire,  
Gronys fulle grysely with gretand teres, 3912

Passes owte of *the* palesse with alle hir pryce maydenys,  
Towarde Chestyre in a charre thay chese hir *the* wayes,  
Dighte hir ewyne for to dye with dule at hir herte ;

Scho kayres to Karelyone, and kawghte hir a vaile, But she goes to  
Caerleon and  
takes the veil.

Askes thare *the* habite in *the* honoure of Criste,  
And alle for falsede, and frawde, and fere of hir louerde !

**B**ot whene oure wiese kyng wiste *that* Gawayne was  
landede, 3919

He al to-wrythes for woo, and wryngande his handes, Arthur is grieved

for Gawaine's  
rash lauding, and  
follows him  
wading through  
the water.

Gers lawne his botes appone a lawe watire,  
Londis als a lyone *with* lordliche knyghtes,  
Slippes in in the sloppes o-slante to *the* girdylle,  
Swalters vpe swyftly *with* his swerde drawene, 3924  
Bownnys his bataile and baners displayes,  
Buskes ouer *the* brode sandes *with* breth at his herte,

He hastens to the  
field where ten  
thousand of the  
traitor's men and  
seven score of  
his own knights  
lie dead.

fferkes frekkly one felde *thare the* feye lygges ;  
Of the traytours mene one trappede stedis, 3928  
Ten thosandez ware tynte, *the* trewghe to acownt,  
And certane on owre syde seuene score knyghtes  
In soyte *with* theire souerayne vn-sownde are beleuede !

[leaf 94, back]

Arthur slays  
dukes and earls ;

**T**he kynge comly ouer-keste knyghtes and othire,  
Erles of Awfrike, and Estriche berynes 3933  
Of Orgaile and Oreckenay, *the* Iresche kynges,  
The nobileste of Norwayne, nowmbirs fulle hugge,  
Dukes of Danamarke, and dubbid knyghtes ;  
And the guchede kynge in the gay armes 3937

he seeks for the  
knights of the  
Round Table,

Lys gronande one *the* grownnde, and girde thorowe euene !  
The riche kynge ransakes *with* rewthe at his herte,  
And vp rypes the renkes of alle *the* Rownde Tabylle ;  
Ses theme alle in a soppe in sowte by theme one, 3941  
*With the* Sarazenes vn-sownde enserchede a-bowte ;

and finds Sir Ga-  
waine lying dead.

And *sir* Gawayne the gude in his gaye armes,  
Vmbegrippede the girse, and one grouffe fallene, 3944  
His baners braydene downe, betyne of gowlles,  
His brand and his brade schelde al bloody be-rouene ;  
Was neuer oure semliche kynge so sorowfulle in herte,  
Ne *that* sanke hyme so sade, bot *that* sighte one. 3948

With groans and  
tears he kisses  
the body.

**T**han gliftis *the* gud kynge, and glopyns in herte,  
Gronys fulle grisely *with* gretande teris ;  
Knelis downe to *the* cors, and kaught it in armes,  
Kastys vpe his vmbrere, and kyssis hyme sone, 3952  
Lokes one his eye-liddis, *that* lowkkide ware faire,  
His lippis like to *the* lede, and his lire falowede !

He bitterly la-  
ments the good  
knight.

*Than* the corownde kyng cryes fulle lowde,—  
“Dere kosyne o kynde, in kare am I leuede ! 3956



ffor nowe my wirchipe es wente, and my were endide !  
 Here es *the* hope of my hele, my happyng of armes !  
 My herte and my hardynes hale one hym lengede !  
 My concelle, my comforthe, *that* kepide myne herte !  
 Of alle knyghtes *the* kynge *that* vndir Criste lifede,  
 Thou was worthy to be kynge, *thofe* I *the* corowne bare !  
 My wele and my wirchipe of alle *this* werlde riche 3963  
 Was wonnene thourghe *sir* Gawayne, *and* thourghe his  
 witt one !

It was through  
 his wit that all  
 his conquests  
 were made.

Allas !" saide *sir* Arthure, "nowe ekys my sorowe !  
 I am vttrily vndone in myne awene landes !  
 A doughtouse derfe dede, *thou* duellis to longe ! 3967  
 Why drawes *thou* so one dreghe ? *thow* drownnes myne  
 herte !"

Than swe[l]tes the swete kynge and in swoune fallis,  
 Swafres vp swiftly, and swetly hym kysses,  
 Tille his burliche berde was bloody be-rowne, 3971  
 Alls he had bestes birtenede, and broghte owt of life ;  
 Ne had *sir* Ewayne comene, and othire grete lordys,  
 His bolde herte had broustene for bale at *that* stownde !

Arthur swoons  
 for grief ; then  
 starts up and  
 kisses the dead  
 knight.  
 His beard is  
 smeared in the  
 blood of Gawaine.

"Blyne," sais thies bolde mene, "thow blondirs *thi*  
 selfene, 3975

Sir Ewayne and  
 his knights re-  
 strain him.

*This* es botles bale, for bettir bees it *neuer* !  
 It es no wirchipe i-wysse to wryng thyne hondes,  
 To wepe als a womane it es no witt holdene !  
 Be knyghtly of contenaunce, als a kyng scholde, 3979  
 And leue sicke clamoure for Cristes lufe of heuene !"

"ffor blode," said the bolde kynge, "blyne salle I *neuer*,  
 Or my brayne to-briste, or my breste *other* !

[leaf 95]

Was *neuer* sorowe so softe that sanke to my herte,  
 Itt es fulle sibb to my selfe, my sorowe es the more !  
 Was *neuers* so sorowfulle as yghteseyne *with* myne eyghene !  
 He es sakles supprysede for syne of myne one !"  
 Downe knelis *the* kynge, and kryes fulle lowde ; 3987

He excuses him-  
 self on account  
 of the greatness  
 of the grief.

With carefulle contenaunce he karpes thes wordes,—  
 "O rightwis riche Gode, this rewthe *thow* be-holde !

He collects Gawaine's blood in a helmet,

and carries away his body.

Then he makes a solemn vow that he will take no pleasure in the chase till Gawaine be avenged.

The body was sent straight to Winchester,

and met by a procession of monks.

Arthur gives orders that all honour should be paid to the dead.

*This ryalle rede blode ryne appone erthe ;  
It ware worthy to be schrede and schrynede in golde,  
ffor it es sakles of syne, sa helpe me oure Lorde !* 3992

Downe knelis *the kyng with kare* at his herte,  
Kaughte it vpe kyndly *with* his clene handis,  
Keste it in a ketille-hatte, and couerde it faire, 3995  
And kayres furthe *with the cors* in kyghte *thare* he lenges.

“**H**ere I make myn avowe,” *quod* the kyng *thane*,  
“To Messie, and to Marie, the mylde qwenne of  
heuene,

I salle neuer ryvaye, ne racches vn-cowpylle  
At roo ne rayne-dere, *that* rynnes apponne erthe ; 4000  
Neuer grewhownde late glyde, ne gossehawke latt flye,  
Ne neuer fowle see fellide, *that* flieghes *with* wenge ;  
ffawkone ne formaylle appone fiste handille,  
Ne zitt *with* gerefawcone rejoyse me in erthe ; 4004  
Ne regnne in my royaltez, ne halde my Rownde Table,  
Tille thi dede, my dere, be dewly reuengede !  
Bot euer droupe and dare, qwylls my lyfe lastez,  
Tille Drightone and derfe dede hafe done qwate theme  
likes !” 4008

Than kaughte they vpe *the cors with kare* at theire hertes,  
Karyed [it] one a coursere *with the kyng* selfene ;  
The waye vn-to Wynchestre *thay* wente at the gayneste,  
Wery and wandsomdly, *with* wondide knyghtes ; 4012  
Thare come *the prior of the plas*, and professide monnkes,  
Apas in *processione*, and *with* the prynce metys ;  
And he be-tuke *thame the cors of the* knyghte noble.

“Lokis it be clenly kepyd,” he said, “and in *the kirke*  
holdene, 4016

Done for derygese, as to *the ded* fallys,  
Menskede *with* messes, for mede of *the saule* :  
Loke it wante no waxe, ne no wirchipe elles,  
And at *the body* be bawmede, and one erthe holdene,  
ziff *thou* kepe thi couent encroche any wirchipe 4021  
At my comyng a-gayne, zif Crist wille it thole ;

A-byde of *the* beryenge till they be broughte vndire,  
*That* has wroghte vs this woo, and *this* werre mouede."

**T**han sais *sir* Wycher *the* wy, a wyese mane of armes,  
 "I rede ȝe warely wende, and wirkes the beste ;

Sir Wycher advises that he should stay in Winchester and rally his forces.

Soiorne in this ceté, and semble thi berynes, 4027

And bidde *with* thi bolde mene in thi burghie riche :

Get owt knyghttez of contres, that castelles holdes,

And owt of garysons grete gude mene of armes,

ffor we are faithely to fewe to feghte *with* theme alle,

*That* we see in his sorte appone *the* see bankes." 4032

With krewelle contenance thane the kyng karpis theis  
 wordes,—

"I praye the kare noghte, *sir* knyghte, ne caste *thou* no  
 dredis ! [leaf 95, back]

Hadde I no segge bot my selfe one vndir sone, 4035

And I may hym see *with* sighte, or one hym sette hondis,

I salle evene amange his mene malle hym to dede,

Are I of *the* stede styre halfe a stede lenghe !

I salle [stryke] hym in his stowre, and stroye hym for euer,

And *thare*-to make I myne avowe devottly to Cryste,

And to hys modyre Marie, *the* mylde qwene of heuene !

I salle neuer soiourne sounde, ne sawghte at myne herte,

In ceté ne in subarbe sette appone erthe, 4043

Ne ȝitt slomyre ne slepe *with* my slawe eyghne,

Tille he be slayne *that* hym slowghe, ȝif any sleighte  
 happene :

Bot euer pursue the payganys *that* my pople distroyede,

Qwylls I may pare theme and pynne, in place *thare* me  
 likes." 4047

Thare durste no renke hym areste of alle *the* Rownde Table,

Ne none paye *that* prynce *with* plesande wordes,

Ne none of his lige mene luke hym in the eyghne,

So lordely he lukes for losse of his knyghttes ! 4051

Thane drawes he to Dorsett, and dreches no langere,

Derefulle dredlesse *with* drowppande teris ;

Kayeris in-to Kornewayle *with* kare at his herte,

Arthur declares that though he be alone, if he may see Modred he will mall him to death among all his men.

He will never sojourn in city or town till Modred be slain.

None of his liege men dare look him in the eyes.

Arthur follows  
Modred into  
Cornwall and at-  
tacks him.

The trays of *the* traytoure he trynys fulle euenne ; 4055  
And turnys in be *the* Treyntis *the* traytoure to seche,  
ffyndis hym in a foreste *the* Frydaye there-aftire ;  
The kyng lyghttes one fott, and freschely askryes,  
And *with* his freliche folke he has *the* felde *nommene* !

A vast host of  
aliens assault Ar-  
thur's men.

**N**ow isschewis his enmye vndire *the* wode eynys,  
*With* osten of alynes fulle horrebille to schewe !  
Sir Mordrede the Malebranche, *with* his myche pople,  
ffoundes owt of the foreste appone fele halves, 4063  
In seuene grett batailles semliche arrayede,

There were sixty  
thousand againt  
eighteen hun-  
dred.

Sexty thowsande mene, the syghte was fulle hugge,  
Alle fyghtande folke of *the* ferre lanndes,  
ffaire fettede one frownte be tha fresche strondes !  
And alle Arthurs oste was amède *with* knyghtes 4068  
Bot awghtene hundrethe of alle, entrede in rolles ;  
This was a mache vn-mete, bot myghttis of Criste,  
To melle *with* *that* multitude in *thase* man londis.  
Than the royalle roy of *the* Rownde Table 4072

Arthur on a  
charger arranges  
his men.

Rydes one a riche stede, arrayes his beryns,  
Buskes his avawmwarde, als hym beste likes ;  
Sir Ewayne, and *sir* Errake, and othire gret lordes,  
Demenys the medilwarde menskefully thare-aftyre,  
With Merrake and Meneduke,<sup>1</sup> myghtty of strengthes ;  
Idirous and Alymere, *thire* auenaunt childrene,  
Ayers *with* Arthure, *with* seuene score of knyghtes ;  
He rewlis *the* rerewarde redyly thare-aftyre, 4080  
The rekeneste redy mene of *the* Rownde Table,  
And thus he fittis his folke, and freschely askryes,  
And syene comforthes his mene *with* knyghtlyche  
wordes—

He beseeches  
them to do well  
that day and not  
to fear.

“ I be-seke 3ow, sirs, for sake of oure Lorde, 4084  
That 3e doo wele to-daye, and dredis no wapene !  
ffighttes fersely nowe, and fendis 3oure seluene,  
ffellis downe 3one feye folke, the felde salle be owrs !  
They are Sarazenes 3one sorte, vn-sownde motte they  
worthe ! 4088

[leaf 96]

<sup>1</sup> Or Menyduke.

Sett one theme sadlye, for sake of oure Lorde !

If they are slain  
they will be taken  
straight up to  
heaven.

3if vs be destaynede to dy to-daye one this erthe,

We salle be hewede vn-to heuene, or we be halfe colde !

Loke 3e lett for no lede lordly to wirche ; 4092

Layes 3one laddes lowe be the layke ende !

Take no tente vn-to me, ne tale of me rekke,

Bes besy one my baners *with* 3oure brighte wapyns,

That they be strenghely stuffede *with* steryne knyghtes,

And holdene lordly one lofte ledys to schewe ; 4097

3if any renke theme arase, reschowe theme sone.

Wirkes now my wirchipe, to-daye my werre endys !

To-day his war  
ends !

3e wotte my wele and my woo, wirkkys as 3ow likys !

Crist comly *with crowne* comforthe 3ow alle, 4101

ffor *the* kyndeste creatours that euer kynge ledde !

I gyffe 3ow alle my blyssyng *with* a blithe wille,

He gives them  
his parting bless-  
ing.

And alle Bretowns bolde, blythe mote 3e worthe !”

They pype vpe at pryme tyme, approaches theme nere,

Pris mene and priste proues their strengthes ;

Bremly the brethemen bragges in troumppes, 4107

In cornettes comlyly, whene knyghttes assembles,

And thane jolyly enjoynys *theis* jentylle knyghttes ;

A jolyere journé ajuggede was neuer,

Whene Bretones boldly enbraces their scheldes, 4111

The Britons at-  
tack the enemy,  
without delay.

And Cristyne encroyssede theme, and castis in fewtire !

**T**han sir Arthure oste his ennye askryes,

And in they schokke their scheldes, schontes no

lengare ;

Schotte to *the* schiltronnes, and schowttes fulle heghe,

Thorowe scheldis fulle schene schalkes they touche !

Redily thas rydde mene of the Rownde Table 4117

*With* ryalle rannke stele rittys their mayles ;

Bryneys browddene they briste, and burneste helmys,

Hewes haythene mene downe, halses in sondre !

ffyghtande *with* fyne stele, *the* feye blod rynnys, 4121

Of *the* frekkeste of frounte, vn-fers ere be-levede.

Ethyns of Argayle and Irische kynges

Enverounes oure awawmwarde *with* venymmos berynes ; The vanguard is

surrounded by  
the enemy, and  
many of them  
slain.

Peghttes and paynymes *with* perilous wapyns, 4125  
*With* speres disspetously disspoylles oure knyghttes,  
 And hewed downe the hendeste *with* hertly dynttys !  
 Thorow the holle batayle they holdene theire wayes ;  
 Thus fersly they fyghte appone sere halfes, 4129  
 That of *the* bolde Bretones myche blode spillis  
 Thare durste non rescowe theme, for reches in erthe,  
 Thesteryne ware *thare* sotedde, and stuffede wit[h] othire :  
 He durste noghte stire a steppe, bot stodde for hyme  
 seluene, 4133

Arthur bids Sir  
Idrus rescue his  
[leaf 96, back]

father, Sir  
Ewaine.

Tille thre stalis ware stroyede be strenghe of hyme one !  
 " Idrous," *quod* Arthure, " ayre the by-houes !  
 I see *sir* Ewayne ouer-sette *with* Sarazenes kene ! 4136  
 Redy the for rescows, arraye thee sone !  
 Hye *the* *with* hardy mene in helpe of thy ffadire !  
 Sett in one the syde, and socoure *þone* lordes ;  
 Bot they be socourrede and sownde, vnsawghte be I  
 neuer ! " 4140

Sir Idrus replies  
that his father  
has commanded  
him not to leave  
the king.

Idrous hyme ansuers earnestly *thare*-aftyre,—  
 " He es my fadire in faithe, for-sake salle I neuer,  
 He has me fosterde and fedde, and my faire bretherene,  
 Bot I for-sake this gate, so me Gode helpe, 4144  
 And sothely alle sybredyne bot thy selfe one ;  
 I breke neuer his biddynge for beryne one lyfe,  
 Bot euer bouxvme as beste blethely to wyrke !  
 He commande me kyndly, *with* knyghtly wordes, 4148  
 That I schulde lelely one *the* lenge, and one noo lede elles ;  
 I salle hys commandement holde, *þif* Criste wil me thole !  
 He es eldare thane I, and ende salle we bothene ;  
 He salle ferkke be-fore, and I salle come aftyre : 4152  
*þiffe* hyme be destaynede to dy to-daye one *this* erthe,  
 Criste comly *with* crowne take kepe to hys saule ! "

" If he be destined  
to die, Christ  
keep his soul ! "

**T**han remys the riche kyng *with* rewthe at his herte,  
 Hewys hys handys one heghte, and to *the* heuene  
 lokes,— 4156

" Qwythene hade Dryghttyne destaynede at his dere wille,

*That he hade demyd me to-daye to dy for 3ow alle !*  
*That had I leuer than be lorde alle my lyfe tyme, 4159*  
*Off alle that Alexandere aughte qwhilles he in erthe*  
*lengede."*

Arthur wishes  
that he might die  
instead of his  
knights.

Sir Ewayne and *sir Errake, thes* excellente beryns,  
 Enters in one *the* oste, and egerly strykes ; 4162  
 The ethenys of Orkkenaye and Irische kynges,  
*Thay* gobone of *the* gretteste *with* growndene swerdes,  
 Hewes one *thas* hulkes *with theire* harde wapyns,  
 Layed downe *thas* ledes *with* lothely dynttys ; 4166  
 Schuldirs and scheldys *thay* schrede to *the* hawnches,  
 And medilles thourghe mayles *thay* merkene in sondire !  
 Siche honoure neuer aughte none erthely kyng  
 At theire endyng daye, bot Arthure hyme seluene !  
 So *the* droughte of *the* daye dryede theire hertes, 4171  
 That bothe drynkles they dye, dole was *the* more !  
 Now mellys oure medille-warde, and mengene to-gedire.  
 Sir Mordrede *the* Malebranche *with* his myche pople,  
 He had hide hyme be-hynde *with-in* *thas* holte eynys,  
 With halle bataile one hethe, harme es *the* more ! 4176  
 He hade sene *the* conteke al clene to *the* ende,  
 How oure cheualrye cheuyde be chaunces of armes !  
 He wiste oure folke was for-foughttene, *that* *thare* was  
 feye leuede ;

Sir Ewaine and  
Sir Errak per-  
form great deeds  
of valour before  
they are over-  
powered and  
slain.

The centre of Ar-  
thur's army en-  
gages.  
Sir Modred has  
been watching  
the battle, and  
preparing to at-  
tack the king.

To encowntere *the* kyng he castes hyme sone, 4180  
 Bot the churles chekyne hade chaungyde his armes ;  
 He had sothely for-sakene *the* sawturoure engrelede,  
 And laughte vpe thre lyons alle of whitte siluyre,  
 Passande in purple of perrie fulle riche, 4184  
 ffor *the* kyng sulde noghte knawe *the* cawtelous wriche !  
 Be-cause of his cowardys he keste of his atyre ;  
 Bot the comliche kyng knewe hym fulle swythe,  
 Karpis to *sir* Cadors *thes* kyndly wordez,— 4188  
 "I see *the* traytoure come 3ondyr trynande fulle 3erne ;  
 3one ladde *with the* lyones es like to hyme selfene !  
 Hym salle torfere be-tyde, may I touche ones, 4191

But first he  
changes his arms  
to conceal him-  
self.

[leaf 97]

But Arthur knows  
him at once, and  
points him out  
to Sir Cador.

The two famous  
swords, Clarent  
and Caliburn,  
shall this day be  
tried one against  
the other.

Arthur recog-  
nizes his sword  
which he had  
left at Walling-  
ford under the  
care of the Queen.

Sir Marrik fights  
with Modred  
and is forced to  
withdraw,

for Sir Marrik  
was married with  
old age.

ffor alle his tresone and trayne, als I am trew lorde !  
To-day Clarent and Caliburne shall kythe them to gedirs,  
Whilke es kenere of kerfe, or hardare of eghge !  
ffraiste salle we fyne stele appone fyne wedis. 4195  
Itt was my derlynge daynteuous, and fulle dere holdene,  
Kepede fore encorowmentes of kynges enoyntede,  
One dayes when I dubbyde dukkes and erlles ;  
It was burliche borne be *the* bryghte hiltes ;  
I durste neuer dere it in dedis of armes, 4200  
Bot euer kepide clene, be-cause of my seluene.  
ffor I see Clarent vn-clede, *that* crowne es of swerdes,  
My wardrop of Walyngfordhe I wate es distroyede ;  
Wist no wy of wone bot Waynor hir seluene, 4204  
Scho had *the* kepynge hir selfe of *that* kydde wapyne,  
Off cofres enclosede *that* to *the* crowne lengede,  
With rynges and reliktes, and *the* regale of ffrance,  
That was fflowndene one *sir* ffrolle, whene he was feye  
leuyde." 4208  
Than *sir* Marrike in malyncoley metys hym sone,  
With a mellyd mace myghtyly hym strykes ;  
The bordoure of his bacenett he bristes in sondire,  
*That the* schire rede blode ouer his brene rynnys ! 4212  
The beryne blenkes for bale, and alle his ble chaunges,  
Bot zitt he byddys as a bore, and brymly he strykes !  
He braydes owte a brande bryghte als euer ony syluer,  
*That was sir* Arthure awene, and Vtere his fadirs, 4216  
In *the* wardrop of Walyngfordhe was wonte to be kepede ;  
*Thare-with the* derfe dogge syche dynttes he rechede,  
*The tother with-drewe* one dreghe and durste do none  
*other* ;  
ffor *sir* Marrake was mane merrede in elde, 4220  
And *sir* Mordrede was myghty, and [in] his moste  
strengthis ;  
Come none with-in *the* compas, knyghte ne none *other*,  
With-in *the* swyng of swerde, *that* ne he *the* swete leuyd.  
*That* persayfes oure prynce, and presses to faste, 4224



Strykes in-to *the* stowre by strenghe of hys handis ;  
Metis with *sir* Mordrede, he melis vn-faire,—

Arthur forces his  
way to Modred,

“Turne, traytoure vntrewe, *the* tydys no bettyre ; 4227

and upbraids  
him.

Be gret Gode, thow salle dy with dynt of my handys !

The schalle rescowe no renke ne reches in erthe !”

The kyng with Calaburne knyghtly hym strykes,

Then he strikes  
him with Cali-  
burn and cuts  
through his  
shield and into  
the shoulder.

*The* cantelle of *the* clere schelde he kerfes in sondyre,

In-to *the* schuldyre of *the* schalke a schaftmonde large,

*That the* schire rede blode schwede one *the* maylys !

He schodirde and schrenkys, and schontes bott lyttile,

Bott schokkes in scharpely in his schene wedys ; 4235

[leaf 97, back]

The ffelonne with *the* ffyne swerde freschely he strykes,

Modred, though  
wounded, strikes  
Arthur and gives  
him a terrible  
wound in the  
side.

The ffelettes of *the* fferrere syde he flassches in sondyre,

Thorowe jopowne and jesserauwte of gentille mailles !

The freke fichede in *the* flesche an halfe fotte large ;

That derfe dynt was his dede, and dole was *the* more

That euer *that* doughtty sulde dy, bot at Dryghttyns

wylle ! 4241

3itt with Calyburne his swerde, fulle knyghttly he  
strykes,

Arthur with Cali-  
burn cuts off the  
sword-hand of  
Modred,

Kastes ine his clere schelde, and coueres hym fulle faire ;

Swappes of *the* swerde hande, als he by glentes, 4244

Ane inche fro *the* elbowe, he ochede it in sondyre,

*That* he swounnes one *the* swarthe,<sup>1</sup> and one swym fallis ;

Thorowe bracer<sup>2</sup> of browne stele, and *the* bryghte mayles,

*That the* hilde and *the* hande appone *the* hethe liggis !

Thane frescheliche *the* freke the ffente vpe rererys,

Brochis hym in with the bronde to *the* bryghte hiltys,

and pierces him  
with his sword.

And he brawles one the bronde, and bownes to dye.

“In faye,” says *the* feye kyng, “sore me for-thynkkes

*That euer* siche a false theefe so faire an ende haues.”

Arthur declares  
that his end is  
too good for him.

Qwene they had ffenyste *this* feghte, thane was *the* felde

wonnene, 4254

And the false folke in *the* felde feye are by-leuede !

Tille a fforeste they fledde, and felle in the greuys,

<sup>1</sup> MS. swrathe.

<sup>2</sup> MS. brater.

Modred's men  
are defeated and  
pursued.

And fers feghtande folke folowes theme aftyre ;  
Howntes and hewes downe the heythene tykes,  
Mourtherys in the mowntaygues *sir* Mordrede knyghtes ;  
Thare chapyde neuer no childe, cheftayne ne *other*,  
Bot choppes theme downe in the chace, it chargys bot  
littyll ! 4261

Arthur finds the  
dead bodies of his  
knights.

Bot whene *sir* Arthure anone *sir* Ewayne he fyndys,  
And Errake *the* auenaunt, and *other* grett lordes,  
He kawghte vp *sir* Cador with care at his herte,  
*Sir* Clegis, *sir* Cleremonde, *thes* clere mene of armes,  
*Sir* Lothe, and *sir* Lyonelle, *sir* Lawncelott, and Lowes,  
Marrake and Meneduke, *that* myghty ware euer ; 4267  
With langoure in the launde thare he layes theme to-  
gedire,

He swoons for  
sorrow,

Lokede one theyre lighames, and with a lowde steuene,  
Ahs lede *that* liste noghte lyfe and loste had his myrthis ;  
Than he stotays for made, and alle his strenghe faylez,  
Lokes vpe to *the* lyfte, and alle his lyre chaunges, 4272  
Downne he sweys fulle swythe, and in a swoone fallys,  
Vpe he coueris one kneys, and kryes fulle oftene,—

and bitterly  
grieves over his  
knights.

“Kyng comly with crowne, in care am I leuyde !  
Alle my lordchipe lawe in lande es layde vndyre ! 4276  
That me has gyfene gwerdones, be grace of hym seluene,  
Mayntenynde my manhede be myghte of theire handes,  
Made me manly one molde, and mayster in erthe ;  
In a tenefulle tyme this torfere was rereryde, 4280  
That for a traytoure has tynte alle my trewe lordys !  
Here rystys the riche blude of the Rownde Table,

[leaf 98]

Rebukkede with a rebawde, and rewthe es the more !  
I may helpes one hethe house be myne one, 4284  
Ahs a wafulle wedowe *that* wanttes hir beryne !

Now he may  
weep and wring  
his hands, for his  
worship is gone  
for ever.

I may werye and wepe, and wrynge myne handys,  
ffor my wytt and my wyrchipe awaye es for euer !  
Off alle lordchips I take leue to myne ende ! 4288  
Here es *the* Bretones blode broughte owt of lyfe,  
And nowe in *this* journee alle my joy endys !”

Thane relyes *the* renkes of alle *the* Rownde Table,  
 To *the* ryalle roy thay ride *tham* alle ; 4292 The remnants of  
his men rally  
round him.  
 Than assembles fulle sonne seuene score knyghtes,  
 In sighte to *thaire* souerayne, *that* was vnsownde leuede ;  
 Than knelis the crownde kynge, and kryes one lowde,—  
 “ I thanke *the*, Gode, of thy grace, *with* a gud wyll ; He thanks God  
for the victory,  
and all the glory  
which he and his  
knights had won.  
 That gafe vs vertue and witt to vencows *this* beryns ;  
 And vs has grauntede *the* gree of theis gret lordes !  
 He sent vs neuer no schame, ne schenchipe in erthe,  
 Bot euer ȝit *the* ouer-hande of alle *other* kynges : 4300  
 We hafe no laysere now *these* lordys to seke,  
 ffor ȝone laythely ladde me lamede so sore !  
 Graythe vs to Glaschenbery, vs gaynes none *other* ; He desires to be  
taken to Glaston-  
bury.  
 Thare we may ryste vs *with* roo, and raunsake oure wondys.  
 Of *this* dere day werke, *the* Dryghtene be louede, 4305  
 That vs has destaynede and demyd to dye in oure awene.”  
 Thane they holde at his heste hally at ones,  
 And graythes to Glasschenberye *the* gate at *the* gayneste ;  
 Entres *the* Ile of Aueloyne, and Arthure he lyghttes,  
 Merkes to a manere there, for myghte he no forthire : He enters the  
Isle of Avelon  
and is taken to a  
manor there; for  
he could go no  
further. A sur-  
geon examines  
his wounds.  
 A surgyne <sup>1</sup> of Salerne enserches his wondes, 4311  
 The kyng sees be asaye *that* sownde bese he neuer,  
 And sone to his sekire mene he said theis wordes,—  
 “ Doo calle me a confessour, with Criste in his armes ; Arthur sends for  
a confessor.  
 I wille be howselde in *haste*, whate happe so be-tyddys ;  
 Constantyne my cosyne he salle the corowne bere, 4316 He appoints Con-  
stantine, his  
kinsman, his heir.  
 Aȝs be-commys hym of kynde, ȝife Criste wille hym thole !  
 Beryne, fore my benysone, thowe berye ȝone lordys,  
 That in baytaille with brondez are broghte owte of lyfe ;  
 And sythene merke manly to Mordrede childrene, 4320 He orders Mo-  
dred's children to  
be slain, and  
slung in waters.  
 That they bee sleyghely slayne, and slongene in watyrs ;  
 Latt no wykkyde wede waxe, ne wrythe one this erthe ;  
 I warne fore thy wirchipe, wirke aȝs I bydde !  
 I fore-gyffe alle greffe, for Cristez lufe of heuene ! 4324 “ If Guinever  
have well  
wrought, well her  
betide.”  
 ȝife Waynor hafe wele wroghte, wele hir be-tydde ! ”

<sup>1</sup> MS. *susgyne*.

Then he says "In manus," and his spirit passes away.

[leaf 98, back]

The barons of Britain bury Arthur at Glastonbury.

Great mourning was made at his funeral.

This was the end of Arthur of the blood of Hector and of Priamus of Troy.

He saide *In manus* with mayne onemolde where he ligges,  
And thus passes his speryt, and spekes he no more !

The baronage of Bretayne thane, bechopes and othire,  
Graythes theme to Glaschenbery with gloppynnande  
hertes,

To bery thare the bolde kyng, and brynge to *the* erthe,  
With alle wirchipe and welthe *that* any wy scholde.

Throly belles thay rynge, and *Requiem* syngys, 4332  
Dosse messes and matyns with mournande notes :

Relygeous reueste in theire riche copes,  
Pontyficalles and prelates in precyouse wedys, 4336  
Dukes and dusszeperis in theire dule-cotes,

Cowntasses knelande and claspande theire handes,  
Ladys languessande and lowrande to schewe ;

Alle was buskede in blake, birdes and othire,  
That schewede at the sepulture, with sylande teris ;  
Whas neuer so sorowfulle a syghte seene in theire tyme !

Thus endis kyng Arthure, as auctors alegges, 4342

That was of Ectores blude, the kyng sone of Troye,  
And of *sir Pryamous*, the prynce, praysede in erthe ;  
ffro thethene<sup>1</sup> broghte the Bretons alle his bolde eldyrs  
In-to Bretayne the brode, as *the* Bruytte tellys. 4346

*et c'. explicit.*

*Hic jacet Arthurus, rex q[u]ondam rex que futurus.*

Here endes Morte Arthure, writene by Robert of Thorntone.

R. Thornton dictus qui scripsit sit benedictus. Amen !

<sup>1</sup> Or thythene.

## INDEX OF NAMES.

---

- Absolone, 2868.  
 Achinour, 1824.  
 Acres, 903, *Acre*.  
 Affrike, 574, Affryke, 1869, Aufrike, 2607, Awfrike, 3933, *Africa*.  
 Akyne, 496, *Aix-la-Chapelle*.  
 Aladuke, 1739, Alidoyme of Towelle, 1916, Alyduke, 1824.  
 Alexander, 2634, Alexandere, 3408, 4160, Alexandire, 2602, *Alexander*.  
 Alexandere, 2607, Alysaudyre, 572, *Alexandria*.  
 Algere, 2837, 2847.  
 Alidoyme. *See* Aladuke.  
 Almaygne, 3596, Almayne, 45, 496, 555, 618, 2387, 3210, *Germany*.  
 Alyduke. *See* Aladuke.  
 Alymere, 4078.  
 Alysaudyre. *See* Alexandere.  
 Amazonnes, 584.  
 Ambyganye, 572.  
 Antele, 2829, 2837.  
 Anyone, 42, *Aniane (in France)*.  
 Araby, 1175, Arraby, 576, *Arabia*.  
 Argayle, 4123, *Argyle*.  
 Arthur, 26, 496, Arthure, 172, 288, 305, 470, &c.  
 Askanere, 1739.  
 Asye, 574, *Asia*.  
 Aueloyne, Ile of, 4309, *Isle of Avelon*.  
 Aufrike. *See* Affrike.  
 Aungers, 288.  
 Awguste, 1967, *Augsburg*. Lat. *Augusta Vindelicorum*.  
 Babyloyne, 586, *Babylon*.  
 Baldake, 586, *Bagdad*.  
 Bareflete, 629, 1182, 1223, Barflete, 835, *Barfleur*. Lat. *Baro-fluctum*.  
 Barouns, 1908.  
 Basille, 907.  
 Bawdewyne, 277, Bawdwyne, 1606, 2384.  
 Bayone, 38, 2379, *Bayonne*.  
 Bayous, 587.  
 Bedvere, 893, 1170, Bedwar, 2384, Bedwere, 1162, 1264, 1606, 1744, 2238, 2379.  
 Bedwyne, 1408. Probably a mistake for *Bedwere*.  
 Belyne, 277.  
 Berade, 2384.  
 Berelle, 1605, 1775, 1914, Berille, 1264, 1771, Berylle, 1433.  
 Bernarde, Mounte, 566.  
 Boice, 1263, 1426, 1433, 1456,

- Boyce, 1483, 1485, 1605, Boys, 1378.  
 Borghite, 1698. A mistake for *Brut*.  
 Boyce, Boys. See Boice.  
 Brabane, 36, *Brabant*.  
 Bremyne, 277.  
 Bretayne, 2095, 2330, 2362, &c., Bretayne, 3519, Bretayne the brade, 106, B. the brode, 3579, 4346, B. the braddere, 55, 1699, B. the more, 1018, *Britain*.  
 Bretayne, 852, B. the lesse, 36, B. the lyttyle, 304, *Brittany*.  
 Bretones, 1011, 1484, 1617, 4111, Bretons, 1403, 1407, Bretouns, 1348, Bretowns, 4104, *Britons*.  
 Bretowne, *sg.*, 3508.  
 Brut, 1695, *Brutus*.  
 Bruytte, the, 4346, *the Brute*.  
 Bryane, 1606.  
 Burdeux, 38, *Bordeaux*.  
 Burgoyne, 36, 1018, 1241, 2383, *Burgundy*.  
 Cador, 247, 1718, 1724, 1777, &c., Cadore, 481, 1602, 1637, 1707, Cadors, 4188, Cadour, 259.  
 Caerlyone, 61, Karelyone, 3916, Karlyone, 3512, *Caerleon*.  
 Calaburne, 4230, Caliburne, 4193, Calyburne, 4242, *Caliburn*, Arthur's sword.  
 Came, 2380, 2385.  
 Capados, 580, *Cappadocia*.  
 Capatoylle, the, 2353, Capitoile, 280, Capytoile, 96, *the Capitol*.  
 Cardyfe, 2498, *Curdiff*.  
 Carelele, 480, 839, Carlelele, 64, 476, *Carlisle*.  
 Castelle Blanke, 1225.  
 Catrike, 482.  
 Cayme, 1311, *Cain*.  
 Kayous, 156, 209, 892, 1864, 1997, Kayous, 1152, 1194, 2157, &c., *Kay*, Arthur's chief butler.  
 Chartris, 1619, *Chartres*.  
 Chastelayne, 2952, Chasteleynne, 3028.  
 Cheldrike, 2954.  
 Chestyre, 3914, *Chester*.  
 Childrike, 3537.  
 Christofre, 2390.  
 Clarent, 4202, Clarente, 4193, Arthur's best sword.  
 Clarybalde, 2497.  
 Clarymownde, 2497. See Clere-monde.  
 Clegis, 1604, 1638, 1649, 1671, &c., Clegys, 1692, 3635.  
 Clemente, 1828.  
 Cleremonde, 1603, 4265, Clere-mownde, 3635, Cleremownde, 1638.  
 Cleremus, 1603, 1638.  
 Clowdmur, 1604.  
 Clyme, the close of, 1639.  
 Collbrande, 2123, 2201, one of Arthur's swords, perhaps = *Caliburn*.  
 Colome, 623.  
 Combe, 3110, 3128, 3149, *Como*.  
 Constantyne, 282, an emperour of Rome.  
 Constantyne, 4316, Arthur's heir.  
 Constantyne, 628, 848, Costantyne, 2373 Constantyne landez, 1187.  
 Cordewa, 1866, *Cordova*.  
 Cornett, 600, Cornette, 1909, *Corneto*.  
 Cornewaile, 1848, 2002, 2262, 3897, Cornewale, 1791, Cornewalle, 1637, Cornewayle, 247, 1777, Kornewayle, 4054, *Cornwall*.  
 Craddoke, 3511, 3517, Cradoke, 3487.

- Crasyne, cowntas of, 3045.  
 Creette, 200, Crete, 204, 580.  
 Crist, 136, 467, 482, &c., Criste, 227, 285, 296, &c., Cryste, 257, 308, 346, &c., *Christ*.  
 Cyrus. *See* Cirquyttrie in Glossary.  
 Cyprys, 596, *Cyprus*.  
 Damaske, 578, *Damascus*.  
 Damyat, 578, *Damietta*.  
 Danamarke, 3936, Danemarke, 3752, 3783, Danmarke, 46, *Denmark*.  
 Danamarques, 3610, Danmarkes, 3528, *Danes*.  
 Danes, 3694.  
 Danuby, 622, *the Danube*.  
 David, 3416.  
 Dolfinede, 2653, *Dauphiné* (?).  
 Dolfyne, 3023, Dolphyne, 2970.  
 Dorsett, 4052.  
 Douere, 3066.  
 Duche-men, 1251, Duche-mene, 2030, 2101, 2653, 2834, *Germans*.  
 Ector, 2603, 2635, 3409, 4343, *Hector*.  
 Egipt, 576, 2200.  
 Elamet, 575.  
 Ermonyne, 573, *Armenia*. *See The Romans of Partenay*, ll. 1637, 5321, 5372, &c.; where it is spelt *Hermeny*.  
 Ermyngalle, 1825.  
 Errake, 4075, 4161, 4263.  
 Eruge, 42.  
 Esexe, 1740, *Essex*.  
 Estriche, 45, 3933, *Austria*.  
 Ewandre, 1868, Ewandyre, 1622, Ewaynedyre, 1904.  
 Ewayne, 357, 1572, 3973, 4075, &c., Ewayne fytz Henry, 1558, Ewane fytz Vryence, 337, Ewayne fytz Vriene, 2066.  
 Ewfrates, 573, *Euphrates*.  
 Ewrope, 574.  
 Famacoste, 2761, *Famagosta* in Cyprus. *See The Romans of Partenay*, l. 1299, and Mr Skeat's note thereon.  
 Federike, 2899.  
 Feltemour, 1382.  
 Feraunt, 2760, 2765, Ferawnt, 3404, Ferawnte, 2421.  
 Ferrer, 2421, Ferrere, 2432.  
 ff. Names beginning with *ff* are entered under single *F*.  
 Flaundres, 495, Flaundrez, 34, 494, Flawndresche, 3597, *Flanders*.  
 Florent, 2735, 2762, 2764, 2797, &c., Florente, 2483, 2729.  
 Florent, 2232, Lucius's sword.  
 Floridas, 2755, 2778, 2780, 2803, 3018, 3112, Florydas, 2490.  
 Forawnt, 2490. *Read Ferawnt*.  
 France, 2365, Fraunce, 34, 110, 367, 435, &c.  
 Fraunche-mene, 2484, *Frenchmen*.  
 Fres, 3864.  
 Freselannd, 110, Friselande, 367, Fryselande, 2765, *Friesland*.  
 Froderike, 3864.  
 Froille, 3404, Frolle, 3345, 4208, *Frollo*.  
 Fryselande. *See* Freselannd.  
 Galelé, 592, *Galilee*.  
 Galuth, 1387, 1470, 3709, Galuthe, 2558, Gawayne's sword.  
 Galyrane, 3636.  
 Galys londe, 3862, *Wales*.  
 Garyere, 592.  
 Gawayne, 1265, 1352, 1368, 2218,

- &c. Gawayne, 2979, 3860, Gaweayne, 1468, Gaywayne, 233, Wawayne, 964, 1302, 1342, 1744, 2953, Arthur's nephew.  
 Gaynour, 84, 705, Waynor, 3904, 4204, 4325, Waynore, 3550, 3575, Waynour, 233, 652, 657, 697, Arthur's wife.  
 Gayous, 1346, 1385, uncle of Lucius.  
 Geene, 559, 843, 863, Genne, 2897, Iene, 2889, 2909, *Genoa*.  
 Gerarde, 2896.  
 Gernaide, 2943, *Granada*.  
 Gernesay, 3861, *Guernsey*.  
 Gerone, 863.  
 Geryne, 3708.  
 Glamorgane, 59.  
 Glamour, 3862.  
 Glaschenbery, 4303, 4329, Glaschenberye, 4308, *Glastonbury*.  
 Godarde, 562, 2655, Goddarde, 3104, Mount Goddarde, 497, *Mount St Gothard*.  
 Godfraye, 3430.  
 Golapas, 2124.  
 Golyas, 3419, *Goliath*.  
 Gotherlande, 37, Gutlande, 3763.  
 Gowere, 3861.  
 Grece, 37, 1000, Greke, 1463, *Greece*.  
 Grekes, 602.  
 Grekkes See, 594, the eastern part of the Mediterranean.  
 Grisswolde, 3708.  
 Gryme, 1265.  
 Gutlande. *See Gotherlande*.  
 Gyane, 37, *Guienne*.  
 Hamptone, 3031, *Southampton*.  
 Hardelfe, 1741, Hardolfe, 2974, 3583.  
 Hawyke, 3541.  
 Henawde, 35, *Hainault*.  
 Henguste, 3545, *Hengist*.  
 Herygalle, 1742.  
 Herylle, 1742.  
 Hillary, 625.  
 Holaund, 35, *Holland*.  
 Hors, 3545, *Horsa*.  
 Howelle, 1180, 1741, 3583.  
 Humbyre, 3541.  
 Iaffe, Porte, 1520, 1544, 2039, *Jaffa, the ancient Joppa*.  
 Idirous, 4078, Idrous, 4135, 4141.  
 Idrus, 1439, 1510, Idrus fitz Ewayne, 1490, 1498.  
 Iene. *See Geene*.  
 Ienitalle, 2112.  
 Ierante, 2890.  
 Ierusalem, 3415, 3433.  
 Iewe, 2895.  
 Ihesu, 863, *Jesus*.  
 Inde, 573, *India*.  
 Inglande, 1412, 2359, 3500, 3685, *Inglande*, 283, 710, 724.  
 Ioatalle, 2877.  
 Iolyan, 2889.  
 Ioneke, 1739, 1868, 1905.  
 Iosephate, vale of, 2876.  
 Iosue, 2605, 3414, *Joshua*.  
 Irelande, 31, 2359, 3534, 3909.  
 Irritayne, 575.  
 Iudas, 2605, 3412, *Judas Macca-beus*.  
 Iulius Cesar, 115, Iulyus Cesare, 3410.  
 Iulyus, 2877.  
 Karelyone, Karlyone. *See Caerlyone*.  
 Karolus, 3423, *Charlemagne*.  
 Kayone, 2380, a mistake for



- Kayous*, caused by the word *Bayone* in the line before.
- Kayous. *See* Cayous.
- Kentt, 3542.
- Kornewayle. *See* Cornewaile.
- Lancelott, 1720, Launcelot, 2073, Launcelott, 368, Launcelotte, 1999, Lawncelot de Lake, 3638, Lawncelott, 4266.
- Lebe, 1767, 1781, 1803, 1817, 1827, 1900.
- Leo, 1971.
- Lettow, 605, Lettowe, 2167, 3784, *Lithuania*.
- Lewlyne, 1826.
- Londone, 2418.
- Lorayne, 350, 1460, 2398, &c. Lorrayne, 429, 2418, 2531, &c.
- Loth, 2081, 3637, Lothe, 4266, Lott, 1999.
- Lottez, 382.
- Lowelle, 1516.
- Lowes, 4266.
- Lucerne, 3094.
- Lucius, 128, 251, 383, &c. Lucyus, 23, Lucius Iberius, 86.
- Lumbarddye, 3108, 3594, Lumbardye, 2406, 2654, 2997, 3585, Lumberddye, 498, Lumberdye, 135, 350, 429, 1972, *Lombardy*.
- Lusscheburghe, 2388, *Luxemburg*.
- Lyonelle, 1516, 2227, 3637, 4266.
- Macedone, 603.
- Makabee, 3413.
- Marie, 2869, 3998, 4041.
- Marrake, 4220, 4267, Marrike, 4209, Merrake, 4077.
- Marschalle de Mowne, 1397.
- Mawrelle of Mauncez, 1918.
- Mawrene, 1918.
- Mees, 2950, Meyes, 2417, *Metz*.
- Melane, 3134, 3144, Meloyne, 351, 428, *Milan*.
- Meneduke, 4077, 4267, M. of Mentoche, 1919.
- Merrake. *See* Marrake.
- Messie, 3998, *Messiah*.
- Meyes. *See* Mees.
- Mighelle, Saynt, 940, Seynt M., 1069, Myghelle, 1166, *St Michael*.
- Mighelle Mount, Seynt, 899, *St Michael's Mount*.
- Modrede, 679, 3555, 3569, 3766, 3772, 3840, Mordrede, 645, 711, 3874, 4221, 4226, &c. Mordrede the Malebranche, 4062, 4174.
- Mownttagus, 3773.
- Myghelle. *See* Mighelle.
- Nauerne, 44, *Navarre*.
- Nazareth, 591.
- Normandye, 834, Normaundye, 44.
- Norwaye, 44, 3935.
- Nylus, 591, *the Nile*.
- Orcage, 572.
- Orgaile, 3534, 3934, Orgayle, 30.
- Origge, 1825.
- Orkenay, 30, Orekenay, 3934, Orkkenaye, 4163, *Orkney*.
- Owghtreth, 234.
- Pamphile, 588, *Pamphilia*.
- Paradice, 2706, Paradyse, 2039.
- Paresche, 1340, 1888, 2647, Parys, 1609, 1631, *Paris*.
- Paule, 2413.
- Pavy, 3141, Pavye, 568, *Pavia*.
- Pawnce, 3140.
- Peghttes, 4125, Peyghites, 3533, *Picts*.
- Perce, 588, 1520, Perse, 1377, 1544, *Persia*.

- Peter, 2413, 2724, 2883, Petire, 2646, Petyr, 1256, the apostle.  
 Peter, 1476, 1519, 1631, Petir, 1610, Petire, 1543, Petyr, 1419, a senator.  
 Petyrsande, 352.  
 Peyghites. *See* Peghttes.  
 Peyters, 40, *Poitiers*.  
 Porte Iaffe. *See* Iaffe.  
 Portyngale, 1028, *Portugal*.  
 Pounte Tremble, 327, 352, Pownte T., 3140.  
 Preter Iohne, 588, *Prester John*.  
 Prewsslande, 2788, Pruysslande, 604, 2835, *Prussia*.  
 Priamous, 2698, 2724, 2811, 2836, 2916, Priamus, 2595, 2646, 2690, Gawayne's prisoner.  
 Prouynce, 40, Provynee, 2647, *Provence*.  
 Pruysslande. *See* Prewsslande.  
 Pryamous, 4344, *Priam*.  
 Pulle, 604, *Apulia*.  
 Pys, 352, Pyse, 3141, *Pisa*.  
 Rawlaunde, 1607, Rowlande, 1745.  
 Raynalde, 1607, 1995, Raynallde, 1745.  
 Raynalde of the Rodes, 2785.  
 Reone. *See* Rone.  
 Reynes, 853.  
 Richeere, 1745, Richere, 1607, 1995, 2790.  
 Romaine, 310, 1704, 1733, *Roman*; *pl.* Romaines, 120, 174, 221, &c. Romainez, 1761, 1877, &c. Romayns, 1291, 1361, &c.  
 Rome, 23, 80, 86, 93, &c.  
 Rone, 1338, Reone (? Roone), 424, *Rhone*.  
 Roodes, 597, *Rhodes*.  
 Rowlande, 1745.  
 Rowne, 1996, *Rouen*.  
 Salarne, 2586, Salerne, 4311, *Salerno*.  
 Sandewyche, 447, Sandwyche, 490, 635, 720.  
 Sarazene, 2277, *Saracen*; *pl.* Sarazenes, 624, 1846, 1911, &c. Sarazenez, 1960, Sarezenes, 599, 607, Sarzanez, 1854, Sarzynes, 1626.  
 Satanase, 3812, *Satan*.  
 Sayne, 1336, *Seine*.  
 Scottlande, 32, 292.  
 Segramoure, 1871.  
 Sessoyne, 1977, 2657, 2907, Sexone, 1964, *Saxony*.  
 Sessoynes, 3530, *Saxons*.  
 Sexone. *See* Sessoyne.  
 Sextenour, 1700, Sextynour of Lyby, 1625.  
 Soone, 2482, *Saone*.  
 Sotere. *See* Sutere.  
 Southamptone, 3546.  
 Spanyolis, 3700, *Spaniards*.  
 Spayne, 999, 3162.  
 Spolett, 3161, *Spoletto*.  
 Spruysslande, 3162.  
 Surgenale, 3532.  
 Surry, 608, 1687, 1844, &c. Surrye, 590, 1626, 3312, Surylande, 2657, *Syria*.  
 Sutere, 1627, 1910, Sotere, 1871 Suters (?), 501.  
 Swaldye, 57.  
 Swetherwyke, 47.  
 Swyane of Sweey, 2958.  
 Swynne, 47.  
 Tambire, 3902, *Tamar*.  
 Tartary, 582.  
 Thebay, 583.  
 Tholus, 39, Tolouse, 1567, *Toulouse*.  
 Towelle, 1916.

- Treyntis, (?) 4056.  
 Troye, 887, 1696, 2603, 2635, 3409, 4343.  
 Troys, 1629, *Troyes*.  
 Turkayne, 2408. *Read* Tuskayne.  
 Turkey, 582, *Turkey*.  
 Turkys, 1917, *Turks*.  
 Turoyne, 39, *Touraine*.  
 Turry, 234.  
 Tuschayne, 431, Tuskane, 3150, Tuskayne, 328, 499, 3586, 3593, *Tuscany*.  
 Valence, 41.  
 Valewnce, Viscownte of, 2047.  
 Valyant, 2064, V. of Vyleris, 1982.  
 Venyce, 204, Venyse, 2025.  
 Vertennone vale, 3169.  
 Viterbe, 326, 353, 2025, 2048, 3164, *Viterbo*.  
 Vnwyne, 2868.  
 Vryelle, 1744.  
 Vryencee. *See* Ewayne.  
 Vter, 29, Vtere, 521, 1310, 4216, Arthur's father.  
 Vtere, 1904, mistake for Vtolfe (?).  
 Vtolfe, 1622, 1868.  
 Vyenne, 41, *Vienne (in France)*.  
 Wade, 964.  
 Walchere, 2680.  
 Wales, 33, 56, Walis, 2890, West Walys, 322.  
 Walschelande, 334, *Wales*.  
 Waltyre, 2495.  
 Walyngfordhe, 4203, 4217.  
 Watlyng-strette, 450, *Watling-street*.  
 Wawayne. *See* Gawayne.  
 Waynor, Waynore, Waynour. *See* Gaynour.  
 Wecharde, 2495.  
 Westfale, 2826, Westuale, 2656, Westwale, 621, *Westphalia*.  
 Whycher, 2678, Wychere, 2680, 4025.  
 Wyghte, 334, *the Isle of Wight*.  
 Wynchestre, 4011.  
 Ynglande. *See* Inglande.  
 3orke, 636, 3911, *Fork*.

## GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

- A, *conj.* and, 2522, 2797.  
 A, *int.* ah ! 320, 1671, 1791.  
 Abaischite, *p.p.* abashed, 255.  
 Abaiste, Abayste, *p.p.* cast down, 1423, 3737.  
 Abbayes, *s. pl.* abbeys, 3403.  
 Abillere, *adj. comp.* abler, 2635.  
 Abouen, 903, 904, Abouenn, 564, Aboune, 511, Abowene, 823, Abowne, 2060, Abwene, 775, *prep. and adv.* above. A.S. *abufan*.  
 Accorde, *v.* agree, 344 ; *p.p.* accordide, 3133.  
 Accountes, *v.* 3 s. reckons, 1102 ; 1 s. acounte, make account of, care for, 405 ; *inf.* acownt, tell, 3929.  
 Actone, *s.* acton, 902, 3457 ; *pl.* aketouns, 2626.  
 Affraye, *s.* fright, terror, 3226.  
 Affrayede, *v.* *pret.* frightened, 2804 ; *p.p.* affrayede, 2256.  
 Aftire, Aftyre, Aftyre, after, 64, 82, &c.  
 Agaste, *adj.* aghast, afraid, 2442, 2728.  
 Agayne, Agaynes, Agayne, Agayns, *prep.* against, towards, 774, 1268, 2681.  
 Agayne-stande, *v.* resist, 3757 ; *pl.* aayne-stondes, 3126.  
 Ajournede, *p.p.* adjourned, put off, 340.  
 Ajuggede, *p.p.* judged, deemed, 862, 1658, 3411, 4110.  
 Ake, *s.* oak, 1096. A.S. *ác*.  
 Akere, *s.* acre, 3849.  
 Aketouns. *See* Actone.  
 Alde, 13, 986, Awlde, 279, *adj.* old.  
 Alegges, *v. pl.* allege, 4342.  
 Alet, *s.* ailette, shoulder-plate, 2565.  
 Alfyne, *s.* 1343, a term of reproach ; it literally means the *bishop* in chess. *See* *Promptorium Parvulorum*.  
 Algarde, *s.* a kind of wine, 202.  
 Alkyne, Alkyns, *adj.* of every kind, 928, 1730, 3244.  
 Allblawsters, *s. pl.* crossbow-men, 2426.  
 Alle-weldand. *See* Alweldande.  
 Allone, *adj.* alone, only, 541, 2312.  
 Allossede, *p.p.* renowned, esteemed, 3881.  
 Alls. *See* Als.  
 Alofede. *Read* Alosede, *p.p.* praised, renowned, 2418.  
 Alouer, *adv.* all over, 2027.  
 Allowe, *v.* praise, 1036 ; 3 s. alowes, 396.  
 Als, Alls, *conj.* as, 845, 1701, 1989, 1590 ; also, 1194.

- Alweldande, 397, Alle-weldand, 1059, *adj.* all-ruling, all-powerful.
- Alynes, *s. pl.* aliens, 4061.
- Amange, *prep.* among, 4037; *adv.* at times, sometimes, 1238.
- Ame = am, 2606, 2642, &c.
- Amede, *p.p.* estimated, 4068.  
 "Aësmer, aasmer, aemer, aumer, easmer: Juger, estimer, comparer, croire, penser, être d'avis."—*Roquefort*. Lat. *æstimare*.
- Ancestres, Auncestres, *s. pl.* ancestors, 276, 521, 1310.
- And = an, if, 134, 339, 1023.
- Ane, *adj.* an, a, 1079, 1148, 1661.
- Anely, Anly, *adv.* only, alone, 98, 1499, 1981.
- Anentis, *prep.* against, 2568.
- Anes, *adv.* once, 360. *See* Ones.
- Angerde, *p.p.* angered, angry, 265, 1938, 1957.
- Angers, *impers. v.* Me angers = I am angry, 1662, 2838, 2848.
- Ankkere, *s.* anchor, 3601; *pl.* ankers, 740, ankyrs, 493.
- Anlace, *s.* a sort of dagger, 1148.  
 "Besides the dagger, Chaucer, in his *Canterbury Tales*, mentions the anelace, which was broad bladed, but lessening from the hilt to a sharp point, and having a sharp edge on each side." Meyrick, *Critical Inquiry into Antient Armour*, vol. ii. p. 100.
- Anly. *See* Anely.
- Anone, *adv.* anon, soon, 2716.
- Ansuere, *v.* answer, 98, 306; *pret.* answarde, 288.
- Ansuere, *s.* answer, 1324.
- Anter. *See* Awnter.
- Anterous, *adj.* adventurous, bold, 2524.
- Apas, *adv.* with measured step, 4014.
- Apone, 195, Appone, 262, Apponne, 4000, *prep.* upon.
- Appairelles, *v. pl.* apparel, dress, 500; *p.p.* appayrellede, 2461.
- Apparant, Apparaunt, *adj.* apparent, 1944, 2606.
- Apparaylle, *s.* apparel, 3365.
- Apperte, *adj.* open, 688.
- Appertly, 1478, Appertlyche, 589, *adv.* openly.
- Appone. *See* Apone.
- Approches, *ref. v. pl.* draw near, 4105.
- Ar, Are, *adv. & conj.* before, 254, 331, 1722.
- Arase, *v.* snatch away, 4098.
- Araysede, *p.p.* raised, drawn up, 1677.
- Arborye, *s.* trees, 3244.
- Ardant, Ardaunt, *adj.* burning, 193, 1087.
- Are. *See* Ar.
- Are, *conj.* or, 1944.
- Arete, *v.* arrest, stop, capture, 633; *pret.* arete, 329, arestede, 1429.
- Arete, *s.* arrest, 1456, 1473; place of meeting, 311, 548.
- Arowes, *s. pl.* arrows, 2105.
- Arrabyes, Arrahys, *s. pl.* animals of some kind, perhaps Arabian horses, 2288, 2337.
- Arryfedede, 835, Aryefede, 600, Aryuede, 3905, *p.p.* come to shore.
- As armes, (Fr.) to arms! 2717.
- Asawte. *See* Assawte.
- Asaye, 2615, Assaye, 2347, *v.* try.
- Asaye, *s.* trial, examination, 4312.
- Ascente, Assente, *v.* assent, 644, 1506, 1963.
- Ascryez, 1367, Askryes, 2245, *v.* 3 *s.* shouts, cries out; *pl.* ascriez, 1768.
- Asches, *v.* 2 *s.* askest, 343; 3 *s.* askys, requires, 157; *pret.* aschede, asked for, 715.

- Assawte, Asawte, Asawtte, *s.* assault, 1697, 3012, 3053.
- Assemble, *s.* assembly, 1578, 1852, 1962.
- Assingnez, *v. pl.* assign, 727; *pret.* assingnyde, 240.
- Assoyllede, *p.p.* absolved, 3498.
- At = to (with the infinitive), 1165.
- At = that = what, 1842, 3484.
- Atheliste, *adj.* noblest, 1593. A.S. *æþele*.
- Attamede, *v. pret.* broached, pierced, 2175.  
 "He let *atame* hys pyement tunne To make his gode gestis glad."  
 Royal MS. 18 A x, leaf 130, bk.  
 "Attamyn a wesselle wyth drynke, or abbrochyn. Attamino, depleo."  
*Promptorium Parvulorum*.
- At-vndere, *adv.* down, 3180.
- Atyre, *s.* attire, 4186.
- Auctors, *s. pl.* authors, 4342.
- Auditoure, *s.* auditor, 1673; *pl.* audytours, 661.
- Aughte, Awughte, *adj.* eight, 278, 2627, 3188.
- Aughte, *v.* See Awe.
- Aughtende, *adj.* eighth, 462.
- Auncestres. See Ancestres.
- Auntire, Auntyre. See Awnter.
- Austerene, Austeryne, *adj.* stern, 306, 414, 571, &c. See *Austerne* in *Pricke of Conscience*, l. 6181.
- Auantid, *v. pret.* praised, 1594; *p.p.* avauntede, 2864.
- Avantwarde, 324, Avawewarde, 2051, Avawmewarde, 2024, Avawmwarde, 2829, 3168, Avawwarde, 3764, *s.* vanguard.
- Avawmbrace, *s.* vambrace, a piece of armour for the forearm, 2568.
- Auenaunt, *adj.* becoming, graceful, 2626, 3188, 3208, 3500.
- Aventaile, *s.* "a moveable front to a helmet which covered the face, and through which the wearer respired or drew in the air, quâ ventus hauritur." (—Meyrick, *Glossary of Military Terms*, under *Ventaculum*) 910, 2572.
- Auenture, *s.* adventure, chance, fortune, 642.
- Avires, *v.* turns towards, directs, 3164. O. Fr. *virer*, turn.
- Avisemente, *s.* advice, counsel, 148.
- Avissely, Auyssely, *adv.* advisedly, prudently, 2699, 3165.
- Avowe, *s.* vow, 296, 308, 347.
- Avowe, *v.* vow, 357; *p.p.* avowede, 369.
- Auoyeddyde, *v. pret.* quitted, 2051.
- Avyede, *v. pret.* showed the way, or made their way towards, 3716.  
 "Avier: Montrer le chemin à quelqu'un." *Roquesfort*. "Avoier, aveier, diriger, indiquer la route, mettre en chemin, en bon chemin, exciter, irriter; *s'avoier*, se mettre en route, dans la bonne route, se diriger, s'occuper de quelque chose." *Burguy*.
- Awe, *v.* owe, 99; *pl.* awes, 455, ought; *pret.* aughte, owned, possessed, 29, 276, 521, &c.; *pret. subj.* aughte, oughtest, 289; 'aughte,' as an impersonal verb, 1583, 1595, 3340, avghte, 3509. Me aughte = I ought.
- Awene, *adj.* own, 709, 997, 1594.
- Awghtene, *adj.* eighteen, 4069.
- Awke, *adj.* perverse, contrary, 13.
- Awkewarde, Awkwarde, *adv.* awry, transversely, 2247, 2564.
- Awlde. See Alde.
- Awncestrye, *s.* ancestry, 1907.
- Awntere, Auntire, Awntire, *s.* adventure, chance, risk, 1905, 2617, 2244; *pl.* awnters, 1967; at awntere, at random, 2543.

- Awntere, Anter, Auntyre, *v.* adventure, 360, 1596, 1660; 3 *s.* anters, 1498; *pl.* awnters, 1596.
- Awntrende, *adj.* adventuring, bold, 2717.
- Awntrouseste, *adj.* most adventurous, 1624.
- Awughte. *See* Aughte.
- Ayele, *s.* grandfather, 2603.
- Ayere, Ayre, *s.* heir, 279, 283, 2634; *pl.* ayers, 3146.
- Ayere, Ayre, *v.* go, 455, 470, 1591; 3 *s.* ayerez, 617; *pl.* ayres, 1329; *i. p.* ayerande, 2830.
- Ayther, Aythere, Aythyre, *adj.* either, each, 939, 1991, 2830.
- Ay-ware, *adv.* everywhere, 614.
- Azoure, Azure, *s.* blue, 193, 765, 3355.
- A3ayne, *adv.* again, 2713.
- A3aynes, A-3aynez, *adv.* against, 786, 2117, 2791. *See* Agayne.
- A3ayne-stondes. *See* Agayne-stande.
- Bacenett, *s.* cap of steel or other metal, sometimes worn under the helm, 906, 2695, 2770; *pl.* bace-netez, 1754.
- "He hutte him on þe helm on hilt,  
In-to þe Brayn þorw *Bacinet* briht;  
Thus is his seruyse 3olde."  
*The Kyng of Turs* (Vernon MS., leaf 306, b.)
- Bachelers, Bachellers, *s. pl.* novices in arms, 68, 567, 1424.
- Bade, *v. pret.* abode, 2383.
- Bagis, Bagys, *s. pl.* badges, 2303, 3730.
- Baiste, *p.p.* downcast, afraid, 2856.
- Baite, *v.* feed, 2694.
- Bake, *s.* back, 2203, 3257.
- Bakene, *p.p.* baked, 3166.
- Bakhalfe, *s.* backpart, back, 1482.
- Balde, *adj.* bold, 1968.
- Baldly, *adv.* boldly, 630.
- Bale, *s.* harm, grief, sorrow, 805, 3976; *adj.* hurtful, 1483. A.S. *bealu*.
- Balefulle, *adj.* hurtful, 791; sorrowful, wretched, 1029, 1136.
- Bale-fyre, *s.* a large fire, properly a fire lighted as a signal of distress, 1048.
- Baltyrde, *v. pret.* danced about, capered, 782. *See* *Balteres, Alliterative Poems* (Reprint), p. 102, l. 459.
- Banarettez. *See* Banerettes.
- Bandez, *s. pl.* bonds, 1485; used metaphorically for "distress," 1180.
- Baneoure, *s.* bearer of a banner, 3732. "Banyowre, or bannerberere. *Vexillarius, vexillifer, primipilus.*" *Promptorium Parvulorum*.
- Banerettes, Banerettez, Banarettez, *s. pl.* knights of the higher order, 68, 567, 1403, 1424, 2855.
- Banke, *s.* shore (of the sea), 728, 3731; *pl.* bankkes, 3714.
- Barayne, *adj.* barren, 224.
- Barbours, *s. pl.* barbers, 2331, 2577.
- Barbycane, *s.* outer fortification or defence, fortress at the outlet of a city, 1183, 2470.
- Bare. *See* Bere.
- Bare, *s.* boar, 3123.
- Barefote, *adj.* barefoot, 2309.
- Bareheuedys, *s. pl.* boarheads, 177.
- Bare-heuvede, *adj.* bareheaded, 3630.
- Bare-legyde, *adj.* barelegged, 2122.
- Baronage, *s.* company of barons, 587, 1242.
- Barowes, *s. pl.* swine, 191. A.S. *beanh*.
- Barrers, *s. pl.* barriers, 2469.

- Basschede, *p.p.* cast down, 2121.  
 Bataile, 783, Batelle, 316, Batayle, 2458, Bataylle, 3107, Baytaille, 4319, *s.* battle; body of troops; *pl.* baitailles, 1425, baitailles, 4064.  
 Baterde, *p.p.* battered, 189.  
 Bathe, *conj.* both, 19, 34, 352, &c.  
 Bawmede, *v. pret.* embalmed, 2298; *p.p.* bawmede, 980, 4020.  
 Baye, *adj.* bay, brown, 918.  
 Baytaille. *See* Bataile.  
 Baytand, *i. p.* baiting, 2516; baytaynde, 2671.  
 Be, Bee, *prep.* by, 60, 164, 174, &c.  
 Be, Bee, *v. be*; *ind. pres. pl.* bez, 97, bene, 2850; *fut. 1.* be (= shall be), 981, 2631, 4140; 2. bees, 1688, 2667, beese, 2663; 3. bees, 3976, bese, 1017, 4312; *imp. pl. 2.* bes, 3798, 4095, bees, 2856, 3737, bez, 222.  
 Beblede, *v. pret.* made bloody, 2250.  
 Bechene, *adj.* beechen, 1713.  
 Bechopes, *s. pl.* bishops, 4328.  
 Becommys, *v.* becomes, is proper for, 4317.  
 Bedde, Bede, *s.* bed, 758, 805, 2858.  
 Bede, *adj.* craving, hungry, lean, 3464. *See* *Beddy* in *Jamieson*. A.S. *biddan*, to ask.  
 Bedes, *v. pl.* offer, 505.  
 Bedgatt, *s.* going to bed, 1030.  
 Bee. *See* Be.  
 Beerynes. *See* Berne.  
 Bees. *See* Be, *v.*  
 Begynnande, *i. p.* beginning, 2963.  
 Behalde, *v.* behold, 2517; *i. p.* behaldande, 3107.  
 Bekez, *v. 3 s.* bakes, warms, 1048.  
 Bekende, *v. pret.* committed, entrusted, 2340, 2355; bekennyde, 482.  
 Beknowe, *v.* acknowledge, confess, 3867.  
 Bekyre, *v.* contend, fight, 3679; *pl.* bekys, 2425; *pret.* bekerde, 2096.  
 Bekyne, *s.* beacon, 564.  
 Belde, *v.* dwell, 8; *pl.* bieldez, 1242; *pret.* beldytt, inhabited, occupied, 38; *p.p.* beyldede, occupied, 566.  
 Belefedede, 1250, Beleuede, 3405, Beleufede, 2380, *p.p.* left.  
 Beleue, *v.* remain, 3583.  
 Belyfe, Belyue, *adv.* quickly, 1263, 2068, 2336, 3732.  
 Beme, *s.* beam, 3663.  
 Beneyde. *Read* Bendyde, *v. pret.* bent, 2424.  
 Bente, *s.* field, plain, 915, 1054, 1067.  
 Benysone, *s.* blessing, 4318.  
 Berde, *s.* beard, 1012; *pl.* berdez, 1002.  
 Bere, *s.* bear, 775, 790, 802.  
 Bere, *v.* bear, 51, 615; *pret.* bare, 291, 893; *p.p.* borne, 3738.  
 Berkes, *v. 3 s.* barks, 1351.  
 Bernakes, *s. pl.* barnacle geese, 189.  
 Berne, 962, Beryne, 116, Berynne, 3580, Bierne, 1094, Byerne, 2202, *s.* man; *pl.* bernes, 255, beryns, 148, beerynes, 1050, biernez, 1483, byernez, 2022, byerns, 1391. A.S. *beorn*.  
 Berouene. *Read* Beronene, *p.p.* run over with, covered, 3946; berowne, 3971.  
 "On me [the cross] lay þe lambe of love,  
 I was plater, hys body above,  
 Whan flessche and veynes alle to clove,  
 With blood I was *hironne*."  
 Royal MS. 18 A x, leaf 128.



- See *Beronen* in *Percy's Folio MS.*  
ed. Hales and Furnivall, vol. i. p.  
213, l. 31, and vol. iii. p. 63, l.  
172.
- Berye, *v.* bury, 4318; 3 *s.* beryes,  
2379; *p.p.* beryede, 980.
- Beryelle, *s.* burial, 1776, 2188.
- Beryenge, *s.* burying, 2377, 4023.
- Bes. See *Be.*
- Besauntez, *s. pl.* bezants, 3256.
- Bese. See *Be.*
- Bessomes, *v.* 3 *s.* besoms, i. e.  
sweeps, 3661.
- Besy, *adj.* busy, 4095.
- Besye, *s.* business, 3630.
- Beseke, *v.* beseech; 3 *s.* besekys,  
305; *pl.* besekes, 127; *pret.* be-  
soghte, besoughte, 1234, 1438,  
3137.
- Bestaile, *s.* beasts, cattle, 1050.
- Beste, *s.* beast, 107, 811.
- Betakyns, *v.* 3 *s.* betokens, signi-  
fies, 822, 824.
- Bet, *v. pret.* set in order, adjusted;  
lit. improved, 3656. A.S. *bétan.*
- Beteche, *v.* hand over, deliver,  
commit, 1611; 3 *s.* beteches, 714;  
*pret.* betoke, 1889; betuke, 3190,  
4015. A.S. *betécān.*
- Betoke. See *Beteche.*
- Betrappede, *p.p.* entrapped, 1630.
- Betuke. See *Beteche.*
- Betwyx, *prep.* betwixt, 801, 2798.
- Betydde, *v.* betide, 4325; 3 *s.* be-  
tyddes, 3482; betyddys, 4315.
- Bett, *v. pret.* beat, 2470, 3682.
- Bettes, *v. ind. pres. pl.* beat,  
2808.
- Betyne, *adj.* beaten; hence, adorn-  
ed with beaten gold, or other such  
material, 3631, 3646, 3945.
- Beueryne = bevering, quivering,  
3630. O.E. *biver*, tremble. A.S.  
*bifian.* Or perhaps beueryne =  
beaver-coloured; compare *beuer*  
*hwed* in *Sir Gawayne and the Green*  
*Knight*, l. 845.
- Bewe, *v.* bow, 3366.
- Bewes, *s. pl.* boughs, 3366.
- Bewells, *s. pl.* bowels, 2175, 2203.
- Bewschers, *s. pl.* (?) the lower  
parts of the body, 1047. A.S.  
*scaru*, bowels, &c.; bew = bel,  
beau, fine, perhaps.
- Beyldede. See *Belde.*
- Bez. See *Be.*
- Bidde, *v.* bide, remain, 4028.
- Biddis, *v. ind. pres. pl.* offer, 2310.
- Bieldez. See *Belde.*
- Bierdez. See *Birde.*
- Bilynge, *s.* probably the part of  
the ship about the *bill* or *rostrum*,  
3663. A.S. *bil*, bill, beak, . . . fore-  
part of a ship. (See *Bosworth.*)
- Birdes, 2190, Birdez, 1029,  
Bierdez, 1052, Byrdez, 999, *s. pl.*  
women, ladies. A.S. *brýd*, bride,  
wife, woman.
- Birenne, 2519. Mistake for  
"outene."
- Birtenede, 3972. See *Brittene.*
- Blake, *adj.* black, 775, 1090,  
4339.
- Blanke, *s.* horse, 1799; *pl.*  
blankes, 1860. See *Blonke.*
- Blasons, *s. pl.* shields of arms,  
1860. See *Blasoun* in *Sir Gawayne*  
*and the Green Knight*, l. 828.
- Blawe, *v.* blow, 2662.
- Blawene, *p.p.* blown, 1286.
- Blawnchede, *p.p.* whitened, 3039.
- Ble, Blee, *s.* colour, complexion,  
2576, 3332, 3558, 4213.
- Blemeste, *p.p.* blemished, hurt,  
2578.
- Blendez, *v.* 3 *s.* blends, is mingled,  
1799.
- Blenke, *v.* blench, wince, 3640,  
3735; 3 *s.* blenkes, 4213; cause to  
blench, overcome, 2857.

- Bleryde, *v. pret.* mouthed, made wry faces, 782.  
 "Deuels sal gadir about hym þan,  
 And grymly gryn on hym and blere  
 And hydus braydes mak hym to  
 fere." Hampole's *Pricke of Conscience*, l. 2226.
- Blethely, *adv.* blithely, cheerfully, 4147.
- Blod, 4121, Blode, 175, 392, Blude, 3235, 4282, *s.* blood.
- Blode-bande, *s.* blood-band, a bandage to stop bleeding, 2576.
- Blod-hondes, *s. pl.* bloodhounds, 3640.
- Blody, Blodye, *adj.* bloody, 793, 3946.
- Blondirs, *v. 2 s.* blunderest, 3975.
- Blonke, *s.* horse, steed, 453; *pl.* blonkes, 615, blonkkes, 1634. A.S. *blanca, blanca.*
- Blude. *See* Blod.
- Blyne, *v.* cease, 1931, 2578, 3975. A.S. *blinnan.*
- Blyschit, *v. pret.* looked, 116. *See blusched, Alliterative Poems*, p. 29, l. 980.
- Blysse, *s.* joy, 1485.
- Blyssyng, *s.* blessing, 4103.
- Bonettez, *s. pl.* additional pieces of sail, 3656. "Bonnet (*bonnette*, Fr.), an additional part made to fasten with lathings to the foot of the sails of small vessels with one mast, in moderate winds. It is exactly similar to the foot of the sail it is intended for. They are commonly one-third of the depth of the sails they belong to." (Falconer's *Marine Dictionary*, ed. Burney.)
- Borde, 79, 171, 630, Bourde, 730, 3641, Burde, 1930, *s.* board, table; board (of a ship).
- Bordoure, *s.* border, 4211; *pl.* bordurs, 907.
- Bordyrde, *p.p.* bordered, 1002.
- Bore, *s.* boar, 188, 4214.
- Borne, 2519. Perhaps a mistake for *berne*.
- Borne, *p.p.* *See* Bere.
- Bosturs, *s. pl.* boasters, 1393.
- Bot, Bott, Botte, *conj.* but, 10, 70, except, 516, 521, unless, 1925; bot if, bot ȝif, bot ȝife, 356, 486, 250, unless; *prep.* without, 4070.
- Bote, 1786, Botte, 1837, *s.* amends, recompense. A.S. *bót, bótú.*
- Bothen, Bothene, both, 35, 2547, 2691, 2997, 3716, 4151.
- Botelesse, 981, 3558, Botles, 3976, Butelesse, 1014, *adj.* without remedy, cureless.
- Bottes, *s. pl.* boats, 748.
- Botures, *s. pl.* bitterns, 189. Probably miswritten for *Betures*; see *Betoure* in *John Russell's Boke of Nurture*, ed. Furnivall, ll. 421, 541, 696.
- Boune, Bowne, *v.* make ready, prepare, hasten, go, 936, 1013, 1034; 3 *s.* bownes, 3591, bounnez, 783.
- Bourde. *See* Borde.
- Bourdene, *v. pl. pres. ind.* jest, 3122; bouredez, 3 *s. pres. ind.* 1170.
- Boure, *s.* bower, 2190. A.S. *búr.*
- Boustous, 2175, Boustouse, 2425, 3679, Boystous, 3762, Bustous, 615, 775, 783, 1379, *adj.* rude, rough, harsh, violent.
- Bouxome, 2858, Bouxvme, 4147, *adj.* obedient.
- Bouxsomly, *adv.* obediently, 107.
- Bowes, *v. 3 s.* turns, 2251; *pl.* bowes, go, 69, 2310.
- Bowes, *s. pl.* shoulders, 188; boughs, 1711, 3247. A.S. *boh*, arm, back, shoulder, branch, bough. (*Bosworth.*)
- Bowndene, *p.p.* bound, 3316.
- Bowne, *v.* *See* Boune.
- Bownne, *adj.* ready, 1633, 2331.

- Box, *s.* stroke, blow, 1111.
- Boyes, *s. pl.* 2122, 2856, 3122.
- Boystous. *See* Boustous.
- Brace, *v.* fasten, fix, 1182; 3 *s.* bracez, puts on his arm, 914.
- Bracer, 4247, *s.* brassart, a defence for the arm; *pl.* brasers, 1859.
- Brade, *adj.* broad, 106, 914, 1094; *comp.* braddere, 55, 1699.
- Bragge, *v.* blow (in a trumpet); *pl. pres. ind.* braggene, 1484, braggēs, 4107; *pret.* braggede, 3657.
- Braggers, *s. pl.* boasters, brag-garts, 1348.
- Brand, 3946, Brande, 893, 914, Braumde, 2239, *s.* sword. A.S. *brand, brond, brand, torch, sword.*
- Brankkand, *i. p.* branking, *i. e.* bridling, checking, curbing, repressing, 1861. *See Brank and Branks in Jamieson.*
- Braste. *See* Briste.
- Brathely, *adv.* hastily, violently, fiercely, 1771, 3219.
- Braunchers, *s. pl.* young hawks, 190.
- Braundesche. *See* Brawdysche.
- Brawle, Brawlle, *v.* 2349, 2362; 3 *s.* brawles, 1349.
- Brawlynge, *s.* confusion, 2176.
- Brawnes, *s. pl.* branches, 3367.
- Brawdysche, *v.* brandish, 3359; 3 *s.* braundesche, 1056; *pret.* braundyschte, 782, brawdeste, 3657.
- Brawne, *s.* boar, 1095.
- Brayd, *v.* drive, thrust, dash, draw, 1172; 3 *s.* braydes, 2695, braydez, 2069, 2073, brayedez, 906; *p.p.* braydene, cast, 3945.
- Brayde, *s.* thrust, 3762.
- Brede, *s.* bread, 2715.
- Brede, *s.* roast meat, 79, 190, 1052; *pl.* bredez, 1049, bredis, 2715. A.S. *bréde.*
- Brede, *s.* breadth, 1224, 2011, 2273, 3656. A.S. *brédo.*
- Bredes, *v.* 3 *s.* breeds, 224.
- Bregaundez, *s. pl.* brigands, 2096. "These foot-soldiers were clothed in jackets, which were quilted, and had pieces of iron within, hence called brigandines. Such jackets were worn in the time of Elizabeth and James I. by the English archers." Meyrick, *Glossary of Military Terms*, under *Brigantii*.
- Breke, *v.* break, 4146; 3 *s.* brekes, 3124.
- Breklesse, *adj.* without breeches, naked, 1048.
- Breme, *adj.* fierce, 1380.
- Bremly, *adv.* fiercely, 4107.
- Brenē, 2253, 4212, Breny, 1482, *s.* cuirass; *pl.* brenyes, 3753, brenys, 1525, 1858, bryneys, 4119. *See Brini* in the Glossary to *Havelok*, ed. Skeat.
- Brenyede, 316, Brynyede, 3680, *adj.* armed with a cuirass.
- Breste, *s.* breast, 2253, front of an army, 1990; *pl.* brestez, 191.
- Brestys. *See* Briste.
- Brethe, *s.* wrath, anger, 107, 117, 2213.
- Brethly, *adv.* angrily, 3661.
- Brettened, Brettyne. *See* Brittene.
- Brigge, 3124, Brygge, 2470, *s.* bridge.
- Briste, *v.* burst, break, 214; 3 *s.* bristez, 805, brystez, 1135, 1482; *pl.* bristez, 1859, brestys, 3663; *pret.* braste, 2176, 2271; *pret. pl.* broustene, 2544; *p.p.* brustene, 2771, broustene, 3974; *weak pret.* brystedde, 1129.
- Brittene, 963, Brettyne, 3580, Bryttyne, 106, 1350, *v.* cut or dash in pieces, destroy completely; *pret.* brittened, 1487, brittenyde, 802, bryttenede, 2212; *p.p.* brittenede, 3520, brittenede, 1067, birtenede,

3972. A.S. *bryttian*, *brytnian*, to divide into fragments, distribute.
- Broche, *v.* pierce, stab, 1172; 3 *s.* broches, 2202, brochez, spurs, 918; *pl.* brochez, spur, 1449; *pret.* brochede, broached, tapped, 2714; *p.p.* brochede, spitted, 1050, 1067.
- Brochez, *s. pl.* spits, 1029.
- Brode, *adj.* broad, 116, 792, 1047. *See* Brade.
- Broght, 3358, Broghte, 802, *v. pret.* brought; *p.p.* broghte, 1013, 1017.
- Brokbrestede, *adj.* having a breast variegated, spotted or streaked with black and white, 1095. *See* *Brocked* in *Jamieson*. Compare "Brock-faced, a white longitudinal mark down the face like a badger." *Brockett*.
- Bronde, *s.* sword, 2566, 3631; *pl.* brondes, 2309. *See* Brand.
- Brotheliche, 3640, Brothely, 1408, 1449, 1753, 1862, 2095, Brothly, 3617, *adv.* hastily, violently, fiercely.
- Brothy, *adj.* (?) foamy, frothy, 1090.
- Browddene, 2807, 4119, Browdene, 1858, *adj.* woven. *See* *Brawd* in *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, ll. 177, 580. A.S. *brogden*, *breden*, *p.p.* of *bregdan*, to weave, braid, &c. The "brenyes" were probably made of small metal rings woven one into the other.
- Bruchez, *s. pl.* brooches, 3256.
- Bruschese, *v. pl.* brush, dash, 3680.
- Brustils, *s. pl.* bristles, 1095.
- Bryddes, *s. pl.* birds, 181.
- Brydille, 453, Brydylle, 2085, *s.* bridle.
- Brygge. *See* Brigge.
- Brymly, *adv.* fiercely, 117, 4214.
- Bryne, 106, Brynne, 564, *v.* burn; 3 *s.* brynnez, 1241; *pret.* brynte, 117; *p.p.* brynte, 3520.
- Bryneys. *See* Brene.
- Brynyede. *See* Brenyede.
- Brystedde, Brystez. *See* Briste.
- Bryttenede, Bryttyne. *See* Brittene.
- Burde. *See* Borde.
- Burgesse, 3082, *s.* burgess, citizen; *pl.* burgeys, 857.
- Burghe, *s.* city, 1968, 2424, 3083; *pl.* burghes, 1241. A.S. *burh*.
- Burliche, 2190, Burelyche, 304, Burlyche, 586, 730, 1002, 1111, 2010, *adj.* tall, stately, grand.
- Burliche, *adv.* grandly, 4199.
- Burneschte, 906, 1011, 2123, Burneste, 2272, 3846, Burnyscht, 1113, Burnyste, 177, 1859, *p.p.* burnished, polished.
- Bus, *impers. v.* behoves, 2576. Vs bus = we must.
- Buscayle, 895, Buskayle, 1634, *s.* bushes.
- Buschede. *See* Buske, *v.*
- Buschement, *s.* ambush, 3124. *See* Enbuschement.
- Buskayle. *See* Buscayle.
- Buske, *s.* bush, wood, 453, 918; *pl.* buskez, 1142.
- Buske, *v.* make ready, prepare, arrange, dispose, manage, hasten, proceed, go; 3 *s.* buskes, 1223, 2829, buskez, 2073; *pl.* buskes, 1754, buskez, 729, 1618; *pret.* buskede, 1633; *imp.* 2 *s.* buske, 1263; *imp.* 2 *pl.* buskes, 2855; *p.p.* buskede, arrayed, dressed, 2517, 3332, 4339, buschede, furnished, 567; buske vpe, raise, 3072.
- Bustous. *See* Boustous.
- Butelesse. *See* Botelesse.
- Byd, Bydde, Byde, *v.* ask, bid, 433, 1181, 2188, 4323; 3 *s.* byddez, 1776, byddis, 2361.

- Byddynge, *s.* bidding, command, 1030, 1931.
- Byde, *v.* remain, abide, tarry, 8, 936, 1968; 3 *s.* byddys, 4214; *pl.* byddes, 2808, byddez, 1030, await, wait for; *imp.* 2 *pl.* byddez, 629.
- Byerns, Byeryne. *See* Berne.
- Byggly, *adv.* bigly, strongly, 1376.
- Byhalue, *s.* behalf, 1674.
- Byhoues, 4135, Byhouys, 3579, Byhowys, 1715, *impers. v.* behoves.
- Byhyndene, *adv.* behind, 694.
- Bylefede, 1538, Byleuede, 2145, 2366, Byleuefede, 3678, Byleuyde, 1557, 1885, *p.p.* left.
- Bynne, *prep.* within, 804. A.S. *binnan*.
- Byrdez. *See* Birdes.
- Byrre, *s.* impetus, violence, 3661.
- Byswenkez, *v.* 3 *s.* toils, 1128. A.S. *beswincan*, to labour.
- Byttes, *v.* 3 *s.* bites, 791.
- Caas, 261, 1892, Caase, 3521, Case, 2719, Cas, 3564, *s.* hap, occurrence.
- Cabane, 757, Kabane, 3671, *s.* cabin; *pl.* cabanes, 733.
- Cabilles, *s. pl.* cables, 3671.
- Cachede, *p.p.* chased, 3513.
- Cachene, *v. pl.* catch, seize, take, 834; *pl.* catchez, 480; *pret.* caughte, 1105, kaghte, 2636, kaught, 3951, kaughte, 3378, kawghte, 3916; *p.p.* cawghte, 3514, kaughte, 2995.
- Caffe, *s.* chaff, refuse, 1064.
- Caire. *See* Cayre.
- Cantelle, *s.* corner, quarter, lump, piece, 4231. "*Chantel, Cantel, coin, quartier, morceau, chanteau.*" *Burguy*.
- Capitayne, 1864, Captayne, 2263, *s.* captain; *pl.* capytayne, 838.
- Captyfe, 1589, *s.* captive, prisoner; *pl.* captifis, 1580.
- Care, 859, Kare, 1838, *s.* sorrow.
- Carefulle, *adj.* unhappy, 957, sorrowful, 1777.
- Caremane, *s.* male, man, 957. A.S. *carlman*.
- Carffes, *s. pl.* cuts, 2713.
- Carle, *s.* fellow, 1063, 1107, 1165. A.S. *carl*.
- Carpe, 2750, Karpe, 1929, 2126, *v.* talk, speak; 3 *s.* carpys, 132; *pret.* carpede, 143, 220. "Carpyn', or talkyn'. *Fabulor, confabulor, garrulo.*" *Promptorium Parvulorum*.
- Carpynge, *s.* talk, 1672.
- Caryage, *s.* luggage, 2355.
- Caste, *v.* cast, consider, purpose; 2 *s.* castes, 261; 3 *s.* castes, 1998; castis, 1769; *pret.* kest, 3384, keste, 118, 280, 943; *imp.* 2 *s.* kaste 3406; *p.p.* castyne, 819, 3240.
- Castelles, *s. pl.* castles, 27, 849.
- Cawtelous, *adj.* full of artifices, artful, cunning, sly, 4185. Fr. *cauteleur*.
- Cayre, 877, Caire, 1192, Kaire, 641, 1319, Kayere, 627, Kayre, 6, 444, *v.* go; 3 *s.* cayres, 243; *pl.* cayers, 480. The original meaning was *turn*. A.S. *cýrran, cérran*, to turn.
- Certane, 3930, Certayne, 817, *adv.* certainly.
- Certe, 1162, 1342, Certys, *adv.* surely, certainly.
- Certyfye, *v.* tell, inform, 1555.
- Ceté, 601, 2012, Cetee, 440, 488, *s.* city; *pl.* cetees, 2609, cetese, 1337.
- Chaas, *s.* chace, 2269.
- Chalange, *v.* contest, dispute, 1322, challenge, 2524, 3397, claim, 3326. "*Chalonger, . . . demander, contester, provoquer, attaquer, défendre, refuser, prohiber, blâmer; de calumnia fausse accusation, chicane.*" *Burguy* under *Chalonge*.
- Champayne, *s.* champaign, level

- country, 1226, 1362; *pl.* champanyse, 1822.
- Changene, *v. inf.* change, 1405, chawnge, 2301; *pl.* changene, 2989, chaungene, 168; *pret.* chaungede, 3382, chawngyd, 2701, chawngide, 2964; *i. p.* chawngawnde, 2523, chawngyng, 3267.
- Chapes, *s. pl.* metal tips of sword-sheaths, 2522. "Chape of a schethe. *Spirula.*" *Prompt. Parv.* "The chape of a sword was a badge assumed by the De la Warr family, in memorial of the part taken by Sir Roger de la Warr, at Poitiers, 1356, in the capture of John, King of France, when he took possession of the royal sword." *Wayn Prompt. Parv.*
- Chapyde, *v. pret.* escaped, 4260.
- Charbokle, 3326, Chareboele, 2523, 3267, *s.* carbuncle.
- Chare, *s.* (?) 3603.
- Chare, *v.* (?) carry, 1886.
- Charge, *v.* load, burden, charge, molest, &c.; 3 *s.* chargges, 3538; *pret.* chargede, 1540, chargyde, 1406; *p. p.* chargede, 1549, charegyde, 1552, chargegid, 3136, chargegide, 3604, chargegide, 2731.
- Chargour, 1026, *s.* dish; *pl.* chargeours, 185.
- Charitee, *s.* charity, 1019, 1542.
- Charottez, *s. pl.* chariots, 1552.
- Charpe, *adj.* sharp, 3600.
- Charre, *s.* car, 3914.
- Charry, *adj.* (?) dear, cherished, 2964. *Fr.* *cher*, dear; *chéri*, cherished.
- Chasse, *s.* chace, 2368.
- Chasse, *v.* chase, 2237.
- Chastye, *v.* chastise, correct, 1019; *p. p.* chastyede, 690.
- Chasyng-spere, *s.* hunting-spear, 1823, 2955.
- Chauffede, *p. p.* heated, excited, 2236.
- Chaunce, *s.* chance, hap, 1749, fortune, 2999; chawnse, 2368; *pl.* chauncez, 531, 2956.
- Chauncelere, 169, 1551, Chaunchelere, 1541, *s.* chancellor.
- Chawffe, *v.* become heated, 2301.
- Chawmbyrs, *s. pl.* chambers, 3041.
- Chayere, *s.* chair, seat, 3266, 3329, 3347.
- Cheefe, *s.* chief (Her.), 2523.
- Cheefe, *adj.* chief, 1363, 1404.
- Cheekke. *See* Chekke.
- Cheese. *See* Chese.
- Chefede. *See* Cheue.
- Cheftans, 18, Cheftanes, 1872, Cheftaynes, 1323, 1406, *s. pl.* chieftains.
- Chekefulle, *adj.* chockfull, 3604.
- Chekke, 1539, 2956, Cheke, 3000. Chekke, 1986, *s.* check, repulse; but applied to the enemy, and therefore equivalent to *success*. In line 1986 it seems to mean the force which checks the enemy.
- Chekyne, *s.* chicken, 4181.
- Chekyrde, *p. p.* chequered, 3267.
- Chele, *s.* cold, 3391.
- Chere, *s.* face, countenance, 2069, 2964.
- Chese, 1619, Cheese, 682, *v.* choose; hence, choose a way, go towards; 3 *s.* cheses, 2954, chesez, 1225; *pl.* chesene, 1873; *p. p.* chosene, 2731.
- Cheualere, *s.* knight, 208, 1551; *pl.* cheualers, 2116.
- Cheualrous, 1362, 1540, Cheualrous, 1399, *adj.* chivalrous.
- Cheualrye, 18, 169, 1404, Cheualrye, 531, *s.* chivalry, knighthood, knights.
- Cheuede, 1117, 1841, Chefede, 869; *p. p.* fared, thriven, succeeded.
- Cheuede, *v. pret.* attained, 3329.
- Cheueride, *p. p.* shivered, 3391.

Chewyse, *v.* save, 1750. "*Chevir*, venir à bout de quelquechose, sortir d'une affaire, se tirer d'embarras . . . ." *Burgy*.

Cheyne, *s.* *pl.* chains, 2522.

Chiftayne, *s.* chieftain, 2732.

Childe, *s.* applied to a grown person, 2952, 4260; *pl.* childre, 1821, childre, 1025, childrene, 4078, childrenne, 3188, childyre, 845, 1051, childyrene, 3208.

Chillande, *i.* *p.* chilling, cold, 2965.

Chippe, *s.* ship, 3599; *pl.* chippes, 3546.

Chippe-burdez, *s.* *pl.* shipboards, 1699.

Chis, (?) 2217.

Cho, *pron.* she, 655, 659, 715, &c. *See* Scho.

Chokkefulle, *adj.* chockfull, 1552.

Chokkes, *v.* 3 *s.* (?) thrusts, 2955; *p.p.* chokkode, 3603.

Chullede, *p.p.* 1444. "Chulle. To bandy about." *Halliwell*.

Churles, *adj.* churlish, 4181.

Chymnés, 3041, Chympnés, 168, *s.* *pl.* brasiers, or other receptacles for fire, fireplaces.

Chyne, *s.* chine, backbone, 3390.

Cirquyttrie, 3399, Cyrqwitrye, 2616 (wrongly printed *Cyrus* witrye), *s.* pride, arrogance.

Cité, 1696, 1979, Citee, 60, *s.* city. *See* Ceté.

Clappyde, 956, Clappide, 1137, *v. pret.* smote together.

Clarioune, 3563, Claryoune, 2718, *s.* clarion, war-trumpet; *pl.* clarions, 1758.

Claspande, *i.* *p.* clasping, 4337.

Clasppis, *s.* *pl.* clasps, 909.

Clathe-sekkes, *s.* *pl.* cloth-sacks, 733.

Clauer, *s.* clover 3241.

Clauerande, *i.* *p.* clawing, 3324.

Clede, *v. pret.* clothed, 2713; *p.p.* cledde, 3334, clede, 3241, 3684, cleede, 217, clothed, clad.

Clefe, *v. pret.* clave, split, 2559.

Cleffe, *v.* cleave, stick, cling, 1312.

Clekes, 1865, Clekys, 1164, 2123, *v.* 3 *s.* clutches, seizures.

Clene, *adj.* clean, pure, 201, 217, bright, fair, good, 1197, 1603.

Clenkkede, *v. pret.* clanked, 2113.

Clenliche, Clenly, Clenlyche, *adv.* well, 216, 628, 654, 1586, entirely, quite, 581, 673, 850, 2125.

Clepid, *v. pret.* called, 3563. *A.S. clypian*.

Clere, *adj.* clear, bright, 819, 883, 909, illustrious, 1559, clear, free from obstacles, 1640.

Clereworte, *s.* 3241. Perhaps = *A.S. clæfer-wyrt*, small clover.

Clergialle, *adj.* skilful, 1758.

Clergyally, *adv.* cleverly, 200.

Clergye, *s.* learning, 809.

Clerkis, 3444, Clerkkes, 2391, *s.* *pl.* clerics, scholars.

Clewes, 1639, Clewez, 2019, Kleuys, 2396, Cloughes, 941, *s.* *pl.* cliffs.

Clewide, *v. pret.* cleaved, clung, 3268.

Close, *v.* enclose, 1165, 2003.

Close, *s.* prison, 1586, enclosed space, enclosure, 1639, 3240.

Closse, *adj.* secret, 1196.

Cloughes. *See* Clewes.

Clowez, *s.* *pl.* claws, 783.

Clyfe, 883, Clyffe, 2158, *s.* cliff; *pl.* cleyffez, 2019.

Clymbande, *i.* *p.* climbing, 3324, 3422.

Clynges, *v.* 3 *s.* presses, 1865.

Coblez, *s.* *pl.* cables, 742.

- Coferez, 733, Cofirs, 2283, Cofres, 4206, *s. pl.* coffers, chests.
- Cogge, *s. ship*, 476, 756, 3634; *pl. coggez*, 738. "Cairt on the colde ythes *cogges* & other." *The Destruction of Troy*, E. E. T. S., 1. 3242.
- Coldis, *v.* 2 *s.* makest cold, chill-est, 3518.
- Colurez, *s. pl.* colours, 819.
- Comandez, 2392, Comaundez, 1637, Commaundez, 71, *v.* 3 *s. pres. ind.* commands; *pret.* comande, 1218, comaunde, 2356, com-aundyd, 1602, commande, 156, 4148; *imp.* comaunde, 1585.
- Come, *v. inf.* 1584; 3 *s. pres. ind.* comes, 1818, commes, 799, comez, 841, commez, 1439; *pl. commez*, 1545; *pret.* come, 80, 176, 2119; *i. p.* commande, 3468; *p. p.* comene, 582, 865, commyne, 1419, comyne, 987.
- Come, *s.* coming, 1203, 1565, 1812.
- Comelyche, 1318, Comliche, 3335, Comly, 1203, 3259, Comlyche, 71, 1053, *adj.* comely.
- Comes, *impers. v.* becomes, befits, 1579.
- Comforth, 830, Comforthe, 944, 1839, Comfurthe, 696, *v.* comfort, strengthen; 3 *s.* comfourthes, 3131.
- Comforthe, *s.* comfort, 3960.
- Comlyli, 3047, Comlyly, 4108, *adv.* in a comely manner.
- Commande. *See* Come.
- Comone, *v.* converse, 1580.
- Comouns, 725, Comowns, 2353, *s. pl.* commons.
- Compas, *s.* outer part (of an enclosure), 3240, (of a wheel), 3268, 3325, compass, reach, 4222.
- Compaste, *p. p.* surrounded, 3633.
- Concelle, 259, &c. *See* Counsaile.
- Concelle, 243, 2395, Consayle, 1959, *s.* council.
- Condethe, 3148, 3483, Coundyte, 475, Cundit, 444, *s.* safe conduct.
- Condethes, *s. pl.* conduits, 201.
- Condycyone, *s.* condition, 1511.
- Confundez, *v.* 3 *s.* confounds, 1922; *p. p.* confundede, 1153.
- Connygez, *s. pl.* conies, rabbits, 197.
- Conquerid, 284, Conqueryd, 24, *v. pret.* won, gained; *p. p.* conqueryde, 402.
- Consayle. *See* Concelle.
- Constable, *s.* 1585, 1590.
- Contek, Conteke, *s.* strife, 2721, 3669, 4177.
- Contentance, Contenaunce, *s.* countenance, manner, behaviour, 123, 222, 542, 2120, 4033.
- Contré, 623, 676, Contree, 848, 1640, Countré, 223, 2304, Cowntre, 3542, *s.* country; *pl.* contres, 3425, contreez, 27.
- Conuaye, *v.* convey, 1589, 1604.
- Conynge, *adj.* cunning, skilful, 3202; *superl.* conyngeste, 809; konyngeste, 3177.
- Cope-borde, *s.* cupboard, 206.
- Copes, *s. pl.* 4334.
- Coppe, *s.* cup, 2750.
- Coppe-fulle, *s.* cupful, 3378.
- Corage, *s.* heart, 536, 1725, 1922.
- Corenalle. *See* Coronalle.
- Corkes, *s.* carcase, 1091.
- Corne, (?) 1786, 1837.
- Cornettes, *s. pl.* 1758, 4108.
- Cornuse, *s. pl.* horns, 1809. *Lat. cornu.*
- Coronalle, 908, 1108, 3633, Core-nalle, 3258, *s.*; a kind of ring or crown round a helmet; also, part of a lady's head-dress.
- Corone, 291, Coroune, 28, Corowne, 3543, Crowne, 3426, 4202, Crownne, 3352, *s.* crown; *pl.* corowns, 3269, crounes, 51.



- Coroune, 678, Crowne, 3185, *v.* crown; *p.p.* corounde, 142, coroune, 125, corownde, 1654, 2447, 3525, crowned, 3213, crownede, 3049, crownede, 3407.
- Corrouppede, *p.p.* corrupt, 3478.
- Cors, 1779, 2380, Corse, 1389, *s.* corpse, body.
- Corsaunt, *s.* holy body, body of a saint, 1164. See *Corsant* in *English Gilds*, p. 97, l. 3, and *Corseynt*, *English Gilds*, p. 188, l. 1.
- Corvene. See *Kerues*.
- Coseri, *s.* (?) 1582.
- Coste, *s.* coast, 834, 877, 1787.
- Cosyne, *s.* cousin, kinsman, 338, kinswoman, 864; *pl.* cosyns, 50, 101.
- Cote, 1690, 3334, Cotte, 1194, *s.* coat.
- Couaitte. See *Coueite*.
- Couatys, *s.* covetousness, 1580.
- Couaunde. Read *Conannde*, *adj.* cunning, skilful, 558.
- Couched, *p.p.* set, 909.
- Coueite, 1191, Couaitte, 51, Couette, 3325, *v.* covet; 2 *s. pres.* couettes, 1321; *p.p.* cowayte, 2397.
- Couenawnte, *s.* covenant, 3542.
- Couent, *s.* convent, 1220, 4021.
- Couer, Couere, *v.* recover, 859, 1246, win, 3425, 3434; 3 *s.* coueres, 3644, coueris, 941, reaches; coueris *vpe*, gets up, 4274; *pret.* couerde, won, 274, 280, reached, 858; couerd *vp*, got up, rose, 124, coueride, got up, 2195; *p.p.* couerede, won, 28, 3085.
- Couere, *v.* cover, 1886; 3 *s. pres.* couers, 1110; *pret.* couerde, 3378, 3995; *p.p.* couerde, 1770, 2115, couerede, 3047, 3098.
- Couerte, *adj.* sheltered, 1780, secret, 1196.
- Coundyte. See *Condethe*.
- Coungé, *s.* leave, 479. Fr. *cougé*.
- Counsaille, 291, Concelle, 144, 259, 1023, *s.* counsel, advice.
- Counsayles, *v.* 3 *s.* advises, 305.
- Countere, *v.* encounter, 1274; 3 *s.* cownterez, 1848; *p.p.* cownterede, 1893.
- Countré. See *Contré*.
- Coupable, *adj.* blameable, guilty, 1317.
- Coupes. See *Cowpe*.
- Coupylde, *v. pret.* coupled, fastened, 2336.
- Coursere, *s.* 1388, 2166.
- Courtays. See *Curtais*.
- Coutere, *s.* elbowpiece (in armour), 2567. *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, l. 583.
- Couthe, *v. pret.* knew, 21, Cowthe, couldst, 3340.
- Cowardys, *s.* cowardice, 1693, 4186.
- Cowayte. See *Coueite*.
- Cowhide, *v. pret.* lay down (as hounds); and hence, became meek and submissive, 122.
- Cowle, *s.* a large tub, 1051. "Cowle, vesselle. *Tina*, Cath." *Prompt. Parv.* In *English Gilds*, ed. Toulmin Smith, pp. 371, 382, *Cowle* is used for a tub, or some such vessel to measure ale with.
- Cowntas, *s.* countess, 3045; *pl.* cowntasses, 4337.
- Cowntere, *s.* accountant, 1672.
- Cownterez. See *Countere*.
- Cowpe, *s.* cup, 209; *pl.* cowpes, 210, 237; coupes, 3375.
- Cowpez, *v.* 3 *s.* smites, strikes, 799, 2059; *pl.* cowpene, 2543.
- Cowthe. See *Couthe*.
- Crachynge, *s.* crashing, 3669.
- Crafe, *v.* crave, 1681, 3522.
- Crafte, *s.* skill, art, 752, 3667; *pl.* craftez, 284, craftys, 24.

- Craftely, 3351, Craftyly, 196, *adv.* skilfully.
- Crafty, *adj.* skilfully made, 211.
- Crage, *s.* crag, 876.
- Cramede, *p.p.* crammed, 477, 1051.
- Crasseches, *v. pl. pres. ind.* crush, 3670; *pret.* craschede, 2114, crasschede, 1109.
- Craunaunde, *adj.* craven, 133.
- Crayers, 738, Krayers, 3666, *s. pl.* small vessels. "And, for the Revictallyng and Refresshyng of the said Shippes with Water and other Necessaries, the said Admirall shall, over and above the said Shippes, have Two *Crayers*, the one being of the Portage of Thre Score and fyfty [? fifteen] Tonnes, wherein shall be the Master Twelve Mariners and One Boye, and the other *Crayer* shall be of the Portage of fifty five Tonnes, wherein shall be the Maister with Ten Maryners and one Boye" . . . . . *Indentura inter Dominum Regem & Edwardum Howard Capitaneum Generalem Armatae super Mare* (A.D. 1512). Rymer, *Fœdera*, tom. xiii. p. 328, col. 2.
- Craysed, *p.p.* broken, 2150. Fr. *écrasé*.
- Creatoure, *s.* creature, 534, 859; *pl.* creatours, 4102.
- Credens, *s.* credentials, 88, 3522.
- Creest, Creeste, *s.* crest, 1108, 1133, 1185.
- Creette, *s.* a kind of wine, 200.
- Crepers, *s. pl.* grapnels, 3667. (*Halliwel.*)
- Cresmede. *See* Crysmede.
- Cretoyne, *s.* 197. "A sweet sauce." *Halliwel.* Compare "Cretons : Lard coupé menu qu'on fait frire dans la poêle." *Roquefort*.
- Crewelle, 132, 1909, Crouelle, 118, Crowelle, 2544, 3424, Cruelle, 43, 88, *adj.* cruel, fierce, angry, &c.
- Crispid, *p.p.* 1003.
- Cristene, Cristyne, *adj.* Christian, 3429; *sb.* 1187, 2786, 4112.
- Cristenly, *adv.* like a Christian, 1208.
- Cristyndome, *s.* Christendom, 2036.
- Cristynmesdaye, *s.* Christmas-day, 70.
- Cristynnese, 64, Cristynmesse, 839, Crystynmesse, 544, *s.* Christmas.
- Cronycle, *s.* chronicle, 3445; *pl.* cronycles, 3218.
- Crose, 3428, Crosse, 3335, *s.* cross; one crosse, across, 3667.
- Crosse-dayes, *s. pl.* 3212.
- Crosselettes, *s. pl.* 3336.
- Crouelle. *See* Crewelle.
- Crounes. *See* Corone.
- Crowelle. *See* Crewelle.
- Crownede. *See* Coroune, *v.*
- Cruelle. *See* Crewelle.
- Cruschene, *v. inf.* crush, 1134.
- Cryande, *i. p.* crying, 1137.
- Crysmede, 1051, Cresmede, 1065, Krysmede, 3185, *adj.* anointed with chrism.
- Crystenede, Crystnede, *p.p.* christened, 3337.
- Crysume, 142, Krysome, 2447, 3435, *s.* chrism.
- Cukewalde, *s.* cuckold, 1312.
- Cuñdit. *See* Condethe.
- Cunvayede, *v. pret.* convoyed, 482.
- Cure, *s.* care, 673.
- Curius, *adj.* curious, 61.
- Curlues, *s. pl.* curlews, 196.
- Curtails, 2394, Curtaise, 209, 417, Curtays, 125, 1318, Curtayes, 481, Courtays, 21, *adj.* courteous.
- Curtaisie, *s.* courtesy, 1274, 1681.
- Cury, *s.* cookery, 1063.

- Dagges, *v. pl.* pierce, 2102 ; *i. p.* daggaude, 3749.
- Dagswaynnes, *s. pl.* garments "of frize, or some material with long thrums like a carpet," 3609. See *Daggysweyne* and notes thereon in *Promptorium Parvulorum*.
- Dalte, Daltene. See Dele.
- Damesels, *s. pl.* young ladies, 3044.
- Dampnede, *p.p.* damned, condemned, 3277, 3299.
- Danke, Dannke, *adj.* dank, damp, 313, 3750.
- Dare, *v.* lie hid, lie still, 4007 ; 3 *s.* dares, 3225. "Daryn', or drowpyn', or prively to be hydde. *Latito, lateo*, Cath." *Promptorium Parvulorum*.
- Darielles, *s. pl.* a kind of dish, 199. See the recipe *For daries* in *Liber Cure Cocorum*, ed. Morris, p. 38.
- Dauncesyng, *s.* dancing, 2030.
- Daungere, Dawngere, *s.* power, 579, 3067, danger, 1935, 2935.
- Dawcyng, *s.* dawn, daybreak, 1601.
- Dawez, *s. pl.* days ; done of dawez, killed, 2056.
- Daynteez, *s. pl.* dainties, 199.
- Daynteuous, *adj.* dainty, 4196.
- Daynttehely, *adv.* daintily, 723.
- Debles, 2934.
- Dede, *s.* deed ; *pl.* dedes, 48, dedys, 13.
- Dede, *adj.* dead, 975, 1722.
- Dede, *s.* death, 1253, 1935.
- Dede-thrawe, *s.* death-pang, 1150.
- Deesse, *s.* dais, 218.
- Defadide, *p.p.* faded, 3304.
- Defawte, *s.* default, 2939.
- Defawtes, *v. pl.* are wanting, fail, 2928.
- Deffuse, *s.* prohibition, 256. Compare "Defaix, deffais, deffois, deffois : Lieux défendus, où il n'est pas permis de pêcher ni de chasser ; empêchement, défense." *Roquefort*. But it is more than probable that we ought to read "deff[e]use" = forbidding, prohibition.
- Degré, *s.* degree, 84.
- Dele, *v.* deal, 1278 ; *pret.* delte, 49, 3088 ; *pret. pl.* daltene, 2101, dalte, 3693, 3749 ; *p.p.* delte, 1216, 1277, 1564.
- Delygens, *s.* diligence, 1934.
- Delytte, *s.* delight, 1970.
- Delyuerede, *p.p.* set free, 1688, 2081.
- Demenys, *v.* 3 *s.* leads, 1988 ; *pl.* demenys, 4076. O. Fr. *demenier*.
- Demyd, Demyde, *p.p.* deemed, judged, 219, 1564, doomed, 4158.
- Depayntide, *p.p.* depicted, 3355.
- Depez, *s. pl.* deeps, 750.
- Depnesse, *s.* depth, 746.
- Dere, *v.* hurt, injure, 1783, 3248, 3611, 4200 ; 3 *s.* derys, 2099. A.S. *derian*.
- Dere, *adj.* dear, 974, 1216.
- Derefulle, *adj.* 4053. Qu. for *derffulle*, full of pain or care. Compare *derf*, hardship, affliction, pain, in *Stratmann*.
- Dereliche, 3379, Derely, 1277, *adv.* dearly.
- Dereworthily, *adv.* precious, 3251.
- Derfe, *adj.* hard, strong, severe, 312, 332, 811, 2052, 2102, 2652.
- Derflyche, *adv.* severely, 3277.
- Derke, *adj.* dark, 754.
- Derlynge, *s.* darling, 4196.
- Derygese, *s. pl.* dirges, 4017.
- Despyne, 183. See Porke despyne.

- Destanye, 3436, 3779, Desteny, 1563, *s.* destiny.
- Destaynede, *p.p.* destined, 664, 4090, 4153, 4157, 4306.
- Destruede, *p.p.* destroyed, 1181.
- Deuer, *s.* duty, 1940.
- Devisedede, *v. pret.* divided, 3527.
- Deuorande, *i. p.* devouring, 2054.
- Deuotly, 296, Devottly, 347, *adv.* devoutly.
- Devyse, *v.* divide, 2400; *pret.* deuysede, 3088.
- Dewly, *adv.* duly, 4006.
- Deworyde, *p.p.* devoured, 851.
- Deynttely, *adv.* daintily, 2643.
- Diamawndis, *s. pl.* diamonds, 3297.
- Dictour, *s.* spokesman, 712.
- Dighte. *See* Dyghte.
- Dischayte, *s.* deceit, 3789.
- Discouerours, *s. pl.* scouts, spies, 3117.
- Diskoueres, *v. ind. pres. pl.* search, 3119; *imp. pl. 2.* discoueres, 1641.
- Disseuere, *v.* separate, 1575; 3 *s.* disseueriez, 1978; *pret.* disseueride, 3529.
- Disspite, *s.* spite, 3163.
- Disspysede, *p.p.* despised, 269.
- Dogge-sone, *s.* dog-son, 1072, 1723.
- Dole, 3067, 3299, 3885, Dule, 256, 704, 2777, *s.* sorrow.
- Dolefulle, *adj.* sorrowful, 2054.
- Dolphyne, *s.* 2054.
- Doluene, *p.p.* buried, 975.
- Domesdaye, *s.* day of judgment, 1278, 3442.
- Doo, *v.* do, 1934, 2322; 2 *s. pres. ind.* dosse, 1954; *pl. pres. ind.* dosse, 4333; *p.p.* donne, 1940.
- Doubbyd, 48, Doubbyde, 3613, *v. pret.* dubbed.
- Douce, *adj.* sweet, pleasant, 1251.
- Doughttily, *adv.* valiantly, 1939.
- Doughty, 20, Doughtty, 1738, 2777, Dowghtty, 3798, *adj.* valiant; *superl.* doughtyeste, 219.
- Doughtynes, 1563, Doughtynesse, 3884, *s.* valour.
- Dout, *v.* doubt, 3061.
- Dowbille, *adj.* double, 2834.
- Dowblede, *p.p.* doubled, 3609.
- Dowblettez, *s. pl.* doublets, 2625.
- Dowcherys. *See* Ducherye.
- Dowere, *s.* dowry, 3089.
- Downkyng, *s.* moisture, 3248.
- Dowte, Dowtte, *s.* doubt, 2043, fear, 3225.
- Dowtte, *v.* fear, 312.
- Dowttouse, *adj.* dreadful, terrible, 3967.
- Drafe. *See* Dryffes.
- Dragges, *s. pl.* drags, 3615.
- Dragouns, *s. pl.* dragons, 1252.
- Drawe-brigge, *s.* drawbridge, 2474.
- Drawes, *v.* 3 *s.* draws, proceeds, 1251; *pl.* drawene, 3615; *p.p.* drawene, 3924.
- Dreche, *v.* tarry, delay, abide, 1504; 3 *s.* dreches, 2940, 4052; *pl.* dreches, 1254, 2154; *pret.* drecchede, 754.
- Drechede, *p.p.* troubled, harassed, 811.  
 "Ac sathanas þe frecche  
 þe saule wule drecche,  
 Hwan he agult habbeþ."  
*Jesus Coll. MS. 29, leaf 249.*
- Drede, *v.* dread, fear, 829, 2235; *pret.* dredde, 20; *p.p.* dredde, 3298.
- Drede, *s.* dread, fear, 46, 754.
- Dredlesse, Dredlez, *adv.* without doubt, certainly, 1504, 2043, 4053.
- Drefene. *See* Dryffes.
- Dreghe, *s.* duration, continuance, 2915.

- Dreghe, one, *adv.* aside, back, 786, 787, 3968, 4219.
- Dreghe, *v.* suffer, endure, 3276, 3437.
- Dreghely, *adv.* enduringly, continually, 2028.
- Dremyd, *impers. v. pret.* 760.  
Hym dremyd = he dreamed.
- Drenschene, *v. inf.* drown, 761.
- Drerely, Drerily, *adv.* drearily, 2154, 2969.
- Dresce, 550, Dresse, 1072, 2042, 2401, *v.* direct, arrange, adjust, dispose, prepare, array; 3 *s.* dresses, 2026, dresesse, 2833; *pl.* drisses, 2473; *pret.* dressede, 786, 1055, dresside, 579, drissede, 2052, dryssede, 46; *p.p.* dresside, 1252, drissid, 218; dresses vp = rears.
- Dreuene, Drife. *See* Dryffes.
- Drightene, 4008, Dryghttene, 1278, Dryghttyne, 3799, *s.* the Lord; *gen.* Dryghtyns, 664, Dryghtynez, 1564. *A.S. Drihten.*
- Drissede. *See* Dresce.
- Dromondaries, *s. pl.* dromedaries, 2286.
- Dromowndes, *s. pl.* swift ships, 3615. "Dromon, dromont: Gondole, vaisseau de guerre." *Roquefort*. "Dromones, Naves cursoriæ, expediti cursus navigia." *Ducange*.
- Droupe, *v.* lie hid, lie still, 4007. *See* Dare.
- Drowghte, *s.* dryness, 3249.
- Drowppande, *i. p.* falling, 4053.
- Drye, *v.* suffer, 704, 1546, 1632.
- Dryffes, *v. pl.* drive, rush, 2757; *pret.* drafe, 787, drife, 3276; *pret. pl.* dreuene, 2914; *i. p.* dryfande, 761, 816; *p.p.* drefene, 3224.
- Dryghttene. *See* Drightene.
- Drynchene, *v. inf.* to drown, 816.
- Drynkles, *adj.* drinkless, 4172.
- Drynkyne, *v. pl.* drink, 2028.
- Dryssede. *See* Dresce.
- Dubbye, *p.p.* adcrned, 3609.
- Ducherye, *s.* duchy, 2400, 2937; *pl.* ducherés, 1728, ducheryes, 3614, dowcherys, 49.
- Duchez, *s.* duchess, 852, 974, 3044.
- Duelle, *v.* dwell, tarry, abide, 3067; *pret.* duelledede, 3321, duellyde, 219; *i. p.* duelland, 3443; *p.p.* duellyde, 1200.
- Dukkes, Dukkez, *s. pl.* dukes, 723, 2029.
- Dule. *See* Dole.
- Dule-cotes, *s. pl.* mourning garments, 4336.
- Dusperes, 66, 1254, Duspers, 145, Dusseperez, 2029, Duzseperez, 723, Duszperis, 3751, Dusszeperis, 4336, *s. pl.* peers; lit. twelve peers (Fr. douze pairs). Dussepere, *sg.* one of such peers, 2329, 2642.
- Duttez. *Read* Dinttez, *s. pl.* strokes, 787.
- Dyaperde, *adj.* 3251.
- Dyghte, *v.* order, arrange, dispose, 1253; 1 *s.* dyghttes, 2625; *pret.* dyghte, 2970; *p.p.* dyghte, sent, 3066, dressed, 3251, dighte, adorned, 3353.
- Dyked, *p.p.* buried, 975.
- Dyme, *adj.* dim, 1723.
- Dyne, *s.* din, noise, 2031.
- Dynned, *v. pret.* sounded, resounded, 2031.
- Dynnynge, *s.* noise, 2030.
- Dynt, 1073, Dynte, 312, 1118, *s.* stroke, blow; *pl.* dynttez, 1127, dynttys, 332.
- Dysfegoures, *v.* 3 *s.* disfigures, 2769.
- Dyspens, *s.* spending, 538.
- Dyssauyde, *p.p.* deceived, 683.
- Dyuerse, *adj.* divers, various, 49, 1935.

- Dyuysyde, *v. pret.* divided, distributed, 49, 1389.
- Efte, *adv.* again, 470, 529, 2349. A.S. *eft*.
- Egerly, 1125, 1148, 1411, 1591, Egerly, 1499, *adv.* sharply, fiercely.
- Egge, 2567, 2958, Eghge, 4194, *s. edge.* A.S. *ecg*.
- Eghelynge, *adv.* edgewise, 3675.
- Eghene, 3790, Eghne, 116, 358, Eughne, 1920, Eyghene, 3985, Eyghne, 1083, 4044, Eyne, 3282, *s. pl. eyes.* A.S. *edge, pl. eágan*.
- Eghge. *See* Egge.
- Egle, *s.* eagle, 2067, 2245.
- Egree, *adj.* sharp, eager, 507.
- Eke, *conj.* also, 44, 572.
- Ekkene, *v. inf.* increase, 2009; 3 *s. pres. ind.* ekys, 3965.
- Elagere, 2977, is certainly miswritten. The alliteration requires *sl . . .*; perhaps we ought to read *sleyghte*, skill, dexterity.
- Eldare, *adj. comp.* older, 4151.
- Elde, *s.* age, 301, old age, 4220. A.S. *ylde*.
- Elders, Eldyrs, *s. pl.* ancients, 13, ancestors, 99, 272, 293.
- Elfaydes, *s. pl.* animals of some kind, 2288.
- Elles, *adv.* else, 1191, 1209, 2020.
- Emange, *prep.* among, 375. 1917, 2060. *See* Amange.
- Eme, *s.* uncle, 1347. A.S. *éam*.
- Enamelde, 2565, 3355, Enamelde, 2027, *p.p.* enamelled.
- Enangylles, *v.* 3 *s.* en-angles, i. e. surrounds by troops formed in an angular figure (?), 3781. *Comp.* en-circles.
- Enarmede, *p.p.* 910.
- Enbraces, *v. pl.* put on the arm, 4111; *enbrassez*, 1753; *p.p.* en-brassede, 2459, 2518.
- Enbuschement, *s.* ambush, 1407, 3115.
- Enbusches, *v.* 3 *s. pres. ind.* sets in ambush, 1981; *p.p.* enbuschede, 1712, enbuschide, 1403, ambushed.
- Enclesside. *Read* Enclossede, enclosed, 2396.
- Enclined, 479, Enclinede, 1706, *v. pret.* bowed.
- Enclines, *s. pl.* bows, 83.
- Enclosez, *v.* 3 *s.* 1134; *p.p.* enclosede, 4206, enclosyde, 3238.
- Encontre, 1320, 1787, Encountire, 3491, Encowntere, 4180, *v.* encounter; *pl.* encounters, 2158; *pret.* encontrede, 1185.
- Encorownmentes, *s. pl.* coronations, 4197.
- Encroche, *v.* seize, obtain, 3426; 3 *s.* encrochez, 1243; *pret.* encrochede, 2036; *p.p.* encrochede, 3525.
- Encroyssede, *v. pret.* crossed, 4112.
- Endente, 3297, Endenttyd, 2052, *p.p.* endedent (Her.).
- Endittede, *v. pret.* indited, composed, 3420.
- Endordide, *p.p.* guilt, 199.
- Enewe, 2657, Enowe, 504, *adv.* enough.
- Enfeblesches, *v. pl. pres.* become weak, 2484.
- Enflureschit, *p.p.* flowered, 198.
- Enforce, *v.* exert; enforce 30w, endeavour, 225; enforssede, strengthen, reinforce, 364.
- Engenderde, *p.p.* begotten, 843.
- Engendure, *s.* begetting, 3743.
- Engeynes. *See* Engynes.
- Englaymez, 1131, Englaymous, 3684, *v. pl.* render slimy. "Gley-myn', or yngleymyn'. *Visco, invisco.*" *Promptorium Parvulorum*.
- Engowschede, *p.p.* swollen, in-

- flated, 2053. "Engousser : Enfler, grossir." *Roquefort*.
- Engrelede, *p.p.* engrailed (Her.), 4182.
- Engynes, 2481, 3036, Engeynes, 2423, *s. pl.* engines.
- Engyste, *v.* assign lodgings, 445. "Gister, giter : Assigner un gîte." *Roquefort*.
- Enhorilde, *p.p.* surrounded, 3244. See *Enourled* in Alliterative Poems (Reprint), B. 19 and Glossary.
- Enis. See *Eynes*.
- Enjoynes, 2897, Enjoynys, 4109, *v. pl.* join in battle; *pret.* enjoynede, 2087.
- Enkerly, *adv.* ardently, eagerly, 507, 2066, 2222, 2839.
- Enmy, Enmye, *s.* enemy, foe, 519, 642, 1952; *pl.* enmyse, 1205, 1240.
- Ennelled, *p.p.* enameled, 1294.
- Ennoyntede, 50, Ennoynttyde, 101, Enoyntede, 142, Enoynttede, 544, 2447, *p.p.* anointed.
- Enowe, *adv.* enough, 504.
- Enpeyrede, *p.p.* impaired, damaged, 474.
- Enpoysons, *s.* poison, 213.
- Ensege, 441, Ensegge, 1337, *v.* besiege; 3 *s.* enseggez, 623; *p.p.* ensegede, 1696.
- Enserchede, 3942. Read *Enserclede*, encircled.
- Enserches, *v.* 3 *s.* searches, examines, 4311; *pl.* enserches, 2466.
- Ensure, *v.* assure, 1689, 2324, 3734.
- Entamade, *v. pret.* cut, wounded, 2203; *p.p.* 1160, 2708. "Entamer, entamer, tranchier, blesser, léser, enlever l'intégrité." *Burguy*.
- Entayllide, *p.p.* entailed, 3542.
- Entire, *v.* enter, 1967; *ind. pres.* 3 *s.* enteres, 2007, 2387; *pl.* entres, 4309; *pret.* enteride, 2805; *p.p.* entirde, 3448, entrede, 4069, entyrde, 1691.
- Enverounes, *v. pl.* environ, surround, 4124; *pret.* enuerronde, went round or about, 2051, 2094; *p.p.* enuerrownde, surrounded, 3242.
- Enueryde, *p.p.* (?) 1694.
- Enuyous, *adj.* 2047.
- Enys. See *Eynes*.
- Er, *v. pl.* are, 166.
- Erberis, *s. pl.* gardens, 3245.
- Ercheuesqes, *s. pl.* archbishops, 67.
- Ere, *v. pl.* are, 1538, 1582, 2547.
- Ere, *adv.* before, 1840.
- Erle, *s.* earl, 1659; *pl.* erlez, 1904, erlles, 3528, 3933.
- Erledoms, *s. pl.* earldoms, 42.
- Erles, *s. pl.* earnest, deposit, 2687.
- Erne, *s. pl.* ears, 1086.
- Ernestly, *adv.* 2838, 2903.
- Errawnte, *adj.* arrant, 2895.
- Erthe, *s.* earth, 109, 161.
- Erthely, *adj.* earthly, 1664, 4169.
- Es, *v.* 3 *s.* is, 16, 88, 89; *pl.* es (= are), 1666, 3448.
- Eschape, *v.* escape, 1020, 2957; *pret.* eschappede, 1881, eschappide, 2367; *p.p.* eschapede, 1117, 3576.
- Escheffe, *v.* 2301.
- Escheue, *v.* attain, 3347; *pret.* escheuede, 3000, eschewede, fell out well, 2956, eschewede, met with good fortune, 1620; *p.p.* escheuyde, 3021, eschewede, 1539, 3027.
- Eschewes, *v.* 3 *s.* draws back, retreats, 1116; *pret.* eschewede, 1881; *imp.* 2 *pl.* eschewes, 1750. "Eschiver, eskiver, escheveir, éviter, fuir, esquiver." *Burguy*.
- Ese, *s.* ease, 3208.
- Este, *adj.* east, 1740, 3210.
- Esterne, 1006, Estyre, 554, *s.* Easter.

- Etene, *p.p.* eaten, 2716.  
 Ethenys, 4163, Ethyns, 4122, *s. pl.* giants. See *Etayn* in *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, ll. 140, 723. A.S. *cóten*.  
 Ettylle, *v.* purpose, 554; 3 *s. ettelles*, 520, etles, 3077.  
 Euene, 2073, Euenne, 4055, Euyne, 78, Evyne, 3596, Evynne, 3597, Ewene, 762, Ewyne, 618, 1122, Ewynne, 2961, *adv.* even, straight, right, just.  
 Euensange, 894, Euesange, 900, *s. evensong*, vespers.  
 Eueriche a, 2037, Euer-ilk a, 212, *adj.* every.  
 Euylle, *adv.* ill, 1117.  
 Ewene. See Euene.  
 Ewyne, *s.* evening, eve, 1006, 1788.  
 Ewyne, Ewynne. See Euene.  
 Ewyre, *adv.* ever, 8.  
 Eye-liddis, *s. pl.* eyelids, 3952.  
 Eyghene, Eyghne, Eyne. See Eghene.  
 Eynes, 1283, 2308, Fynez, 1760, Eynis, 2516, Eynys, 1879, Eynyes, 2275, Enis, 2886, 3376, Enys, 3466, *s. pl.* narrow passages, passes. A.S. *enge*, narrow, Germ. *enge*, a narrow passage.  
 Faa-mene, *s. pl.* foemen, 303.  
 Fadire, 3432, Fadyr, 112, Fadyre, 1169, *s.* father.  
 Fadome, *s.* fathom, 1103.  
 Faees, *s. pl.* foes, 403.  
 Faghte. See Feghte.  
 Faire, *adv.* well, 1110, 3247.  
 Fairely, *adv.* nicely, 954.  
 Faith, *s.* 1155.  
 Faithely, Faythely, *adv.* assuredly, 3864, 4031.  
 Fakene, *v. pl.* coil, 742. "Fake, one of the circles, or windings, of a cable, or hawser, as it lies disposed in the coil. . . . The fakes are greater or smaller in proportion to the extent of space which a cable is allowed to occupy where it lies." Falconer's *Marine Dictionary*, ed. Burney. Sc. *faik*, a fold (*Jamieson*).  
 Falle, *v.* betide, 1006; 3 *s. falles*, belongs, 2480.  
 Falow, *adj.* pale, 1402.  
 Falowede, *p.p.* turned pale, 3954.  
 Fals, *adj.* false, 1307.  
 Falsede, 3918, Falssede, 2860, *s.* falsehood, error.  
 Falterede, *v. pret.* quivered, 1092.  
 Fande. See Fynde.  
 Fande, 557, 867, 984, Fannde, 656, *v.* endeavour. See Fonde.  
 Fannge, *v.* seize, take, receive, 425; *ind. pres.* 3 *s.* fangez, 1005, 1249. See Fongene.  
 Fare, *v.* go, 3581; *ind. pres.* 3 *s.* fares, proceeds, behaves, 788.  
 Fare, *s.* journey, course, 393.  
 Fare-waye, *s.* course, 1357.  
 Farlande, *s.* foreland, 880, 984, 1188.  
 Farly. See Ferly.  
 Faucetez, *s. pl.* taps, 205.  
 Faughte, Faughtte, Fawghte. See Feghte.  
 Fawcone, 788, Fawkone, 4003, *s.* falcon; *pl.* fawcouns, 925.  
 Fawe, *adj.* variegated, particoloured, 747. A.S. *fuh*.  
 Fawnelle, 2765. Read Fawuelle, *s.* a horse of a yellowish chesnut colour. "Fauvel, fauvau, fauvelle: De couleur rousse, fauve, tirant sur le jaune, *flavus, fulvus*." *Roquefort*.  
 Fawntkyne, 2440, 2736, *s.* little child, baby; *pl.* fawntekyns, 845.  
 Fawte, *s.* lack, 160, fault, 2737.  
 Fax, *s.* hair, 1078. A.S. *feax*.



- Fay, *adj.* fated to die, dead, 394, 438, 971, 3828; fey, 121, 517, feye, 2847.
- Fay, Faye, *s.* faith, 2842, 2860, 3073.
- Fayfully, *adv.* faithfully, 1715.
- Fayled, 3308, looks like a mistake through confounding this line with the next; qu. faldede, folded.
- Fayne, *adj.* glad, 1160.
- Faythefully, *adv.* 1345, 1735, 1913.
- Faythely. *See* Faithely.
- Feble, *adj.* weak, bad, 226, 2929.
- Fecchede, *v. pret.* fetched, 169; *p.p.* fechede, 111, fechyde, 437.
- Feedde, *p.p.* fed, 2492.
- Feelde. *See* Felde.
- Feemene, *s. pl.* herdmen, keepers of cattle, 2488. A.S. *feoh*, cattle.
- Feghte, 367, 1715, Fyghte, 1345, 1735, *v.* fight; 3 *s.* feghttys, 789, fyghttez, 2091; *pl.* feghttes, 1495, feghttez, 2163, feghttene, 2555; *pret.* faghte, 1174, faughte, 2164, faughtte, 1898, fawghte, 2799; *i. p.* feghtande, 4257, fyghtande, 4066, 4121; *p.p.* foghtene, 3019, foughtene, 1535, foughttene, 2365.
- Feghte, *s.* fight, 4254.
- Fegure, *s.* figure, shape, 781, 3301.
- Fekille, *adj.* false, 2860.
- Felde, 972, 985, Feelde, 1432, *s.* field.
- Fele, *adj.* many, 845, 1247, 1496.
- Fele, *v.* hide, conceal, 3237. *See* *felen* in *Stratmann*. O.N. *fela*, M. Goth. *filhan*.
- Fele, *v.* feel; *pret.* feledde, 1874.
- Feletez, 1158, Felettes, 2174, 4237, *s. pl.* filets.
- Felewes, *v. pl.* follow, 2758.
- Feleyghes, *s. pl.* felly, circumference of a wheel, 3308. A.S. *felge*.
- Felle, *s.* skin, 1081. A.S. *fell*.
- Felle, *s.* mountain, 2489, 2509.
- Felle, *v.* fell, 1139; 3 *s.* fellez, 1247; *p.p.* fellide, 1851, felde, 2376.
- Felle, *adj.* fierce, cruel, severe, 1401, 2769.
- Felly, *adv.* fiercely, 2141.
- Feloweze, *s. pl.* fellows, companions, 1381.
- Felschene, *v. inf.* (?) renovate, 1975. Halliwell has "*Felsh*. To renovate a hat."
- Fende, *s.* fiend, devil, 871, 954; *pl.* fendez, 843.
- Fente, *s.* (?) 4249.
- Fenyste, *p.p.* finished, 4254.
- Ferant, 2259, Feraunte, 1811, 2140, Ferawnt, 2451, *adj.* seemly.
- Fercostez, *s. pl.* ships of some kind, 743. "Farkost, *Navis*." *Vereelius*, under the word *Kost*. *See* *Farcost* and *Fercost* in *Jamieson*.
- Ferde, *p.p.* afraid, 403, 526, 3227; *s.* fear, 1875, 3069.
- Ferdnesse, *s.* fear, 121, 2258.
- Fere, *s.* fear, 3918.
- Fere, *s.* companion; *pl.* feres, 1608, ferez, 1789, feris, 1578, ferys, 2126. A.S. *gefera*.
- Fere, 1232. *See* Ferre.
- Fere, *adj.* sound, unhurt, 2796, 3017.
- Ferke, *v.* move, go, 984, 1037; ferkke, 4152; 3 *s.* ferkez, 933, 949; *inf.* ferkene, 3907; *i. p.* ferkand, 1452, ferkande, 2452.
- Ferly, 2842, Ferlyche, 925, *adj.* strange.
- Ferly, 2440, 2947, Farly, 2485, *s.* strange thing, wonder.
- Fermes, 425, Fermez, 1005, *s. pl.* rents, tribute.
- Fermysone, *s.* (?) some kind of sauce, 180.
- Ferre, *adj.* far, distant, 3547; fere,

- 1232; be ferre = by far, §1176; *comp.* ferrere, further, 1496, 3068, 4237; *superl.* ferreste, furthest, 2741.
- Ferrers, *s.* a kind of wine, 2714.
- Ferriours, 2752. *Read* Forriours, foragers.
- Ferrome, *adj.* far, foreign, 3578; o ferrome = afar, 856, 934, 2100.
- Fers, 2161, Ferse, 1451, 1537, *adj.* fierce.
- Fersely, 1115, 3402, Fersly, 1118, *adv.* fiercely.
- Fersenesse, *s.* fierceness, 3826.
- Ferthe, *adj.* fourth, 3412.
- Ferthynges, *s. pl.* round spots, 3472.
- Feryne, *adj.* far, foreign, 3711.
- Ferynne, *s.* fern, 1875.
- Ferys. *See* Fere.
- Fesantez, 925, Fesauntez, 198, *s. pl.* pheasants.
- Fesede, *p.p.* worried, 2842.
- Feste, *adj.* fast, 2142.
- Festenesse, *v.* 3 *s.* fastens, 1118; *pl.* festenez, 934.
- Fetch, *v.* 1188.
- Feteled, *p.p.* fettled, set in order, 2149.
- Fetheris, *s. pl.* feathers, 2098.
- Fette, *v.* fetch, 557.
- Fettede, *p.p.* fitted, ordered, arrayed, 4067. *See* Fitt.
- Feuerzere, *s.* February, 436.
- Fewle, *s.* fowl, bird, 2071; *pl.* feulez, 926.
- Fewtee, *s.* fealty, 112.
- Fewtere, 1791, Fewtire, 1769, Fewtyre, 1366, *s.* rest for a lance.
- Fewters, *v.* 3 *s.* lays in rest, 3775; *p.p.* fewteride, 1711, fewtrede, 1756, with spears in rest.
- Fey. *See* Fay.
- Feyede, *v. pret.* cleansed, wiped, 1114.
- Feyne, (?) foin, 1734.
- Feyne = fine, *v.* cease, 1147.
- Feyne, *v.* feign, 1913.
- Feynte, *adj.* faint, 1874.
- Feyntly, *adv.* faintly, 1734.
- ff. Words beginning with *ff* are entered under single *F*.
- Fichene, *v. pl.* fix, pierce, 2098; *pret.* fichede, 4239.
- Fif, *adj.* five, 1756.
- Fifte, *adj.* fifth, 3306.
- Fillez, 1402, Fillis, 1038, *v.* 3 *s.* fills; *p.p.* filled, satisfied, 1032.
- Filsnez, *v.* 3 *s.* lurks, 881. Compare "Fylskni, *Latibulum*." *Verelius*.
- Filterede, 1078, 2149, Filtyrde, 780, *p.p.* matted, mixed.
- Firthe, *s.* wood, 1708, 2144.
- Fische-halle, *adj.* sound as a fish, 2709.
- Fitt, *v.* fit, set in order, array, 2139; 3 *s.* fittes, 1989, fittez, 1755, 2072; *p.p.* fittyde, 2455.
- Flammande, *i. p.* flaming, resplendent, 198.
- Flappes, *v.* strikes, 2781.
- Flawez, 773, Flawes, 2556, *s. pl.* blasts, gusts.
- Flawmande, *i. p.* flaming, 945, 1975, flashing, 1365, 1494.
- Flawmez, *v.* 3 *s.* flames, 1037; *pl.* flawmes, 2556.
- Flawnke, *s.* flank, 1158, 2174; *pl.* flawnkkes, 2100.
- Flay, *v.* frighten, terrify, 2779; *p.p.* flayed, 2441.
- Flayre, *s.* flame, 772.
- Flede. *See* Flee.
- Flee, *v.* 2021; *pret.* fleede, 494, 1432, 2729, flede, 3236; *p.p.* flede, 2488.

- Fleete, *v.* float, 803 ; *pret.* fletyde, 3602.  
 Flernede, 2738, Flernyde, 1155, *p.p.* banished.  
 Flernesche, *adj.* Flemish, 743.  
 Flenges, *v.* 3 *s.* flings, 2762.  
 Fleryande, *i. p.* gibing, scoffing, 1088, 2778. *Sc. fleer.*  
 Flesche, *s.* 1160, 2099.  
 Fleschez, *v. pl.* flit about, 926.  
 Flete, *s.* fleet, 1189.  
 Fleterede, *p.p.* (?) fitted for flight, 2097.  
 Flethe, *s.* (?) 2482.  
 Flieghes, *v.* 3 *s.* flies, 4002.  
 Flitt, *v.* shoot (with arrows), 2097.  
 Flode, *s.* flood, 773, 803, 1189.  
 Floke, *s.* flock, company, 2849.  
 Floke-mowthede, *adj.* fluke-mouthed, having a mouth like a flat fish, 2779.  
 Flones, 3619, Flonez, 2097, *s. pl.* arrows. A.S. *flá, flán.*  
 Florenez, *s. pl.* florins, 885.  
 Flores, *s. pl.* fields, plains, 2694, 3249.  
 Floresche, *v.* flower, flourish, 2555 ; *pret.* floreschede, 3246 ; *p.p.* floreschede, 771, 1708, 3472, floreschte, 924, 1366.  
 Flour, *s.* flower, 1709, 1990 ; *pl.* flourez, 970.  
 Flourdelice, *s.* lily-flower, 3333.  
 Flowe, *v. pret.* flew, 772, 2100.  
 Floynes, *s. pl.* a kind of small ships, 743. A. Jal in his *Glossaire Nautique* gives "*Flouin*. Nom d'un petit navire ponté qui pouvait naviguer à la voile et à l'aviron."  
 Flude, *s.* flood, 494.  
 Fluke, *s.* flounder, or other flat fish, 1088.  
 Fluriste, *p.p.* flowered, 180.  
 Flyeande, *i. p.* flying, 2451.
- Flyngande, *i. p.* flinging, dashing along, 2757.  
 Flyschande, *i. p.* slashing, 2141.  
 Flysches, *v.* slashes, cuts, 2768.  
 Flyttinge, *s.* shooting (with arrows), 2099.  
 Foddenid, *p.p.* produced, 3246.  
 Foghtene. *See* Feghte.  
 Folde, 315, 2151, Foulde, 1071, Fowide, 3302, *s.* earth.  
 Fole, *s.* foal, 449, 2783.  
 Folily, *adv.* foolishly, 2841.  
 Folowes, *v.* 3 *s.* follows, 1118 ; *pl.* folous, 1360.  
 Fomand, 3307, Fomande, 2233, Fomannde, 780, *i. p.* foaming.  
 Fome, *s.* foam, 1079.  
 Fonde. *See* Fynde.  
 Fonde, 3370, (miswritten) Fonode, 205, *v.* try.  
 Fondene. *See* Fynde.  
 Fongene, *v. pres. pl.* take, 2799 ; fonngez, 2753 ; *pret.* fongede, seized, 3308.  
 Fonode. *See* Fonde.  
 Foo, *s.* foe, 1536, 3395.  
 Foode, *s.* offspring, child, person, 3776.  
 Foomene, *s. pl.* foemen, 3020.  
 Foonde, *v.* go, 366, 2489.  
 Forbere, *v.* forbear, 1913.  
 Forbrittenede, *p.p.* cut up, slaughtered, 2273.  
 Forchipe, *s.* foreship, 3678.  
 Forcyere, *adj. comp.* stronger, 1176.  
 Fordremyde, *p.p.* wearied by dreaming, 3392.  
 Fore, *prep.* for, 256 ; *conj.* for, 1179.  
 Fore-breste, *s.* front, 1494, 1990.  
 Fore-brustene, *p.p.* burst, 2272.

- Foregyffe. *See* Forgyffe.  
 Forejustyde. *See* Forjuste.  
 Forelytenede, *p.p.* lessened, 254.  
 Fore-maglede, *p.p.* mangled, 1534.  
*Sc. magil, maigil, to mangle (Jamieson).*  
 Forestayne, *s.* prow of a ship, 742.  
 Foretoppe, *s.* forehead, 1078.  
 Fore-trauaillede, *p.p.* fatigued, 806.  
 Forfette, *v.* forfeit, 557; *p.p.* forfeitede, 1155.  
 Forfoughttene, *p.p.* wearied with fighting, 3792, 4179.  
 Forgyffe, 3488, Foregyffe, 4324, *v.* forgive; *p.p.* forgefene, 2184.  
 Forheuede, *s.* forehead, 1080.  
 Forjuste, 2895, Forjustede, 2088, 2134, 2908, Forejustyde, 1398, *p.p.* overcome in a joust, defeated.  
 Formaylle, *s.* female hawk, 4003.  
 Forraye, *v.* forage, 2489; 3 *s.* forrayse, 1247; *pret.* forrayede, 3017.  
 Forreours, *s. pl.* foragers, 2450, 2901.  
 Forsake, *v.* refuse, 1686, 2734, deny, 1945, 4142.  
 Forsesy, *adj.* strong, powerful, 3300, 3307.  
 Forsett, 2012, 2018, Forsette, 1714, 1896, 1979, Foresett, 2161, *p.p.*  
 Forsterne, *s.* forepart of the stern, 3664.  
 Fortethe, *s.* front teeth, 1089.  
 Forthermaste, *adv.* first, 1365.  
 Forthes, 2827, Forthis, 1850, *v.* 3 *s.* proceeds.  
 For-thi, 152, 225, For-thy, 1172, Fore-thy, 3009, Fore-thi, 3346, *adv.* therefore.  
 Forthire, 261, Forthyre, 340, *adv.* further.  
 Forthire, *v.* afford, furnish, 300, 1509.  
 Forthirmaste, *adj.* first, 3330.  
 For-thynkkes, 4252, For-thynkys, 971, *impers. v.* repents; me *f.* = I regret, repent.  
 Fortrodyne, *p.p.* trampled, 2150.  
 Fote, 801, 1079, Fott, 4058, Fotte, 933, 1855, *s.* foot.  
 Fote-mene, *s. pl.* infantry, 1989.  
 Foughtene, Foughttene. *See* Feghte.  
 Foulde. *See* Folde.  
 Found, 452, Founde, 495, 1189, *v.* go, proceed; *pl.* fowndes, 3112, fowndys, 2756; *pret.* foundide, 1442.  
 Foundene, Foundyne. *See* Fynde.  
 Fourmede, *v. pret.* formed, 3808; *p.p.* 781, 861, 1061.  
 Fourte, *adj.* fourth, 3300.  
 Fourtedele, *s.* fourth part, quarter, 946.  
 Fowlde. *See* Folde.  
 Fowle, *s.* bird, 4002.  
 Fowly, *adv.* foully, 1089.  
 Fowndene. *See* Fynde.  
 Fowndes. *See* Found.  
 Foyle, *s.* leaf, 2704.  
 Foynes, *v. pl.* fence, thrust, 1494, 2141, 2163; *pret.* foynede, 1898.  
 Fra, *prep.* from, 47, 591.  
 Fraisez, 1248. *Read* Frayes, terrifies.  
 Fraiste, Frayste, *v.* try, test, 435, 881, 3395; 3 *s.* fraystez, 1227; *p.p.* fraistede, 2774.  
 Fraknede, *adj.* freckled, 1081.  
 Franche, *adj.* French, 1250.  
 Fransye, *s.* frenzy, 3826.  
 Frape, 2804, Frappe, 2163, 3548, *s.* company, troop.  
 Frappez, *v.* 3 *s.* smites, 1115.

- Frauncnez, *s.* liberty, 1248.  
 Frawghte, *p.p.* laden, freighted, 3547.  
 Frawnke, *s.* enclosure, 3247.  
 Frayed, *p.p.* frightened, 2260.  
 Fraynes, 507, Frayne, 337, 954, 1441, *v.* 3 *s.* asks, inquires.  
 Frayste. *See* Fraiste.  
 Fre, Free, *adj.* noble, 1711, 3247.  
 Frechely, *adv.* (?) boldly, (?) freshly, 3691.  
 Freely, 3330, Frely, 970, Freliche, 2488, 3371, 3808, *adj.* noble.  
 Freely, *adv.* 2072, 2140.  
 Freke, *s.* man, fellow, 557, 873, 973; *pl.* frekes, 742, frekkes, 1360, frykis, 2898.  
 Freke, 2759, 2821, Frekk, 2139, Frekke, 2454, *adj.* bold; *superl.* frekkeste, 1536, 2164.  
 Frekly, 1360, 1451, Frekkly, 3927, *adv.* boldly.  
 Freliche, Frely. *See* Freely, *adj.*  
 Fremdly, 2738, Fremedly, 1250, Fremydly, 3405, *adv.* strangely.  
 Fremmede, *adj.* strange, foreign, 3343.  
 Frenchepe, *s.* friendship, 656.  
 Frendez, *s.* *pl.* friends, 1442.  
 Friendely, *adj.* friendly, 3343.  
 Friendles, *adj.* friendless, 3305.  
 Freschely, 1367, 1441, Fresche-liche, 4249, Frescly, 2097, Fresclyche, 2900, *adv.* freshly, briskly, vigorously.  
 Freschene, *v.* refresh, 1452.  
 Fresclyche, *adj.* fresh, 2502.  
 Fresone, *s.* (?) Friesland horse, 1365.  
 Fretene, *p.p.* (?) adorned, 2142. A.S. *frætwan*, to adorn.  
 Frette, *p.p.* (?) rubbed, 2708. Fr. *frotter*, to rub.  
 Fretted, *p.p.* 1364.  
 Fretyne, *p.p.* devoured, 844.  
 Frithez, *s.* *pl.* woods, forests, 924.  
 Frithed, *p.p.* wooded round, hemmed in with forest, hedged, 3247. Occurs in *Piers the Plowman*, ed. Skeat, Text B, v. 590.  
 Fro, *prep.* from, 3, 376, 1138.  
 Fromonde, *s.* (?) 1112.  
 Froske, *s.* frog, 1081. A.S. *frosc*.  
 Frount, 1080, Frounte, 1711, 1756, Frownte, 2455, Frunt, 1112, Fronte, 1495, *s.* brow, forehead, front.  
 Frountere, 2861, Frowntere, 2898, *s.* front of an army.  
 Frowarde, *adj.* perverse, 3345.  
 Froyte, *s.* fruit, 2492, 2707; *pl.* froytez, 3246.  
 Frumentee, *s.* a dish made of wheat and various other things, 180. *See* the recipe in *Liber Cure Cocorum*, ed. Morris, p. 7.  
 Frunt. *See* Frount.  
 Frusche, *s.* dash, charge, swift attack, 2900.  
 Fruschene, *v.* *pl.* dash, smite, 2804. "*Froisser, fruisser, écraser, froisser, briser.*" *Burguy*.  
 Frykis. *See* Freke, *s.*  
 Frysthez, 1248. *Read* Frythez, spares.  
 Frythes, *v.* *pl.* spare, 2159; *imp.* 2 *pl.* 1734; *p.p.* frythede, 656.  
 Fude, *s.* food, 160, 2486.  
 Fulille, *v.* fill up, 3438.  
 Fulle, *adv.* foul, 1154, 2436.  
 Fulsomeste, *adj.* foulest, 1061.  
 Fundene. *See* Fynde.  
 Furlange, *s.* furlong, 873, 946, 1538.  
 Furthe, *adv.* forth, 262, 632, 1229.  
 Furthe, *s.* path, ford, 1227, 1525, 1714, 1897, 2144.

- Fute, *s.* foot, 461.  
 Fyche, *v.* fix, 2162.  
 Fyfe, *adj.* five, 844, 856.  
 Fyfte, *adj.* fifth, 3414.  
 Fyghtande. *See* Feghte.  
 Fygyred, *p.p.* 2151.  
 Fylede, *p.p.* defiled, 978.  
 Fylth, *s.* foul lust, 1032, 1071.  
 Fynde, *v.* find; *pl.* fyndez, 1357;  
*pret.* fande, 1160, fonde, 2775; *p.p.*  
 fundene, 1176, fondene, 675, 808,  
 foundene, 92, 163, foundyne, 435,  
 fowndene, 3339.  
 Fyrthe, *v.* spare, 3370.  
 Fyrthe, *s.* wood, forest, 1409,  
 1850, 1875, 1897, 2159.  
 Fysnamye, 1114, Fyssnamy, 3331,  
*s.* physiognomy, face.  
 Gaddes, 3621, Gaddys, 3683, *s.*  
*pl.* goads, pricks.  
 Gaderide, *p.p.* gathered, 3295;  
*pret.* gadyrede, 594.  
 Gadlynges, 2443, 2728, Gad-  
 lyngcz, 2854, Gedlynges, 2884, *s.*  
*pl.* fellows, worthless fellows.  
 "So is mony gedelyng,  
 godlyche on horse,  
 and is peyh lutel wurp;  
 wlonk bi þe glede,  
 and vuel at pare neode."  
*The Proverbs of Alfred*, Jesus  
 Coll. MS. 29, leaf 264.  
 A.S. *gædeling*, companion.  
 Gafe, *v.* *pret.* gave, 2628, gavest,  
 1018; gaffe, gave, 85.  
 Galaye, *s.* galley, 3724; *pl.* ga-  
 lays, 3096.  
 Galede, *v.* *pret.* sang, 927. A.S.  
*galan*.  
 Galte, *s.* swine, 1101.  
 Galyarde, *adj.* gay, 721, 1265,  
 1279. Fr. *gaillard*.  
 Gamene, *s.* game, sport, 2811;  
*pl.* gamnes, 1730, 3174.  
 Ganggyng, *s.* going, 706.  
 Gardwynes, *s.* *pl.* guerdons, re-  
 wards, 1729.  
 Garette, *s.* watch-tower, 562, 3104.  
 "þe garettes oboven þe yhates  
 bryght  
 Of þe ceté of heven, I lyken þus  
 ryght,  
 Tylle þe garettes of a ceté of gold,  
 þat wrought war, als I before told,  
 Of fyne curalle and rych rubys,  
 And of other stanes of gret  
 prys, . . ." *Hampole's Pricke  
 of Conscience*, ll. 9101-9106.  
 Garneschit, 722, Garnescht, 563,  
 1000, *p.p.* garnished, furnished.  
 Garnisone, 3105, Garnysone,  
 2471, 2655, Garysone, 3007, *s.*  
 garrison.  
 Garte. *See* Gere.  
 Gas. *See* Goo.  
 Gate, *s.* going, 4144, road, 4308.  
 Gayliche, Gaylyche, *adv.* gaily,  
 913, 2655, 3462, 3684.  
 Gayne, *v.* avail, 165; 3 *s.* gaynes,  
 4303; *pl.* gaynez, 1731.  
 Gayneste, *adj.* nearest, 487, 1041,  
 3006.  
 Gayspande, *i. p.* gasping, 1462.  
 Geant, 3410, Geante, 2889, Gy-  
 aunt, 1122, 1222, *s.* giant; *pl.*  
 geauntez, 375, gyawntis, 2908.  
 Gedlynges. *See* Gadlynges.  
 Gedyre, *v.* gather, 592.  
 Gemows, *s.* *pl.* hinges, 2893.  
 "Gymowe of a speryng. *Verti-  
 nella, gemella.*" *Promptorium Par-  
 vulorum*. *See* Way's notes on this  
 word.  
 Genatours, *s.* *pl.* riders on jennets,  
 light horsemen, 2897. "Génétaire,  
 génesteur, génete, génitaire : Sorte  
 de cavalier, suivant Philippe de  
 Commines." "Genitaires : Cavale-  
 rie légère." *Roquefort*.  
 Gentille, *adj.* gentle, well-born,  
 &c., 987, 1161, 2088; *superl.* gentil-  
 este, 862.

Genyuers, *s. pl.* (?) 375.

Gere, *v.* make, cause, 3640; 3 *s.* gers, 3572, 3921; *pret.* garte, 1886, 3709, gerte, 1780, 1946, 1975; gerte kepe hym = caused him to be kept.

Gere, *s.* gear, tackle, 2539, 3008.

Gerefawcone, *s.* gerfalcon, 4004.

Gers. *See* Gere, *v.*

Gersoms, *s. pl.* treasures, 165, 1729.

Gerte. *See* Gere, *v.*

Gessenande, (?) 2521.

Gesserawnte, 2892, Jesseraunt, 904, Jesserawnte, 4238; *s.* coat of jazeran; *pl.* gesserawntes, 2909. "Jazeran. Particular kind of armour, so called from the Italian ghiazzerino, being made of overlapping plates of iron rivetted on canvass covered with velvet, red, black, or blue, and ornamented externally with brass studs." *Meyrick, Glossary of Military Terms.* "Jaserant, jazerant, . . . cotte de petites mailles." *Burguy.*

Gestes, *s. pl.* stories, 2876.

Gettlesse, *adj.* without getting anything, 2727.

Getyne, *p.p.* gotten, 886.

Ghywes, *s. pl.* gyves, fetters, 3621.

Gife, 2630, Giffe, 2632, *conj.* if.

Gife, 1179, Giff, 1060, Giffe, 2321, *v.* give; *p.p.* gifene, 1729.

Girde, *v.* smite, 3709; 3 *s.* girdez, 1792, gyrdes, 1370, gyrdez, 1470, gyrdis, 2563; *pret.* gyrd, 2971; *p.p.* girde, 3938.

Girdille, Girdylle, *s.* girdle, 3458, 3923.

Girse, *s.* grass, 3944.

Gladchipe, *s.* gladness, 59, 928.

Gladdez, 2883, Gladdis, 2852, *v.* 3 *s.* gladdens, encourages; *pl.* glad-dene, 928.

Glade, *adj.* glad, 1386.

Glade. *See* Glydez.

Glauerande, *i. p.* talking foolishly, 2538.

Glayfe, *s.* 3761. "*Glaive.* A weapon composed of a long cutting blade at the end of a staff. . . ." *Meyrick, Glossary of Military Terms.*

Gledys, *s. pl.* sparks, live coals, 117.

Glent, *s.* stroke, 3863.

Glentes, 4244, Glentis, 2563, Glenttys, 2780, *v.* 3 *s.* glances, glides.

Gleterande, *i. p.* glittering, 595, 1280, 2853.

Gliftis, 3949, Glyftes, 2525, *v.* 3 *s.* looks.

Gloppynyng, *s.* fright, amazement, 3863.

Glopyne, *v.* terrify, 2580, be terror-struck, 3 *s.* glopyns, 3949; *pret.* glopnode, 1074; *imp. pl.* 2. glop-pyns, 2853; *i. p.* gloppynnande, 4329.

Glorede, *v. pret.* stared, 1074.

Glotione, *s.* glutton, 1074.

Glydez, *v.* 3 *s.* glides, 1371; *pret.* glade, 2972; *i. p.* glydande, 799.

Glyftes. *See* Gliftis.

Gobbede, *adj.* full of gab or derision, 1346. *Sc. gabbed*, loquacious.

Gobelets, *s. pl.* glove-ornaments of some kind, perhaps little cups, 913. Compare *Gobelot de gland* = acorn-cup. (*Roquefort.*)

Gobone, *v.* (?) 4164.

Gode, *adj.* good, 3476.

Gole, *s.* 3725. "A ditch or small stream." *Halliwell.*

Golet, *s.* gullet, 1772.

Gome, 85, 1209, Gume, 3409, *s.* man; *pl.* gomes, 1461, gomys, 3683, 3684. A.S. *guma.*

- Goo, *v.* go, 213, 1279; 3 *s.* gas, 3006, gos, 3727, gosse, 3104; *pl.* gosse, 497; *imp.* 2 *pl.* gose, 1266.
- Gorge, *s.* throat, 3760.
- Gorgere, *s.* gorget, piece of armour for the throat, 1772.
- Gorre, *s.* gore, 1130, 1370.
- Gos, Gose. *See* Goo.
- Gosesomere, *s.* gossamer, 2687.
- Gosse. *See* Goo.
- Gossehawke, *s.* goshawk, 4001.
- Gouverneur, *s.* 1201.
- Gowces. *Read* Gowtes, drops, spots, 3759.
- Gowke, *s.* cuckoo, 927. A.S. *geac.*
- Gowles, 3646, 3759, Gowlles, 3945, *s.* gules (Her.).
- Gracious, *adj.* 187.
- Grame, *s.* anger, 1077, 3008. A.S. *grama.*
- Granes, *v.* groans, 2562.
- Grape, *v.* grope, search, 2725.
- Grassede, *p.p.* fattened, fat, 1091.
- Graue, *p.p.* engraved, 3462.
- Graunt, 2820, Graunted, 1202, *p.p.* granted.
- Grayhondes. *See* Grehownde.
- Graynes, *s. pl.* 913, 3463.
- Graythe, *v.* make ready, prepare, equip, 1279, convey, 4303, proceed, hasten, go, 1266; 3 *s.* graythes, goes, 1353, 1384, 3761; *p.p.* graythede, equipped, 589, 602, graythide, 373.
- Graythelyche, 722, Graythely, 1369, 1384, 1387, Graythly, 1000, *adv.* readily, speedily.
- Graytheste, *adj.* readiest, promptest, 1201.
- Gre, 2748, Gree, 1936, 2645, *s.* will, pleasure.
- Gree, *s.* (degree) ascendancy, 3706, 4298.
- Grees, *s.* grease time, the time when deer are fat and fit for killing, 658. *See* Grease in Halliwell.
- Greesse-growene, *adj.* grown over with fat, 1101.
- Grefe, 1077, Greefe, 1471, 2562, Grefe, 3007, 4324, *s.* grief, anger, vexation, pain, sorrow.
- Grefe, *v.* grieve, 705; *p.p.* grefede, hurt, 1282, greffede, 1463. *See* Greue.
- Grefes. *See* Greue, *s.*
- Grehownde, 3464, Grehownde, 1075, Grehownde, 4001, *s.* grayhound; *pl.* grewhoundez, 1730, grayhondes, 2521.
- Grekkes, *adj.* Greek, 594.
- Grene, *adj.* green, 1266, 1281.
- Grennede, *v. pret.* grinned, showed his teeth, 1075.
- Gresse, *s.* grass, 1131.
- Gret, 256, Grete, 207, Grett, 1, 165, Grette, 539, *adj.* great; *comp.* gretter, 3243; *superl.* gretteste, 1469.
- Grete, *v.* greet, 1282; 3 *s.* gretez, 1077; *pl.* gretes, 1233; *pret.* grette, 84, 3476.
- Grete, *v.* weep; 3 *s.* gretes, 2962; *pret.* grette, 3790; *i. p.* gretand, 951, 3912.
- Gretez, *v.* 1774. Qu. gredez, calls.
- Greue, *s.* grove, 2540; *pl.* greues, 1874, greuez, 927, grefes, 2881.
- Greue, *v.* grieve, vex, annoy; *pret.* greuyde, was vexed, 1352; *p.p.* greuede, 134, 266, 1173, greuyde, 1022.
- Grehownde, Grehownde. *See* Grehownde.
- Gripe, *v.* seize, gripe, grasp, 3008; 3 *s.* grypes, 1163, 2526, gryppes, 1369.
- Grisely, 3105, Grysly, 1075, Grysely, 951, Gryeslye, 1469, Gry[s]-lych, 1101, *adj.* horrible, grisly.



- Grisely, 1462, 3950, Grysely, 3912, Gryselyche, 1373, *adv.* horribly.
- Groffe, 3850, Grouffe, 3944, Growffe, 3869, *s.* On *g.* = flat, sprawling.
- Grome, *s.* groom, 2526, 3489.
- Gronande, *i. p.* groaning, 1373, 3938.
- Grouche. *See* Gruche.
- Grouffe. *See* Groffe.
- Groundene, 1371, 2972, Grown-dene, 1281, Grundyne, 1461, *p.p.* ground, sharpened.
- Growffe. *See* Groffe.
- Growndene. *See* Groundene.
- Gruche, 706, 2644, Grouche, 2819, *v.* be dissatisfied, grudge; *pret.* grychgide, 2557; *i. p.* grucchande, 1076, 1353, 1462.
- Grundyne. *See* Groundene.
- Grychgide. *See* Gruche.
- Gryeslye. *See* Grisely.
- Gryffoune, *s.* griffin, 3869.
- Grygynge, *s.* (graying) dawn, 2510.
- Grylych, 1101. *Read* Gryslych, *and see* Grisely.
- Gryme, *adj.* grim, 3621, 3760; *superl.* grymmeste, 3419.
- Grymly, *adv.* grimly, fiercely, 1471, 2558, 3813.
- Grypes, Gryppes. *See* Gripe.
- Grysely, Gryselyche, Grysly. *See* Grisely.
- Guchede. *Read* Guthede = gouted, goutté, bedropped, spotted, 3937.
- Gud, 2851, 2853, Gude, 559, 563, *adj.* good.
- Gudes, 295, Gudez, 1213, 1249, *s. pl.* goods.
- Gudly, *adv.* well, 677, 3005.
- Gumbaldes, *s. pl.* (?) dainties, 187.
- Gume. *See* Gome.
- Guschez, *v. pl.* gush, 1130.
- Guttes, 1130, Guttez, 1370, *s. pl.* guts.
- Guyte, *s.* child, 2963. *See* *Get* and *Gyte* in Jamieson.
- Gwerdone, 4277, Gwerddouns, 2820, *s. pl.* guerdons, rewards.
- Gyaunt, Gyawntis. *See* Geant.
- Gydes, *v.* 3 *s.* guides, 3005.
- Gydes, *s. pl.* guides, 3006.
- Gye, *v.* guide, 4; *pret.* gyede, 3860.
- Gyf, 3058, Gyfe, 1598, Gyffe, 4, *v.* give; 3 *s.* gyffes, 1774; *p.p.* gyfene, 4277, gyffene, 1202; gyffes = makes account of, 539.
- Gyrd, Gyrdes, &c. *See* Girde.
- Haa, *int.* 133.
- Habite, *s.* dress, 3917.
- Habydes, *v.* 3 *s.* abides, waits for, 596; *pl.* habyddez, remain, 1431.
- Hade. *See* Hafe.
- Hafe, 252, 286, Haffe, 1616, *v.* have; 2 *s.* has, 100, 140, hase, 1805; 3 *s.* has, 846; *pl.* has, 12, 369; *pret.* hade, 26, 52.
- Hailsez, *v.* 3 *s.* greets, salutes, 1058.
- Hakenayes, 484, Hakkenays, 2284, Haknays, 734, *s. pl.* hackneys.
- Halde, *v.* hold, 424; 3 *s.* haldes, 64, haldez, 1135; *pret.* helde, 1196; *p.p.* haldene, 387, 1456.
- Hale, *v.* draw, haul, 748.
- Hale, 1260, 2108, Halle, 2651, *adj.* whole.
- Halely, 764, Hally, 1001, 1085, Holly, 748, *adv.* wholly, entirely.
- Halfe, *s.* half, part, side; *pl.* halves, 1853, halfez, 1979, halues, 1966, 3530.
- Halowes, *v.* 3 *s.* shouts, hollas, 3319.
- Hals, *s.* neck, throat, 764; *pl.* halses, 4120, halsez, 1798.

- Haly, 297, 309, Holy, 348, *adj.*  
 Hame-holde, *adj.* domestic, 1843.  
 See *Hamald* in Jamieson.  
 Hanche, 1100, 1119, Haunche,  
 1157, *s.* haunch.  
 Handez, *s. pl.* hands, 1137.  
 Handilez, *v. pl.* handle, feel, 1156.  
 Handsomere, *adj. comp.* more  
 handy, 2128.  
 Hannde-brede, *s.* handbreadth,  
 2229.  
 Hansemane, *s.* henchman, page,  
 2662; *pl.* hansemene, 2743. See  
*Henseman* in Jamieson.  
 Hape, 1937, Happe, 2446, *s.* hap.  
 Happe, *v.* have good fortune, suc-  
 ceed, 2630.  
 Happene, *v.* 1269, obtain, 3433;  
*p.p.* hapnede, happened, 1154, 3304.  
 Happy, *adj.* fortunate, 1741, 2974.  
 Happyng, *s.* good fortune, suc-  
 cess, 3958.  
 Harageous, *adj.* 1645, 1742, 1834,  
 2248, violent, stormy. (Wright.)  
 Harawde, 2294, 3029, Hawrawde,  
 3013, *s.* herald.  
 Harbergage, *s.* quarters, 2475.  
 Hardare, *adj. comp.* harder, 4194.  
 Harde. See *Here, v.*  
 Hardly, *adv.* closely, 1084.  
 Hardynes, *s.* boldness, courage,  
 3959.  
 Hare, *s.* hair, 1001.  
 Hare, *s.* 2504.  
 Harlotte, *s.* ribald, rascal, low  
 fellow, 2446; *pl.* harlottez, 2743.  
 Not used in the modern sense.  
 Harmes, 2437, Harmez, 1842, *v.*  
 3 *s.* harms.  
 Harnayse, *s.* armour, 2629.  
 Harrawnte, *v.* (?) 2449.  
 Harske, *adj.* harsh, hard, 1084.  
 Has, Hase. See *Hafe*.  
 Hastily, *adv.* hastily, quickly,  
 167.  
 Hathelle, *adj.* noble, 358, 1659,  
 1662; *superl.* hathelest, 988, ha-  
 thelieste, 2109.  
 Hawberke, *s.* hauberk, coat of  
 mail, 1156, 2078, 2552. Ger.  
*halsberg*.  
 Hawe, *s.* (?) 3704.  
 Hawle, *s.* hall, 3879.  
 Hawrawde. See *Harawde*.  
 Hawtayne, *adj.* haughty, 1058,  
 2612, 2910.  
 Hawtayne, (?) 3029.  
 Haylede, *v. pret.* projected, 2077.  
 Haythemene, *s. pl.* (?) heathen  
 men, 2295.  
 Haythene, 1260, 2274, Hathene,  
 1284, Heythene, 2285, 3642, He-  
 thene, 1834, *adj.* heathen.  
 Hedde, *v.* behead, 2311.  
 Heddys-mene, *s. pl.* headmen,  
 chief men, 281.  
 Hede. See *Heuede*.  
 Hede-rapys, *s. pl.* head-ropes,  
 3668.  
 Hedire, *adv.* hither, 2614.  
 Hedlyngs, *adv.* headlong, 3829.  
 Hedoyne, *s.* (?) 184.  
 Hedyrwarde, *adv.* hitherward, this  
 way, 25.  
 Hedys. See *Heuede*.  
 Heghe = hethe, heath, 2476.  
 Heghe, 158, 167, 499, Heyghe,  
 3471, Hey, 3467, 3485, Hye, 39,  
 58, Hyghe, 3014, *adj.* high; *superl.*  
 hegheste, 3369.  
 Heghe, 1261, 1832, Hye, 194,  
 1119, *adv.* high.  
 Heghe, *s.* high place, height, 1146.  
 Heghely, *adv.* hastily, 2294.  
 Heghte = aughte, *adj.* eight,  
 2830.  
 Heghte = hethe, *s.* heath, 2295.

- Heghte, 1157, 2613, Highte, 3626, *s.* height; *pl.* heghttez, 798.  
 Hekes, *s.* *pl.* horses, 2284.  
 Heldede, *v.* *pret.* bowed down, inclined, 3368.  
 Hele, *s.* health, prosperity, 2630, 3958.  
 Hele, *v.* hide, conceal, 3286; *pret.* hillid, 1120; *p.p.* hillyd, 3606.  
 Hele, *v.* heal, be healed, recover, 3688; 3 *s.* heles, 2209; *pret.* helyde, 1825; *p.p.* helyd, 3030.  
 Helme, *s.* helmet, 1832; *pl.* helmes, 380, 730, hellmes, 2551.  
 Helmede, *adj.* having helmets, 1647, 3626.  
 Helpene, *v.* *inf.* help, 1646; *p.p.* holpene, 2631, 2661.  
 Helych, *adv.* loudly, 1286.  
 Hemmes, 1359, 1648, Hemmys, 2219, *s.* *pl.* borders.  
 Hende, *adj.* courteous, 167, 1135, 1283.  
 Hente, *v.* seize, take, receive; 3 *s.* hentez, 1132, hentes, 2917; *pret.* hente, 2973; *p.p.* hente, 1842, 3319.  
 Herbariours, *s.* *pl.* harbingers, men who went forward to find places for others, 2448.  
 Herberde, *p.p.* harboured, lodged, 158, 166, 2650.  
 Herbergage, *s.* lodgings, quarters, 1285, 2285.  
 Here, *v.* hear, 12; *pret.* herde, 1285, harde.  
 Herede, *adj.* haired, 1083.  
 Heretyke, *s.* heretic, 1307.  
 Herkene, *v.* hearken, 1646, 3899; *imp.* 2 *pl.* herkenes, 25, herkynes, 15.  
 Herne-pane, *s.* brain-pan, skull, 2229.  
 Herte, *s.* heart, 251, 262.  
 Herte, *v.* take courage, 1181.  
 Hertelyche, 2551, Hertly, 1835, *adj.* severe.  
 Hertly, 3642, Hertely, 2991, *adv.* heartily, severely.  
 Heslyne, *adj.* of hazel, 2504.  
 Heste, *s.* command, 2294, 3368, 4307.  
 Hetches, *s.* *pl.* hatches, 3682.  
 Hete, 2127, 3030, Hette, 2631, 3369, *v.* promise, assure.  
 Hethe, 1834, 2308, Heghe, 2476, Heghte, 2295, Heyghe, 2651, *s.* heath.  
 Hethely, *adv.* scornfully, 268.  
 Hethynge, *s.* scorn, 1843.  
 Hette. *See* Hete.  
 Heuande, *i.* *p.* rising, 3704.  
 Heuede, 262, 1178, 1354, *s.* head; chief, 1344; *pl.* hedys.  
 Heuedede, *p.p.* beheaded, 463.  
 Heuen, *v.* raise, 1937. *See* *Heuen* in the Glossary to *Alliterative Poems*, ed. Morris.  
 Heuene, 1167, 1261, Hewene, 705, Hewyne, 2184, *s.* heaven.  
 Hewe, *s.* hue, colour, 207, 768, 2524.  
 Hewede, *adj.* coloured, 3252.  
 Hewene, *v.* *pl.* hew, 1860; *p.p.* hewene, 1825, 2663.  
 Hewys, *v.* 3 *s.* raises, 4156; *p.p.* hewede, 4091.  
 Hey, *adj.* *See* Heghe.  
 Hey, *s.* *See* Hye.  
 Heyghe, *adj.* *See* Heghe.  
 Heyghe, *s.* *See* Hethe.  
 Heyly, *adv.* quickly, 464, 2663, 2920.  
 Heyndly, *adv.* courteously, 15.  
 Heynne, *adv.* hence, 2436.  
 Heynzous, *adj.* heinous, 268.  
 Heythene. *See* Haythene.  
 Highte, *p.p.* called, named, 2899.  
 Hillid, Hillyd. *See* Hele, *v.*

- Hilde, *s.* hilt, handle of a sword, 1121; *pl.* hiltes, 2239, hiltéz, 1056, 1149.  
 Hiltede, *adj.* 2274, 2911.  
 Hir, 84, 980, Hire, 956, *pron.* her.  
 Hirste, *s.* wood, forest, 3369.  
 Hittez, *v.* 3 *s.* hits, 1112, 1125, 1149.  
 Hode, *s.* hood, 3459.  
 Hodles, *adj.* hoodless, bareheaded, 2308.  
 Holdene, *v.* *pl.* hold, 4128; *p.p.* holdene, 1579, holdyne, 40, 166.  
 Hole, *adj.* hollow, 1083.  
 Hole, 1647, 2661, Holle, 3687, 4128, *adj.* whole, all. *See* Hale.  
 Holly, *adv.* wholly, entirely, 748, 3368, 3590.  
 Holpene. *See* Helpene.  
 Holte, *s.* wood, 1283, 1645; *pl.* holtez, 1259.  
 Hom, *adv.* home, 3014.  
 Homager, *s.* one who does homage, 3147.  
 Hondene, *v.* (?) serve with hands, 3209.  
 Hondrethe, 844, Howndrethe, 2108, Hundrethe, 930, *s.* hundred; *pl.* hundrethes, 281, hunndrethez, 1879.  
 Honeste, *adj.* honourable, good, 3245.  
 Honnde, *s.* hand, 1807; *pl.* hondes, 2255, hondez, 1114.  
 Honourliche, *adj.* honourable, 2298.  
 Hope, *v.* suppose, 2209.  
 Hopes, *s.* *pl.* (?) 2503.  
 Horde, *s.* treasure; *pl.* hordes, 3145.  
 Hore, *adj.* hoar, hoary, 1082.  
 Hornez, *s.* *pl.* horns, 1286.  
 Horsse, *s.* 463; *pl.* horsez, 734, horsesys, 3721.  
 Horsede, 1179, Horsesede, 2944, Horsesyde, 1647, *adj.* horsed, mounted.  
 Hostaye, *v.* lead a host, or make war, 555.  
 Hotchene, *v.* *pl.* hack, chop, 3687.  
 Houe, Hufe, 1688, *v.* tarry; 3 *s.* houys, 915, howes, 2010, hufes, 1260; *pl.* houez, 1283, houys, 377, 2118; *pret.* houede, 2031; *i. p.* houande, 1648.  
 Hoursches, *v.* *pl.* (?) rush, 2110.  
 House, *v.* dwell, 4284.  
 Howes. *See* Houe.  
 Howge. *See* Hüge.  
 Howndrethe. *See* Hondrethe.  
 Howntes, *v.* *pl.* hunt, 4258.  
 Howselde, *p.p.* houseled; be h. = receive the housel, or consecrated host, 4315.  
 Howsyngge, *s.* dwellings, quarters, 1284, 2285.  
 Hufe. *See* Houè.  
 Hüge, 1086, Hugge, 583, 1634, Howge, 2889, *adj.* huge.  
 Hukes, *s.* *pl.* 734. Miswritten for *hakes*, or *hekes*, horses.  
 Huke-nebbyde, *adj.* hooknosed, 1082.  
 Hulke, *s.* a great awkward fellow, 1058, 1085, 1121, 1149.  
 Hunde-fisch, *s.* houndfish, 1084.  
 Hundrethe, Hunndrethez. *See* Hondrethe.  
 Hurdace, *s.* fence, palisade, barrier, 3626.  
 Hurdez, *v.* 3 *s.* (?) lurks, 1010.  
 Hurles, *v.* 2 *s.* rushest, 262.  
 Hurtez, *v.* 3 *s.* thrusts, 1772.  
 Hy. *See* Hye.  
 Hyde, *s.* skin, 1157.  
 Hydede, *p.p.* hided, skinned, covered, 1001.

- Hye. *See* Heghe.  
 Hye, 463, 2108, Hy, 2109, Hey, 166, *s.* haste.  
 Hye, *v.* hasten, 1645.  
 Hyely, *adv.* hastily, quickly, (or perhaps) loudly, 1058.  
 Hyene, *adv.* hence, 2582, 2744.  
 Hyled, *p.p.* hidden, 184. *See* Hele.  
 Hyme, *pron.* him, 1133, 1134.  
 Hymlande, (?) 2503.  
 Hyndire, *s.* hindpart, 3626.  
 Hynge, *v.* hang; 3 *s.* hynnges, 3473; *pret.* hyngede, 281; *i. p.* hyn-gande, 1083; *p.p.* hynggyde, 3590.  
 Hynter, *s.* hindpart, 3605.  
 Hyrdez, *s. pl.* shepherds, 3245.  
 Hyre, *pron.* her, 854.  
 Hyttez, *v.* 3 *s.* hits, 1122, 1387.  
  
 Iche. *See* Ilke.  
 Iche, *v.* sally forth, rush out, 1412. O.Fr. *issir*.  
 Idene, (?) 3061.  
 Ife = if, 420, 2438.  
 Ile, *s.* isle, 4309; *pl.* ilez, 575, illes, 2359.  
 Ilkane, 279, Ilkone, 3691, *pron.* each one, each.  
 Ilke, *adj.* same, 65, 232, 1311. A.S. *ilc*.  
 Ilke, 1006, 1093, Ylke, 2460, 2480, Iche, 589, 1004, Yche, *adj.* each. Often followed by *a*: ilke *a*, 83, 194, iche *a*, 2144, 3062, yche *a*, 3634.  
 Illes. *See* Ile.  
 Imangez, *prep.* amongst, 3169.  
 In-come, *s.* coming in, 2009, 2171.  
 Ine = in, 1797.  
 Inewe. *See* Inowe.  
 Inglisce, *s.* English, 2529.  
 Inns, *s. pl.* dwellings, 3041.  
  
 Inowe, 3095, Inewe, 3161, Ynowe, 1626, Ynewe, 1360, 1970, *adv.* enough.  
 Irene, 1186, Iryne, 2104, Yryne, 1182, *s.* iron.  
 Iresche, 3934, Irische, 4123, 4161, *adj.* Irish.  
 Irous, 1329, Irows, 1592, Irus, 1957, *adj.* wrathful.  
 Irouslie, *adv.* wrathfully, 2530.  
 Ischewe, *s.* issue, 1943.  
 Isschewis, *v.* 3 *s.* issues, 4060; *pl.* ischewis, 3116.  
 I-wis, 3339, I-wys, 2020, 2332, 2828, I-wysse, 322, 546, 2685, *adv.* certainly.  
  
 Jaggede, *v. pret.* jagged, chopped, 1123, 2087; *p.p.* 905, 2909.  
 Jambe, 2894, Jamby, 373, *adj.* active, nimble; lit. leggy, from Fr. *jambe*, leg.  
 Japez, *s. pl.* tricks, 1398.  
 Jentille, Jentylle, *adj.* gentle, 115, 904, 3411.  
 Jerodyne, *s.* (?) 905.  
 Jerownde, *adj.* gyronny (Her.), 2891.  
 Jeryne, *s.* (?) 903.  
 Jesseraunt, Jesserawnte. *See* Gesserawnte.  
 Jocunde, *adj.* 2896.  
 Jogges, *v.* 3 *s.* jogs, thrusts, 2891, 2893.  
 Jolily, Jolyly, *adv.* gaily, handsomely, 245, 373, 2088, 4109.  
 Joly, *adj.* gay, trim, handsome, jolly, 3414; *comp.* jolyere, 4110; *superl.* jolyeste, 1658.  
 Jonede, *p.p.* joined, 2890.  
 Jopowne, 4238, Jupone, 905, *s.* jupon.  
 Jorné, 3411, Journé, 2875, Journee, 340, 372, 825, Jurnec, 2894, *s.* a day's travel, a day's fight, a day's work.

- Jowelle, *s.* jewel, 862.  
 Joye, *s.* 1161.  
 Joyes, *v.* 3 *s.* rejoices, 2896.  
 Joynenyge, *s.* joining, encounter, 2133.  
 Joynez, *v. pl.* join, 2112.  
 Joynter, *s.* joint, 2893.  
 Juggede, *p.p.* judged, 2877.  
 Jugez, *s. pl.* judges, 246.  
 Jumette, *s.* 1122. *Read* Inmette, *s.* intestines. *See* *Inmeats* in *Jamieson*.  
 Juny, *s.* June, 345.  
 Jupone. *See* Jopowne.  
 Jurnee. *See* Jorné.  
 Just, *adv.* 1123.  
 Justere, *s.* jouter, 3412.  
 Justyfy, *v.* execute justice upon, punish, 663.  
 Justynge, *s.* jousting, 1657, 2875.  
  
 Kabane. *See* Cabane.  
 Kaghte. *See* Cachene.  
 Kaire. *See* Cayre.  
 Kalander, *s.* calendar, roll, 2640.  
 Kalendez, *s. pl.* calends, 2371.  
 Kambe, *s.* comb, 3351.  
 Kampe, *s.* fight, 3670, 3701.  
 Kane, *v.* can, 2750.  
 Karede, *v. pret.* 2882. *See* Cayre.  
 Kare. *See* Care.  
 Karfuke, *s.* place where four roads meet, 2003. A well-known cross-road at Oxford is called *Carfax*. *See* *Carfoukes* in the *Romans of Partenay*, ed. Skeat, also a note in *Notes and Queries*, Series III, vol. x. p. 184. O. Fr. *carrefour*.  
 Kariede, 1887, Karyed, 4010, *v. pret.* carried.  
 Karpe. *See* Carpe.  
 Karyage, *s.* baggage, luggage, 2282.  
  
 Kaughte. *See* Cachene.  
 Kaunt, *adj.* stout, bold, 2195.  
 Kay, 3111, Keye, 1867, *s.* key; *pl.* kayes, 3064.  
 Kayere, Kayre. *See* Cayre.  
 Kaysere, *s.* emperor, 1651, 1959; *pl.* kayseres, 1894, kayzers, 2391.  
 Kele, *v.* cool, 1839; *pret.* keled, 2712.  
 Kelle, *s.* caul, net (which ladies wore over their hair), 3258.  
 Kembede, *v. pret.* combed, 3351.  
 Kempe, *s.* warrior; *pl.* kempis, 1003. A.S. *cempa*.  
 Kempe, *v.* fight, 2633.  
 Kene, *v.* tell, 2619, 3521, show, 876; *pret.* kende, 481, 2194, kend, handed over, 1590.  
 Kene, *adj.* keen, sharp, 47, 1106, bold, 641, 1152, 1725, 1785, fierce, 3669; *comp.* kenere, 4194; *superl.* keneste, 2721, 3490.  
 Kenely, 935, 1243, 1271, Ken' 943, *adv.* sharply, boldly.  
 Kenetez, *s. pl.* kennets, snail hounds, 122.  
 Kepare, *s.* keeper, 3512.  
 Kepe, *s.* care, heed, attention, 156, 1682, 1746.  
 Kepe, *v.* keep, 1138, 1780, wait, watch, 2003, heed, regard, care, 2398, 3522, 4021; *imp.* 2 *pl.* kepys, await, 628; *pret.* kepede, 919, kepyde, 838, 2263; *p.p.* kepede, 1586, kevide, 998, kepyd, 2171.  
 Keppe, *v.* catch, seize, 3484.  
 Kepyng, *s.* keeping, 4205.  
 Kerfe, *s.* cutting, 4194.  
 Kerfes, 4231, Kerues, 2567, *v.* 3 *s.* cuts; *p.p.* coruene, 211, 3335, 3673.  
 Keste. *See* Caste.  
 Kettle-hatte, *s.* helmet, 3516, 3995; *pl.* ketelle-hattes, 2993.

- Keye. *See* Kay.
- Kidd, 3673, Kydd, 1272, 1390, Kydde, 96, 232, Kyde, 65, 1651, *adj.* celebrated, famous.
- Kirke, 4016, Kyrke, 1219, *s.* church.
- Kithe, 3866, Kythe, 28, 51, 542, Kyghte, 3996, *s.* nation, country.
- Kleuys. *See* Clewes.
- Klokes, *s. pl.* claws, paws, 792.
- Knafe, 2621, Knaffe, 2637, *s.* servant; *pl.* knafes, 2632, knaues, 3484; knaue = male, 850, 1025.
- Knawe, *v.* know, 1003, 1581, 1672, acknowledge, 2637; 3 *s.* knawes, 1317; *pret.* knewe, 2177; *p.p.* knawene, 475, 1654, knowene, 3259.
- Knee, *s.*; *pl.* knesse, 956, kneys, 4274.
- Knele, *v.* kneel; 3 *s.* knelis, 3951; *pl.* knelis, 3046; *pret.* knelyd, 1199, 2312; *i. p.* kneland, 1137, 4337.
- Knyghte, *s.* 1138; *pl.* knyghttez, 1161.
- Knyghthede, 1320, 1581, 2619, Knyghthode, 1682, 3883, *s.* knight-hood.
- Knyghtly, 2395, Knyghtlyche, 506, 1218, 4083, Knyghttly, 1649, *adj.* knightly.
- Knyghtly, 1707, 1724, Knyghttly, 1692, 1790, *adv.* knightly, like a knight.
- Knylles, *v. pl.* ring, 2353.
- Kombide, *p.p.* combed, 1003.
- Konynge, *s.* cunning, skill, knowledge, 3883.
- Konyngeste, *adj.* most knowing, 3177.
- Kosyne. *See* Cosyne.
- Koueride, *p.p.* covered, 2381.
- Kowardely, *adv.* cowardly, 1923.
- Krafty. *See* Crafty.
- Kraftes, *s. pl.* crafts, 2543.
- Krakede, *v. pret.* cracked, 3269.
- Krayers. *See* Crayers.
- Kreuelleste, Krewelle. *See* Crewelle.
- Krisome, 2636. *See* Crysume.
- Krispane, *i. p.* crisping, 3352.
- Kroke, *s.* crook, curl, 3352. Dan Michel uses the verb *croki*, to curl: "Of pise ydelenesse / ne byeþ naȝt quitte þe men þet doþ zuo grat payne ham to kembe and to pouri me sseaweres and me hare here wel to *croki* an to bleue be strengȝe." — *Ayenbite of Inwyȝt*, ed. Morris, p. 176. *See* *Havelok the Dane*, ed. Skeat, Preface, p. vii, footnote.
- Krouelle. *See* Crewelle.
- Krysome. *See* Crysume.
- Krysumede. *See* Crysmede.
- Kwne, *v.* can, know, 1565; *kwne* thanke = return thanks.
- Kydd, Kydde, Kyde. *See* Kidd.
- Kyghte. *See* Kithe.
- Kynde, *s.* nature, kind, 125 2385, 3049, race, 3867.
- Kyndly, *adj.* natural, proper, good, 3883, 4188.
- Kyndlyche, 714, Kyndly, 2712, Kyndely, 3521, *adv.* naturally, kindly.
- Kyne, *s.* kin, 2618.
- Kyngryke, *s.* kingdom, realm, 24, 1272; *pl.* kyngrykes, 649, kyng-rykez, 820.
- Kynredene, *s.* kindred, 2604.
- Kynsemane, 3898, Kynyse-mane, 1778, *s.* kinsman.
- Kyrke. *See* Kirke.
- Kyrnelles, *s. pl.* battlements, 3046.
- Kyrtille, 998, Kyrtylle, 1024, 1191, *s.* kirtle.
- Kyste, *s.* chest; *pl.* kystys, 2302, 2336, kystis, 2342, 2355.
- Kythe. *See* Kithe.
- Kythe, *v.* show, 1652, 4193.

- Lacchene, 750, Lachene, 2541, *v. pl.* catch, take; *pret.* laghte, 2693, 2702, laughte, 2226, 2292, lached, 1515; *p.p.* laghte, 874, laughte, 1817, 1828, 1902.
- Ladde, *s.* lad, 4302.
- Lade-sterne, *s.* loadstar, the polar star, 751.
- Ladily, *adj.* ladylike, 3254.
- Ladysse, *s. pl.* ladies, 3081.
- Laggene, *v. pl.* (?) get ready, 2542.
- Laghte. *See* Lacchene.
- Laghtirs, *s. pl.* laughters, 2673.
- Lake, *s.* lack, 163.
- Lakes, *s. pl.* lakes, pools, 960, 2149.
- Lamede, *v. pret.* lamed, disabled, 4302; *p.p.* 3281.
- Langage, *s.* language, speech, 3477.
- Lange, *adj.* long, 1103, 1269; one lange = along, 1045, 2703.
- Lange, *adv.* long, 868, 1200; *comp.* langere, 550, 587, lengere, 736, 889.
- Lange, *v.* belong; 3 *s.* langes, 402, lengcz, 2082; *pl.* langez, 1244, langys, 244, lengcz, 1410, 1479; *pret.* lengede, 1492, 2221.
- Lannges, *v.* 3 *s.* longs, 383.
- Langoure, *s.* languor, 4268.
- Languessande, *i. p.* languishing, 4338.
- Lappe, *s.* lappet, 3254, rag, 3286.
- Lappe, *v.* wrap, fold, enclose, 3292; *pret.* lappede, 2300.
- Lapyngc, *s.* lapping, 3235.
- Large, *adv.* wide, away, 1040, deep, 1120, greatly, freely, 1376.
- Largesce, *s.* liberality, bounty, 163.
- Lasschene, *v. pl.* lash, smite, 2801.
- Lat, 3639, Late, 420, 1189, Latt, 4001, Latte, 398, 1139, 1321, *v.* let; 3 *s.* lattes, lets go, dismisses, disperses, 1819; *pret.* lete, 3886.
- Lates, 118, 248, 536, 2054, Latez, 1076, *s. pl.* features.
- Lathe, *s.* (?) displeasure, 458.
- Latheliche, 3279, Laythely, 4302, *adj.* loathly, ugly, hateful.
- Latte, Lattes. *See* Lat.
- Laughene, *v. pl.* laugh, 3698; *pret.* lughe, 248.
- Laughte. *See* Lacchene.
- Launce, *s.* lance, spear, 1379; *pl.* launcez, 1459, 1754, lawnces, 2462.
- Launches, *v.* 3 *s.* leaps, springs, 2560; *pret.* launschide, 194.
- Launchez, *v. pl.* launch, throw out (?), 750.
- Launde, 1517, Lawnde, 2084, *s.* plain, lawn.
- Laundone, *s.* (?) field, 1768. "Landon : . . . petite lande, pâturage; terres remplies de broussailles." *Roquefort.*
- Lawe, *adj.* low, 154, 3720; *superl.* laweste, 2431; on lawe = down, 2281.
- Lawe, *adv.* low, 1270.
- Lawnches, *v.* 3 *s.* cuts, 3831.
- Lawnde. *See* Launde.
- Laye, *s.* (?) 3721.
- Laye, *s.* law, religion, 2593.
- Layere, *s.* lair, camp, 2293.
- Layke, *s.* game, 1599, 3386, 4093.
- Layne, *v.* conceal, 419, 2398, 2593.
- Laysere, *s.* leisure, 2430, 3095.
- Laythely. *See* Latheliche.
- Layttede, *v. pret.* (?) 254.
- Leberalle, *adj.* liberal, 2318.
- Leburde, *s.* lee-board, 3624.
- Leche, *s.* jelly, 194.
- Lechene, *v.* heal, 2388.



- Lechylde, *p.p.* cut into slices, 188.  
 Lede, *s.* nation, man, person, 138, 430, 997; *pl.* ledes, 195, 1902, ledys, 2801.  
 Lede, *s.* lead, 750, 2300, 3954.  
 Lede, 1268, Leede, 154, *v.* lead, treat; *pl.* ledes, 303; *pret.* ledde, 1515, lede, 3380; *p.p.* lede, 1827, 1903.  
 Ledyng, *s.* rule, 3536, conduct, 3880.  
 Lee, *s.* shelter, 1446.  
 Leefe, 2479, 3093, Lefe, 1035, 1335, Leue, 350, *adj.* dear, lief; *comp.* leuer, 872, 1344, 1573.  
 Leefe, 3432, Lefe, 72, 429, Leue, 2082, *s.* leave, permission.  
 Lefe, *v.* leave, 1340; *pl.* leues, remain; *pret.* lefte, 1516; *p.p.* lefede, 1397, leuede, 848, 978, leuyde, 394, 1900, 2208.  
 Lefulle, *adj.* allowable, lawful, 130.  
 Lege, 1901, Liege, 1200, Lige, 1768, 3080, Ligge, 2221, 2389, Lygge, 1518, *adj.* liege.  
 Legyaunce, *s.* allegiance, 2594.  
 Lele, *adj.* leal, honest, faithful, true, 14, 420, 647.  
 Lelely, 672, 2328, Lelly, 1102, Lely, 3084, *adv.* faithfully, honestly, truly.  
 Lemande, *i. p.* shining, gleaming, 2462, 2463, 2672.  
 Lemete, *p.p.* limited, 457.  
 Lenand. *See* Lene.  
 Lende, *v.* abide, 1970.  
 Lendez, *s. pl.* loins, 1047.  
 Lene, *v.* lean; *pret.* lenede, 2703; *i. p.* lenand, 1045, 2672.  
 Lenge, *v.* abide, remain, dwell, 72, 128, 152; 3 *s.* lengez, 129; *inf.* lengene, 1588.  
 Lengede, Lengez. *See* Lange, *v.*  
 Lengere, 736, 889, 1055, Lengare, 2154, *adv.* longer.  
 Lenghe, *s.* length, 1102, 1126.  
 Lenghene, *v.* lengthen, 2845.  
 Leppe, *v.* leap, 2084; *pl.* leppyne, 3697, lepyys, 3696; *pret.* lepe, 3427; *i. p.* leppande, 1460.  
 Lere, *v.* teach, 1035.  
 Leskes, *s. pl.* loins, 1097, 3279.  
 Lesse, *conj.* lest, 2300, 2439.  
 Lesse, *adj.* false; withowityne lesse = truly, certainly, 139.  
 Lesyng, 3079, Lesyng, 3721, *s.* losing.  
 Let. *See* Lette.  
 Letande, *i. p.* (?) appearing, 3831.  
 Lete. *See* Lat.  
 Letherly, *adv.* wickedly, 1268.  
 Lett, *v.* cease, desist, 2325.  
 Lette, *v.* hinder, prevent, 473, 1269, 1721; *pret.* let, 3720.  
 Lette, *s.* hindrance, 92, 458.  
 Lettyng, *s.* hindrance, 371.  
 Leue. *See* Leefe.  
 Leue, *v.* believe, 702, 1097; 2 *s.* leues, 2593.  
 Leuenyng, *s.* lightning, 2463.  
 Leuere. *See* Leefe.  
 Leueré, *s.* delivery; hence, granted or assigned place, 241, livery or uniform; and hence, the different parts of an army, 3078. *See* Livery in Halliwell.  
 Leues, *s. pl.* leaves, 1708.  
 Leuetenaunte, *s.* lieutenant, viceroy, 646.  
 Leuez, *v.* 3 *s.* lives, 1731.  
 Life, 3723, Liffe, 1036, *v.* live; *pret.* lifede, 3961; *p.p.* liffyde, 252.  
 Lifeliche, *adj.* (?) real, actual, 3427.  
 Liffe, *s.* life, 430, 1820.  
 Lifte, *v. pret.* lifted, 3349.  
 Lige, Ligge. *See* Lege.  
 Liggez. *See* Lygge.

- Lighames. *See* Lyghame.  
 Lightly, *adv.* 3287.  
 Likez. *See* Lyke.  
 Likynge, *s.* pleasure, 130, 3381.  
 Lire, 3281, 3954, Lyre, 4272, *s.* face, visage. A.S. *hleor*.  
 Liste, *s.* desire, pleasure, 12.  
 Liste, *v. pret.* desired, 4270.  
 Lofte; on lofte = aloft, 163, 916, 942; appone lofte = aloft, 2800, 3623.  
 Loge, 421, Lugge, 152, 454, *v.* lodge; *pl.* lugegez, 2280; *pret.* luggede, 486; *i. p.* lugande, 1045.  
 Loke, 1643, Luk, 3209, Luke, 135, *v.* look; 3 *s.* lukez, 113; *pl.* lukkes, 751; *pret.* loked, 119, lukede, 1313; *imp.* 2 *pl.* lokeze, 1640; *i. p.* lukande, 3108.  
 Lokerde, *p.p.* curled, 779. *Sc.* *lokker*, to curl (Jamieson).  
 Lokkes, *s. pl.* locks, 778, 3280.  
 Lond, *s.* land; *pl.* londes, 878, londez, 427, 1691, 1933.  
 Londis, *v.* 3 *s.* lands, 3922.  
 Longez, *v. pl.* belong, 2828; *pret.* lonngede, 3080.  
 Loo, *int.* lo, 974, 1349.  
 Loos, 254, Loosse, 474, *s.* praise, renown, good name.  
 Lordchepez, 1727, Lordehippez, 253, 646, Lordechipez, 1970, *s. pl.* lordships.  
 Lordliche, 3638, Lordlyche, 570, 2032, 2281, 2541, *adj.* lordly.  
 Lordly, 2230, 2479, Lordely, 1818, 2227, *adv.* in a lordly manner.  
 Lorne, *p.p.* lost, 1153.  
 Losels, *s. pl.* rascals, wretches, 252.  
 Losse, 1599, Lossene, 2845, *v.* lose.  
 Lotes, *s. pl.* features, 1462. *See* Lates.  
 Lothely, *adj.* loathly, horrid, ugly, 778, 3234.  
 Lothely, *adv.* horridly, 2074, 3849.  
 Lothene, 778, Lothyne, 1097, *adj.* hateful, detestable.  
 Loue, *v.* praise, 369; *p.p.* louede, 4305.  
 Louely, 3478, Louelyly, 2292, *adv.* in a loving manner, kindly.  
 Louerde, *s.* lord, 3918.  
 Lowde; on l. = aloud, 1781, 2032.  
 Lowe, *s.* flame, 194.  
 Lowkkide, *p.p.* closed, 3953.  
 Lowrande, *i. p.* lowering, looking sad, 1446, 4338.  
 Lowtttes, *v. pl.* bow, 505; *pret.* lowttede, bowed before, 2634, 3285, 3408.  
 Loyotour, *s.* embroidery (Perry), 3252.  
 Lufe, *s.* some part of a ship, 744, 750. "Loof. The windward side of a ship. . . . It is not easy to make out exactly what part of the ship the *loof* originally was. Du. *loef* is a rullock or oar-pin, scal-mus, but the loof was a timber of considerable size, by which the course of the ship was directed; it would seem to be the large oar used by way of a rudder, or perhaps the tiller." *Wedgwood's Dictionary of English Etymology*.  
 Lufe, 703, 705, Luffe, 1256, 3381, *s.* love, sake.  
 Luffe, *v.* love, 1597; *pl.* luffes, 12.  
 Luffiche, 3623, Luffy, 1459, *adj.* lovely.  
 Luffy, 505, Luffly, 248, Lufflyche, 2674, *adv.* in a lovely manner.  
 Lugande, Lugegez, Lugge, Luggede. *See* Loge.  
 Lughe. *See* Laughene.

- Luk, Lukande, Luke, Lukkes. *See* Loke.
- Lukyngē, *s.* looking, 139.
- Lumpe, 1819, Lumppe, 1814, 2230, *s.* crowd, throng.
- Lunggez, *s. pl.* lungs, 2168.
- Lussche, *s.* (?) thrust, 3848.
- Lutterde, *adj.* bowed, bent, 779.  
*Sc. luttaird.* (Jamieson.)
- Luyschene, *v. pl.* (?) lash, 1459 ;  
*pret.* luyschede, 2226.
- Lyarde, *adj.* gray, 2542, 3280.  
"Liart, liarde, gris, gris-pommelé."  
*Burguy.* *See* Liart in Jamieson.
- Lyefe, 2845, Lyffe, 1269, *s.* life ;  
*pl.* lyfez, 1217.
- Lyf, *v.* live, 1903 ; 3 *s.* lyffes,  
405, 537 ; *p.p.* lyffede, 868.
- Lyfte, *s.* sky, 4272.
- Lygeaunce, *s.* allegiance, 244.
- Lygge, *v.* lie ; 2 *s.* lygges, 1060 ;  
3 *s.* lyggez, 805, lys, 3938 ; *pl.*  
lygges, 459, lyggez, 1184, liggez,  
1773.
- Lyghame, *s.* body, 3281, 3286 ;  
*pl.* lighames, 4269. A.S. *lichama.*
- Lyghte, *v.* light, alight, 1270 ; 3  
*s.* lyghttez, 933 ; *pret.* lyghte, 3594 ;  
*p.p.* lyghttede, 1782.
- Lyghte, *v.* lighten, 2846 ; 3 *s.*  
lyghttys, 368 ; *pl.* lyghttys, 251.
- Lyghtenande, *i. p.* lightning,  
flashing, 2463.
- Lygmane, *s.* liegeman, 420 ; *pl.*  
lyggemene, 1518.
- Lyke, *v.* be pleased, rejoice, 195 ;  
*usually an impers. v.* likez, 383,  
lykes, 55, lykez, 1190, lykys, 32,  
186, pleases ; *pret.* lykede, 599 ;  
*i. p.* lykande, being pleased, 248,  
pleasing, 497, 2406.
- Lykyngē, *s.* pleasure, 701, 2673.
- Lyme, 459, 1097, Lymme, 1046,  
*s.* limb.
- Lympē, *v.* happen, befall, 1643 ;  
*pl.* lymppe, incur, 3119 ; *lymp-*  
*pede*, gained, 3415, *lympyde*, 292  
*p.p.* lymppyde, incurred, suffered,  
875.
- Lynd, *s.* tree, 454, 486.
- Lyndwhyttē, *s. pl.* linnets, 2674.  
*Sc. lintwhite* ; A.S. *linet*, flax ; *linet-*  
*wig*, flax-finch, linnēt.
- Lyone, *s.* lion, 139 ; *pl.* lyouns,  
3234.
- Lyppe, *s.* lip, 119 ; *pl.* lyppys,  
1011, lippis, 3954.
- Lyre. *See* Lire.
- Lys. *See* Lygge.
- Lythe, 1653. *Read* Kythe.
- Lythe, *adj.* gentle, 1517, 1600.
- Lythe, *v.* listen, 12 ; *pl.* lythes,  
1810.
- Lytherly, *adv.* badly, 1448.
- Lythes, *s. pl.* (?) leases, tene-  
ments, 994. *See* *Lith* in Glossary  
to *Havelok the Dane*, ed. Skeat, and  
*Lud* in Glossarj to *William of*  
*Palerne*, ed. Skeat.
- Lythyre, *adj.* wicked, bad, 23.
- Lytille, 1021, Litylle, 1719,  
Lyttille, 754, *adj. or adv.* little.
- Lytte, (?) little, 550.
- Lyue, *s.* life, 1775, 3067, 3520.
- Lywyngē, *s.* living, 5.
- Ma, *adj.* more, 1829.
- Mace, *s.* 4210.
- Mache, *s.* match, 4070.
- Machede, *p.p.* matched, 1533,  
2904.
- Maches, *s.* (?) 2950.
- Mad, *v. pret.* made, 50, 112 ; *p.p.*  
mad, 77.
- Made, *s.* madness, 4271.
- Magestee, 1236, Maicstee, 1303,  
*s.* majesty.
- Maister, 990, 2870, Mayster, 938,  
3652, *s.* master.
- Maisterede, *v. pret.* mastered, 2683.

- Makk, *s.* companion, fellow, 1166.
- Makles, *adj.* peerless, matchless, 3875.
- Malle, *v.* hammer, beat, 3038, 4037; 3 *s.* mallis, 3841.
- Maluesye, *s.* a kind of wine, 236.
- Malyncoly, *s.* 2204, 4209.
- Man, *adj.* See Mayne.
- Manace, *s.* menace, threatening, 3383.
- Manacede, *v. pret.* threatened, 1383.
- Manere, *s.* manor, 4310.
- Manere, *s.* manner, 1383.
- Mangere, *s.* 1588. Qu. Maugree, ill will.
- Manhede, *s.* manhood, 399, 434, 4278.
- Manliche, *adj.* manly, 2417.
- Manrede, *s.* homage, service, 127.
- Manykyne, *adj.* of many kinds, 3174.
- Manys = man's, 76.
- Marasse, 2505, Marras, 1534, Marrasse, 2014, *s.* morass, marsh.
- Marche, *s.* frontier, boundary, 318, 1588; *pl.* marches, 631, marchez, 1232, marchys, 77.
- Marchez-mene, *s. pl.* bordermen, borderers, 1237.
- Marras, Marrasse. See Marasse.
- Marre, *v.* mar, 2015.
- Marters, *s. pl.* martyrs, 1066.
- Martyre, *v.* kill, 560.
- Mase, *v.* 3 *s.* makes, 960.
- Masondewes, *s. pl.* hospitals, 3038.  
Fr. *maison-dieu*, lit. house of God, a name suggested by Matthew xxv.
- Maugree, 1238, Mawgree, 426, in spite of.
- Maundement, *s.* commandment, order, 1587.
- Mawene, *p.p.* mown, 2507.
- Mawgree. See Maugree.
- Mawncelet. Read Mawntelet, *s.* mantling, or lambrequin, 3632.  
"Mantling, or Lambrequin:—a small Mantle, generally of crimson velvet or silk and lined with ermine, with tassels, attached to the Basinet or Helm, and hanging down over the shoulders of the wearer."—*Boutell's Heraldry* (3rd edit. 1864), p. 115. In the present instance the mantelet was of silver mail.
- Mayles, 2250, Maylez, 904, 1487, 1764, *s. pl.* chain or ringed armour.
- Mayne, *s.* might, power, 4326.
- Mayne, 427, 434, Man, 4071, *adj.* main.
- Maynoyrede, *p.p.* worked, 2507.
- Mayntene, *v.* maintain, 399; *p.p.* mayntenyde, 4278.
- Mayster. See Maister.
- Maysterfulle, *adj.* victorious, 3413.
- Mede, *s.* meed, reward, 666, 1068.
- Mede, *s.* mead, 1290, 2506.
- Medille, *s.* middle, waist, 2205, 4168.
- Medille-erthe, 2951, Medillerthe, 3239, *s.* world.
- Medillewarde, 2904, Medilwarde, 3766, Medylwarde, 1988, *s.* centre of an army.
- Mekille, Mekylle, *adj.* great, 1236; *adv.* much, greatly, 711, 1314, 1382.
- Mele, *v.* speak, talk, 990; 3 *s.* meles, 382, 679, 1781; *pl.* mellys, 3652; *imp.* 2 *pl.* melys, 2871.
- Melione, *s.* million, 3144.
- Melle, *v.* mix, join, meddle, deal with, 938; *pl.* mellis, 2904.
- Melles, *v.* 3 *s.* hammers, smites, 2950. See Malle.
- Mellyd, *adj.* (?) made like a *mall* or hammer, hammer-headed, 4210.
- Mellys, Melys. See Mele.

- Mendement, *s.* amendment, 989, 1236.
- Mendynantez, *s. pl.* (?) mendicants, beggars, 667.
- Mene, *v.* speak, tell, 3556, speak of, mention, 2869; 3 *s.* menys, talks, 3478, 3653.
- Menede, *v. pret.* meant, 891.
- Mengene, *v. pl.* mingle, join, 4173; *p.p.* mengede, 3632.
- Menske, *s.* honour, 126, 399, 433.
- Menskes, *v.* 3 *s.* honours, 1303, 2871.
- Mensksfully, *adv.* honourably, 631, 940, 1233, 1988.
- Mereswyne, *s.* dolphin, 1091. "Hic delfis. pis mere-swin." *Ælfric's Grammar*, Cotton MS. Julius A ii, leaf 31.
- Merke, *v.* proceed, 351, 427, 4320, assign, 1068; 3 *s.* merkes, cuts, 2206; *pl.* merkene, 4168; *p.p.* merked, formed, made, 1304, merkyde, 952.
- Merkes, *s. pl.* bounds, 461, 1147.
- Merrede, 1238, 3555, Merride, 3322, *p.p.* marred.
- Meruaile, Meruayle, *s.* marvel, wonder, 2682, 2906.
- Meruailles, *v.* 3 *s.* marvels, 1314.
- Meruailous, 260, Meruaylous, 428, Meruayllous, 2287, Meruelyous, 236, *adj.* marvellous, wonderful; *superl.* meruelyousteste, 129.
- Mery, *adj.* merry, cheerful, 260; *comp.* meriere, 3175; *superl.* meryeste, 3239.
- Messes, *s. pl.* masses, 4018, 4333.
- Mett, *v. pret.* dreamed, 3223.
- Mette, 2491, *s.* meat, food; *pl.* metes, 75, metez, 1298.
- Mette, *v.* meet, 434; *pret.* mett, 1175, 3841.
- Mette-fulle, *adj.* measure-full, in good measure, 2343.
- Mette while, *s.* measured time, or scanty time, 3903. A.S. *mcete*, moderate, little.
- Meue, *v.* move, 2001.
- Misdoo, *v.* ill-use, wrong, 126.
- Mo, 844, 885, Moo, 856, 2500, *adj.* more.
- Mobles, *s. pl.* movable goods, 666.
- Mode, *s.* mind, 3222, 3382, 3454.
- Modyr, Modyre, *s.* mother, 2, 983, 1211.
- Mofes, *v.* 3 *s.* moves, 3323.
- Molde, *s.* mould, earth, 129, 952, 975.
- Mone, *v.* must, shall, 813, 1155, 2186, 2436, 2820.
- Monee, *s.* money, 2343.
- Monethe, *s.* month, 318.
- Montayngnes, 3238, Mowntayngnes, 4259, *s. pl.* mountains.
- Monte, *s.* mountain, 938, 1069; *pl.* montez, 874, 1175, mowntes, 3535, 3556.
- Mony, *adj.* many, 3623, 3671.
- Moo. See Mo.
- More, *adj.* greater, 1018.
- Morne, *s.* morning, morrow, 1223.
- Morne-while, *s.* morning time, 2001, 3223.
- Morthires, *v.* 2 *s.* murderest, 1315; *pl.* mourtherys, 4259; *p.p.* morthirede, 976.
- Morwene, *s.* morning, 3476.
- Moste, *v.* must, 250, 263, 449; *impers. v.* 2491.
- Moste, *adj.* greatest, 3322, 4221.
- Mot, 346, Mote, 4104, Mott, 136, 1306, Motte, 227, *v.* must, may.
- Mournande, *i. p.* mourning, 4333.
- Mourtherys. See Morthires.
- Mowe, *v. subj. sg.* be able, may, 3812.

- Moyllez, *s. pl.* mules, 2287.  
 Muskadelle, *s.* a kind of wine, 236.  
 Myche, *adj.* great, 1166, 1214, 2033; *adv.* much, greatly, 1068.  
 Myde, *adj.* mid, 3841.  
 Myddes, 1293, Myddys, 2176, *s.* midst.  
 Mylde, *adj.* mild, 1211.  
 Mynde, *s.* memory, 1221.  
 Mynsters, *s. pl.* monasteries, 3038.  
 Myrthez, *s. pl.* mirths, 1532.  
 Myschefe, *s.* trouble, misfortune, 667, 3437.  
 Myse-bide, *v.* offer injury, 3083.  
 Mysese, *s.* trouble, grief; and hence, those who are in trouble, 667.  
 Myshappene, *v.* meet with misfortune, 3454.  
 Myskaries, *v.* 3 *s.* comes to grief, 2872; *p. p.* myscaryede, 1778, myskaryede, 1237.  
 Mysse, *s.* wrong, injury, 1315, 3057.  
 Myste, *s.* mist, 2001.  
 Myx, *s.* vile wretch; lit. dung, 989. A.S. *meox*, dung, muck. "Ne myhte þe *mixes* þo wurse don, Bute a-mong þeoues on rode an-hon."  
 Jesus Coll. MS. 29, leaf 265, back.  
 Na, *adj.* no, 160, 310, 1644.  
 Nakyne, *adj.* of no kind, 2350.  
 Nane, *adj.* no, 213, 565; *pron.* none, 657, 2613.  
 Nauylle, *s.* navel, 979.  
 Naye, *s.* a naye = an aye, an egg, 3283. Compare *Neiz* in *William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat, l. 83.  
 Ne, *adv.* not, 230, 1117; *conj.* nor, 10, 161.  
 Nedes, 263, 1266, Nedez, 1329, Nedys, 470, *s. pl.* business.  
 Nedyllle, *s.* needle (of a compass), 753.  
 Neghe, *v.* draw nigh, approach, 2433.  
 Neghe, *adv.* closely, exactly, 2658.  
 Neke-bone, *s.* neckbone, 2771.  
 Nere, *adv.* nearly, almost, 805, 1127, 1135.  
 Nese, *s.* nose, 2248.  
 Neuewe, *s.* nephew, 689.  
 Newzere, *s.* new-year, 78.  
 Newzers daye, *s.* new-year's day, 90.  
 Nextte, *adj.* nearest, 2422.  
 Neynesome, nine in all, 523. See *Sum* in Richthofen's *Altfriesisches Wörterbuch*.  
 Nobille, Nobylle, *adj.* noble, 16, 18, 68; *superl.* nobileste, 3439, 3935.  
 Nobilly, *adv.* nobly, 1815.  
 Noblay, *s.* splendour, 76, 2433.  
 Noghte, *pron.* naught, 1191; *adv.* not, 135, 419, 1174.  
 Nokyne, *adj.* of no kind, 430.  
 Nombirde, 2887, Nowmerde, 2658, *p. p.* numbered.  
 Nombyre, 2831, 3068, Nowmbre, 2884, Nowmbyre, 2942, 3438, Nowmer, 884, *s.* number; *pl.* nommers, 591, nowmbirs, 3935.  
 Nomene, 1437, Nommene, 1868, 1872, 2477, *p. p.* taken.  
 Nommers. See Nombyre.  
 None, *s.* the ninth hour of the day (at the equinox, none = 3 P.M.), 78.  
 Nonis, 3297, Nonys, 1927, *s.* nonce; for the nonce, for the occasion.  
 Nonkyns, *adj.* of no kind, 2363.  
 Nonne, *adj.* no, 3365.  
 Nonnes, *s. pl.* nuns, 3539.  
 Noo, *adj.* no, 4149.

- Not, *v.* 1 *s.* know not, 977.
- Notez, *v.* *pl.* make use of, 1815.  
A.S. *notian*.
- Nother, 2367, Nothyre, 10, Nowthire, 161, 429, *conj.* neither.
- Notte, *s.* use; hence, business, 1816. A.S. *notu*.
- Nowene, 1806; thi nowene = thine own.
- Nowmbirs, Nowmbre, Nowmbyre, Nowmer. *See* Nombyre.
- Nowmerde. *See* Nombirde.
- Nowthire. *See* Nother.
- Noyes, *v.* 3 *s.* harms, grieves, 1816, 2248.
- Nurree, *s.* nursling, 689.
- Nyghtgale, *s.* nightingale, 929.
- Nyghttes, *v.* 2 *s.* gettest benighted, 451.
- Nynne = nine, 3439
- O, 656, 1217, 3480, Oo, 3907, *prep.* on, in.
- O, *prep.* of, from, 3906.
- Occedente, *s.* occident, west, 2360.
- Occyane, *s.* ocean, 31.
- Oches, *v.* 3 *s.* hacks, breaks, 2565; *pl.* ochene, 3675; *pret.* ochede, 4245. "*Oscher, ocher, ébrécher, entailler, briser.*" *Burguy*.
- Ocupyes, *v.* 3 *s.* holds, occupies, 1663, 2360.
- Of = from, 2540.
- Oghte, *pron.* aught, 1014, 1269, 2802.
- Okene, *adj.* oaken, 2722.
- Olawe, *adv.* below, down, 1517.
- Olyfaunte, *s.* elephant, 2339; *pl.* olyfantez, 1286, olyfauntez, 2288.
- Olyfe, *adv.* of life, from life, 802, 1139; bringe olyfe = kill.
- One = on, *prep.* 74, 116, 753.
- One, *adv.* alone, only, 826, 937, 2519, 2592. A.S. *áne*. Myne one, by myself, 3230; by myne one, by myself, 704; be oure one, by ourselves, 1345; thyne one, thyself, 466; with hyme one, with himself, 597; of hyme one, of himself, 1793; be thame one, by themselves, 3195.
- Ones, 135, 179, Onez, 1109, 1756, *adv.* once.
- One-seeande, *i.* *p.* looking on, 525.
- Onone, *adv.* anon, quickly, soon, 571, 1178, 1231.
- Ony, *adj.* any, 2519, 3489, 4215.
- Oo. *See* O.
- Opyne, *adj.* open, 2147.
- Or, *prep.* ere, before, 1269, 1788; *conj.* ere, before, 374, 529, 1680.
- Ordayne, *v.* *pret.* arranged, 1991; *p.p.* ordande, ordained, 1621.
- Orfraeez, 902, Orfrayes, 2142, *s.* gold embroidered work, or fringe of gold. "*Orfrais, . . . étoffe brochée d'or, broderie en or, frange d'or.*" *Burguy*.
- Orrible, *adj.* horrible, 1240.
- Oryent, 2289, Oryentte, 1904, *s.* orient.
- Osay, *s.* a kind of drink, 202.
- Oslante, *adv.* aslant, 2254, 3923.
- Ostage, *s.* *pl.* hostages, 3187, 3208.
- Ostayande, *i.* *p.* warring, or leading an army, 3502. "*Ostoier, osteier, osteer, faire la guerre, guerroyer, mener ost, attaquer son ennemi.*" *Burguy*.
- Oste, *s.* host, 1624; *pl.* ostes, 1240, ostez, 2387.
- Other-while, *adv.* at another time, 1145.
- Othire, *adj.* other, 3973; *pron.* *pl.* others, 3932.
- Ouer-charggede, *p.p.* overburdened, overpowered, 1749.
- Ouer-fallene, *p.p.* fallen upon, 1154.

- Ouergylte, *p.p.* gilded over, 207.
- Ouer-hande, *s.* upper hand, mastery, 4300.
- Ouerkeste, *v. pret.* overthrew, 3932.
- Ouerlynge, *s.* superior, lord, 289, 520, 710.
- Ouer-rane, *v. pret.* overran; *p.p.* ouer-ronne, 1206.
- Ouer-reche, *v.* reach over, afford, 1508; *pl.* ouerrechez, reach over, 921.
- Ouer-rydez, *v. pl.* ride over; *p.p.* ouer-redyne, 1415, 1524.
- Ouersette, *p.p.* overthrown, 111, 2815, 4136.
- Ouer-swyngene, *v. pl.* overthrow, overturn, 1466.
- Ouer-whelme, *v.* overturn, 3261.
- Oundyde, 765, Ownde, 193, *adj.* wavy. *Her. ondee.*  
 "Hire *ownded* here, that sonnyssh  
 was of hewe,  
 She rente . . ."  
 Chaucer, *Troilus & Cryseyde*,  
 bk. iv. stanza cii.
- Ovyre-fallys, *v. pl.* fall over, 3677.
- Ower, *prep.* over, 747.
- Ownde. *See* Oundyde.
- Owte-iles, 30, Owtt illes, 2359, *s. pl.* foreign islands.
- Owte landes, 2607, Owte-londes, 2723, Owt-londys, 3697, *s. pl.* foreign countries.
- Owte-mowntes, *s. pl.* far off mountains, 3909.
- Owte ouer, 903, Owtt ouere, 2339, *adv.* outside, above.
- Owther, 110, 2413, Owthire, 964, *conj.* either.
- Owttraye, *v.* finish, overcome completely, ruin, do violence against, 642, 1010, 1328; 3 *s.* owtrayes, 1664; *p.p.* owterayed, 1952, owt-rayede, 2617, owttrayed, 2840.
- Pacokes, *s. pl.* peacocks, 182.
- Pales, 503, Palesse, 3913, Palez, 636, 718, *s.* palace; *pl.* palaisez, 1287.
- Palfray, *s.* 3143.
- Palle, *s.* a kind of rich silk or cloth, 1288, 2478, 3142.
- Palyd, 1287, Palyde, 1375, *p.p.* paled (*Her.*).
- Pape, *s.* pope, 229, 2327.
- Pare, *v.* (?) 4047.
- Parlement, *s.* parliament, 146.
- Party, *s.* part, 212; *pl.* partyes, parts, countries, 2596.
- Pas, *s.* pace, 3496.
- Passande, *i. p.* passing, more than, 2741, passant, 4184.
- Pastorelles, *s. pl.* herdmen, 3120.
- Patriarkes, *s. pl.* 3807.
- Paume, *s.* palm, 776.
- Paunsone, *s.* (?) piece of armour covering the paunch, 3458. "*Pancire, panchire*, la partie de l'armure qui couvre la panse ou le ventre." *Burguy.*
- Pauys, 3460, properly means a large shield, but it is by no means clear what is meant in this passage.
- Pausers, *s. pl.* men who bore the *pavis*, a large shield used to cover archers, 2831, 3004.
- Pavelyouns, 2624, Pauyllyons, 2478, *s. pl.* tents.
- Pawnee, *s.* piece of armour for the belly, 2075.
- Pawneche, *s.* paunch, 2076.
- Paye, *v.* satisfy, please, 4049; 3 *s.* payes, 2646; *p.p.* payede, 230.
- Payganys, *s. pl.* pagans, 4046.
- Payne, *s.* penalty, 2329; *pl.* paynez, 1546, 1632.
- Paynyme, *s.* pagan, 1377; *pl.* paynymes, 2835, paynymmez, 1544.



- Payses, *v. pl.* weight, load, 3037 ;  
*pret.* paysede, overloaded, weighed  
 down, 3042.  
 Payvese, *s. pl.* pavises, 3625.  
 Pecez, *s. pl.* pieces, 1825.  
 Pechelyne, *s. (?)* 1341.  
 Pekille, *s.* a kind of sauce made  
 of dripping, wine, mustard, and  
 onions, 1027. See the recipe *For*  
*Pykulle* in the *Liber Cure Cocorum*,  
 ed. Morris, p. 31.  
 Pelid, *v. pret.* thrust, drove (?),  
 3042.  
 Pelours. See Pylours.  
 Pendes, *v.* 3 *s.* belongs, 1612 ;  
*pl.* 2624.  
 Penowne, *s.* pennon, flag, 2917 ;  
*pl.* penouns, 2460.  
 Penselle, *s.* small pennon, streamer,  
 2076, 2411 ; *pl.* penselles, 2460,  
 pensels, 1289.  
 Percede, *v. pret.* pierced, 2075.  
 Peres, 146, Perez, 637, Peris,  
 1637, *s. pl.* peers.  
 Perfournede, *p.p.* performed, 672.  
 Perrie, 4184, Perrye, 2460, 3461,  
*s.* precious stones, jewelry.  
 Persayfes, *v.* 3 *s.* perceives, 4224 ;  
*pret.* persayfede, 1631, persayuede,  
 2811.  
 Persewes, *v.* 3 *s.* pursues, 2155 ;  
*pret.* persewede, 1476, persuede,  
 1377.  
 Pertly, *adv.* openly, 2917.  
 Pes, 2411, Pesse, 1542, *s.* peace.  
 Pesane, *s. (?)* 3458.  
 Peté, *s.* pity, 2812, 3043.  
 Payne. See Payne.  
 Pighte, Pyghte, *p.p.* pitched,  
 1287, 1290, set (with stones, &c.),  
 212, 3354, 3460 ; adorned (?), 3364.  
 Pilgram, *s.* pilgrim, 3475.  
 Pilgremage, *s.* 3496.  
 Pillione hatt, *s.* 3460. A kind  
 of hat, at one time worn only by  
 doctors in theology, but afterwards  
 more generally. See Pecock's *Re-*  
*pressor*, ed. Babington, pp. 88, 89,  
 and Glossary.  
 Pilour, *s.* robber, 2533.  
 Plas, *s.* place, 4013.  
 Plasche, *s.* marshy place, 2798.  
 Platers, *s. pl.* dishes, 182.  
 Platez, *s. pl.* plates, 2075.  
 Plattes, *s. pl.* purple cloths, 2478.  
 "Platta, purpura, vel pannus pur-  
 purei coloris." *Ducange*. Or more  
 probably *plattes* is a *pl. v.* meaning,  
 strike, beat. A.S. *plættian*.  
 Playne, *adj.* level, smooth, 1290.  
 Playsterede, *adj.* plastered, 3042.  
 Plenerly, *adv.* fully, 2608, 3498.  
 Plenteuous, *adj.* abundant, 1028.  
 Plesande, *i. p.* pleasing, pleasant,  
 11, 4049.  
 Plesaunce, *s.* delight, enjoyment,  
 3140.  
 Pleyne, *v.* complain, 1217.  
 Plumpe, *s.* crowd, 2199.  
 Plyande, *adj.* flexible, 777.  
 Plytte, *s.* condition, 683.  
 Pomarie, *s.* fruit-garden, orchard,  
 3364.  
 Pome, *s.* globe, 3354.  
 Pomelle, *s.* small globe (probably  
 used as an ornament on a flag-  
 staff), 1289.  
 Pontyfficalles, *s. pl. (?)* bishops,  
 4335.  
 Pople, 100, 1204, Popule, 11, 52,  
*s.* people.  
 Porke despyne, *s.* porcupine, 183.  
 Porkes, *s. pl.* swine, 3121.  
 Porte, *s.* port, 2609 ; (?) 3625 ;  
*pl.* portes, gates, 503, 568, portez,  
 portholes, 749.  
 Postles, *s. pl.* apostles, 2413.  
 Potestate, *s.* power, potentate,  
 2327.

- Poueralle, *s.* poor folk, 3120.  
 Pouere, *adj.* poor, 3540.  
 Pouerte, *s.* poverty, 1545.  
 Pourpour, *s.* purple, 1375.  
 Powere, *s.* forces, 1635, 1925, 2155.  
 Poyne, *v.* work upon, toil at, 2624.  
 Poyntez, *s. pl.* points, 767.  
 Praye, *s.* prey, booty, 3003, 3010.  
 Prekande, Prekes, Prekys, Prekande, &c. *See* Prike.  
 Preker, Prekkers. *See* Prikkere.  
 Presant, *adj.* present, 1257.  
 Presante, *s.* present, 1021.  
 Prese, *v.* press, 1583; 3 *s.* presez, 1374; *pret.* presede, 2199.  
 Presone, 1546, Presonne, 1632, *s.* prison.  
 Presonere, *s.* prisoner, 2536; *pl.* presoners, 1583, 1636.  
 Presse, *s.* crowd, 1477, pressure, difficulty, 1522.  
 Preué, *adj.* privy, secret, 2005.  
 Preuely, 213, 896, 2648, Preualye, 1609, *adv.* privily, secretly.  
 Price, 94, 355, Pris, 500, 569, Pryce, 230, 746, Prys, 2, 718, Pryse, 1636, Prysse, 1545, *adj.* precious, worthy, good.  
 Prike, *v.* prick, ride, 2844; 2 *s.* prykkes, 2533; 3 *s.* prekez, 2156, prekys, 718; *pl.* prekes, 503; *imp.* 2 *pl.* prekez, 1609; *i. p.* prekande, 1545, prekkande, 2836; *p.p.* prykyd, pricked, 2648, prykkyde, stitched, 3608.  
 Prikkere, 2649, Preker, 1374, *s.* rider, horseman; *pl.* prekers, 355, 1479; prekkers, 2835.  
 Pris. *See* Price.  
 Priste, *adj.* ready, 1021, 4106.  
 Priestly, *adv.* readily, quickly, 2762.  
 Profire, *v.* offer battle, 2534; 2 *s.* profers, 2533; 3 *s.* profers, 1376, 3141.  
 Profire, 2857, Profyre, 1257, *s.*  
 Profitabile, *adj.* 11.  
 Proudely, 1374, Proudliche, 1287, Prowdliche, 3607, *adv.* proudly, splendidly.  
 Proue, *v.* prove, try, test, 1341; 3 *s.* proues, 1478; *pl.* prouene, 746, proues, 2464; *p.p.* prouede, 2596.  
 Proueste, 1611, 1889, Prouoste, 1632, *s.* provost.  
 Prowde, *adj.* proud, 2536, gay, splendid, 2076.  
 Prowesche, *s.* advantage, 1958.  
 Pryce, *adj.* *See* Price.  
 Pryce, 1924, 2788, Prys, 2751, Pryse, 2649, *s.* praise, prize.  
 Prykkes, Prykkyde. *See* Prike.  
 Pryme, *s.* the first hour of the day, 95, 4105.  
 Prys, Pryse, *s.* *See* Pryce.  
 Prys, Pryse, Prysse. *See* Price.  
 Prysonere, 1478, Pryssonere, 1610, *s.*  
 Purchase, *v.* gain, acquire, obtain, 3497.  
 Purpos, 687, Purposse, 2848, *s.*  
 Purple, 4184, Purpur, 3142, Purpure, 1288, Pourpour, 1375, *s.* purple.  
 Purtrayed, *p.p.* pourtrayed, 3607.  
 Puruayede, *v. pret.* provided, furnished, 2832; *p.p.* puruayede, 1925, 2477.  
 Purueaunce, *s.* provision, providing, 688.  
 Put, *v.* 2535; put of = ward off.  
 Pygges, *s. pl.* pigs, 183.  
 Pyghte. *See* Pighte.  
 Pyke, *s.* pike, staff, 3475; *pl.* pykes, points, claws, 777.  
 Pyke, *v.* pick; 2 *s.* pykes, 2534; pyke vp, 1636.

Pylotes, *s. pl.* pellets, stones used as missiles, 3037.

Pylours, 3004, Pelours, 2831, *s. pl.* (?) archers, or men who worked the engines.

Pymment, *s.* a kind of drink, 1028.

Pyne, *s.* suffering, 3043.

Pynne, *v.* pin, 4047.

Pypez, *s. pl.* pipes, fifes, 2030.

Quarte, 552, Qwerte, 3810, *s.* health, prosperity.

Quarterde, *p.p.* quartered, 1736.

Quod, *v. pret.* quoth, said, 140, 259, 1559.

Quytte, *v.* requite, 1788.

Qwarelles, *s. pl.* bolts (for the cross-bow), 2103.

Qwarters, *s. pl.* 3389.

Qwaste, *p.p.* quashed, crushed, 3389.

Qwat, 3868, Qwate, 4008, *pron* what.

Qwayntly, 2103, Qwayntely, 3261, *adv.* cunningly.

Qwen, 1222, Qwene, 26, 736, Qwenne, 48, Qwhene, 407, *adv.* when.

Qwene, 2189, 2871, Qwenne, 3998, *s.* queen.

Qwerte. *See* Quarte.

Qwhene. *See* Qwen.

Qwhilles, 4160, Qwhyte, 553, Qwhytes, 3480, 3651, 3810; Qwylls, 3505; *adv.* whilst, while; qwylls, 4047, qwylls, 4007, until.

Qwyke, 1736, Qwykke, 3810, *adj.* alive.

Qwylls, Qwylls. *See* Qwhilles.

Qwynne, *adv.* whence, 3503.

Qwythene, 4157, properly means *whence*; in this passage it seems to be miswritten for *Qwyne* = O that! Compare "Whyne myghte I" = "O that I might," l. 703.

*See* the preface to Hampole's *Pricke of Conscience*, ed. Morris, pp. xxv and xxvi.

Raas, *v.* tear, pluck away, 362; *pret.* rasede, tore, 2984.

Racches, *s. pl.* hounds, 3999.

Rade, *adj.* frightened, 1995, 2881.

Rade, *s.* fear, dread, 3896.

Rade. *See* Ryde.

Radly, *adv.* quickly, 1529, 3815. A.S. *hrædlice*.

Radnesse, *s.* fear, dread, terror, 120, 310.

Raghte. *See* Reche.

Raike, 1525, Rayke, 2985, *s.* course, path.

Raissede, *p.p.* raised, 2057.

Rane. *See* Ryne.

Ranez, *s. pl.* thickets, brushwood, 923. *See* Ronez in *Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight*, ed. Morris, l. 1466.

Ranke, 2271, Rannke, 1474, 1764, 2138, *adj.* rank, strong.

Rankour, *s.* 1666.

Raply, *adv.* swiftly, 1763.

Rappyd, *v. pret.* rapped, smote, 785.

Rarede, *v. pret.* roared, 784, 1124.

Rasches, *v. pl.* dash, 2107.

Rasede. *See* Raas.

Raskaille, *s.* rabble, 2881.

Rathe, *adj.* swift, quick, 2550.

Rathe, *adv.* quickly, speedily, 1275, 1332, 1668, 2022.

Rathly, 237, Raythely, 2880, *adv.* quickly.

Raughte. *See* Reche.

Raunsake, *v.* search, 4304; 3 *s.* ransakes, 3939; *pl.* ransakes, 1884; *imp.* 2 *pl.* rawnsakes.

Raunsone, *s.* ransom, 1528.

- Raunsone, 466, 1276, 1508, Rawn-  
sone, 3275, *v.* ransom, levy ran-  
som upon; *pret.* raunsounde, 293,  
329; *p.p.* raunsound, 100, rawn-  
sonede, 2667.
- Raayschett, *v. pret.* ravished, 294.
- Rawe, *s.* row; on rawe = in a  
row, in order, one after the other,  
238, 633, 1292.
- Rawghte. *See* Reche.
- Rawmpyde, *v. pret.* ramped, 794.
- Rawndoune, *s.* swiftness, violence,  
impetuosity, 2985. *See* Randon in  
Roquefort.
- Rawnsakes. *See* Raunsake.
- Rawnsone. *See* Raunsone.
- Rayke, *v.* proceed, go; 3 *s.* raykes,  
1762, raykez, 889, 1057; *pret.* ray-  
kede, 237; *i. p.* raykande, 3469.
- Rayke, *s.* *See* Raike.
- Raylide, *p.p.* clothed, covered,  
3263.
- Raymede, *p.p.* (?) 100. Halliwell  
has, "*Rame.* To rob, or plunder."
- Raythely. *See* Rathly.
- Reale, 524, Realle, 179, 221, 411,  
Rialle, 1993, Ryalle, 53, 74, 2138,  
Ryealle, 17, *adj.* royal, kingly,  
noble; *superl.* realeste, 175, 1410.
- Realtee, *s.* royalty, 155, 228, 423;  
*pl.* ryalltes, 3214, ryalltez 1665,  
royaltez, 4005.
- Rebanes, *s. pl.* ribbons, 3255.
- Rebawde, *s.* ribald, rascal, vaga-  
bond, 1333; *pl.* rebawdez, 1416,  
1705.
- Rebawdous, *adj.* ribald, 456.
- Rebelle, *adj.* rebellious, 2040.
- Rebuke, *v.* 1333; *p.p.* rebukkede,  
4283, rebuyked, 1445, rebuykkyde,  
2234, rebuykyde, 867, 1705, 2153.
- Reche, *v.* reach, stretch forth the  
hand in giving or receiving; hence,  
hand over, give, take, draw, &c., 3  
*s.* reches, 1111, 2252, rechez, 792;  
*pret.* raghte, 2766, raughte, 1527,  
1884, 3352, rawghte, 3456, rechede,  
1090, 3350, 4218; *p.p.* raghte,  
2666, rechide, 1043.
- Reched, *s.* (?) richness, 3263.
- Reches, *s.* riches, wealth, 2667,  
3571.
- Recheste, *adj.* richest, 155.
- Reconsaillez, *v.* 3 *s.* reconciles,  
3130.
- Recreaunt, *adj.* recreant, 2334.
- Red, 2932. *See* Rede, *v.*
- Reddour, *s.* fear, dread, 109, 485,  
1418. *Su. Goth.* *rædde*, fear.
- Reddour, *s.* rigour, 1456. *O. Fr.*  
*redour*, *reddur*, rigour, severity.
- Rede, 550, 2369, Red, 2932, *v.*  
advise; interpret, 3228; *p.p.* rede,  
discerned, 2921.
- Rede, 995, 2144, Reedde, 3457,  
Reede, 795, 1526, *adj.* red.
- Redely, 1472, 2070, Redily, 363,  
Redyly, 1207, 1526, *adv.* readily,  
quickly.
- Redene. *See* Ryde.
- Redy, *v.* make ready, prepare,  
4137; *pl.* redyes, 1427.
- Redyne. *See* Ryde.
- Reedde. *See* Rede.
- Refe, *v.* rob, take away, deprive  
of; *pret.* refede, 959, refte, 295,  
1475; *p.p.* refede, 1820, refte,  
1206, 1733, rewede, 3315.
- Regale, *s.* regalia, 4207.
- Regestre, *s.* register, 113.
- Reghte, *adv.* right, 1057, 1668,  
just, 1301.
- Reghttes, *v.* 3 *s.* rights, puts to  
rights, 3815; *pl.* reghttez, 1454,  
ryghttene, 3618.
- Regne, 398, Regnne, 4005,  
Ryngne, 3214, *v.* reign; 3 *s.* regnes,  
310, regnez, 287, ryngnes, 2266;  
*pl.* rengnez, 865; *pret.* regnede,  
293, 3273, rengnede, 3272, reynede,  
175, ryngnede, 228; *i. p.* regnande,  
2665.

- Rehersene, *v.* relate, tell, say, 3229; 3 *s.* rehersys, 3206; *pret.* rehersedede, 1666.
- Rehetes, 411, Rehetez, 3198, *v.* 3 *s.* cheers; *pret.* rehetede, 221. O.Fr. *rehaïter*.
- Reke, *s.* smoke, 1041.
- Rekeneste, *adj.* (?) quickest, readiest, 4081. A.S. *recene*, soon, quickly.
- Rekenyng, 1678, Rekkynyng, 102, *s.* reckoning, account.
- Rekke, *v.* reck, care, 995, 2040; *pret.* roughthe, cared for, 3275.
- Rekkene, *v.* reckon, 1275, 2334.
- Reklesse, *adj.* reckless, careless, 922, 1670.
- Relayes, *v.* *pl.* relax, slacken, 1529.
- Releuis, *v.* *pl.* rally, 2278; *pret.* releuyde, 2234; *p.p.* releuede, 1207.
- Relikkis, *s.* *pl.* relies, 4207.
- Relyes, 4291, Relyez, 1882, *v.* *pl.* rally; *pret.* relyede, 1391.
- Relys, *v.* 3 *s.* reels, 2794.
- Remenaunt, *s.* remnant, remainder, 1553.
- Remmes. *See* Rewme.
- Remmes, 2197, Remys, 4155, *v.* 3 *s.* shouts, cries out; *pret.* remyd, 3894.
- Remowes, *v.* 3 *s.* removes, 1761.
- Renayede, *adj.* renegade, having renounced their faith, 2913, 3572, 3892.
- Rengnede, Rengnez. *See* Regne.
- Renke, *s.* man, 1057; *pl.* renkes, 1410, renkkes, 391, 1994, renkys, 17, 147, renkkez, 2135.
- Rennene, *v.* *pl.* run, 200.
- Rente, *s.* rent, tribute, 465; *pl.* rentez, 103, 995, renttez, 1509, 1667.
- Rependez, *v.* *pl.* hang back, 2107.
- Repent, *v.* *pret.* repented, 3894; repent, *impers.* *v.* 1392.
- Requit, *p.p.* paid, 1680.
- Rere, *v.* move, 2810. Cf. Dan. *röre sig*, to bestir oneself.
- Rereage, *s.* arrears, 1680.
- Rerebrace, *s.* 2566. "From the French *arriere-bras*. That part of plate armour which covered the arm from the shoulder to the elbow. In the reign of Edward II. only one plate at first protected the arm outside, being put on the sleeve of mail; but afterwards the rerebrace became a cylinder, consisting of two halves joined with hinges and clasps." Meyrick, *Glossary of Military Terms*.
- Rererys, *v.* 3 *s.* rears, 4249; *p.p.* rereryde, 4280.
- Rerewarde, *s.* rearguard, 1430, 1527, 1762.
- Resaywe, *v.* receive, 3587.
- Rescewe, 1752, Reschewe, 2243, Rescove, 4131, *v.* rescue; *p.p.* reschowed, 363.
- Reschewe, 3859, Reschewes, 433, Rescove, 1953, Rescows, 4137, *s.* rescue, deliverance.
- Resonabillye, *adv.* reasonably, 1508.
- Resone, 2041, Resoune, 174, 1668, *s.* reason, account.
- Restreynede, *p.p.* restrained, 2041.
- Retenewys, 3572, Retenuz, 1334, 1655, 2664, *s.* *pl.* retainers, followers.
- Retournes, *v.* *pl.* turn back, 1395.
- Reuare, 62, 1455, Reyuere, 424, Ryuere, 1292, *s.* river.
- Reuaye, 3275, Ryvaye, 3999, *v.* hunt by a river. "*Rivoier, riveier, chasser en rivière.*" *Burguy* under *Rive*.
- Reuelle; *s.* 1667.

- Reuelle, *v.* 1969.  
 Reuengyde, *p.p.* avenged, 1204.  
 Reuerssede, *v. pret.* turned down, 2070; *p.p.* reuersside, turned up, trimmed, 3255.  
 Reuertede, *v. pret.* turned over, 2918.  
 Reueste, *p.p.* dressed, clothed, 4334.  
 Rewdly. *See* Ruydly.  
 Rewe, *v.* have pity, 866; cause regret, 1678; 3 *s.* rewes, 3272.  
 Rewede. *See* Refe.  
 Rewfulle, *adj.* rueful, pitiful, sad, 1049.  
 Rewfully, *adv.* ruefully, sadly, 1523.  
 Rewghe. *See* Rewthe.  
 Rewllez, 1672, Rewlys, 509, *v.* 3 *s.* rules, governs; *pl.* rewles, 1455, rewlys, 726; *p.p.* rewlyde, 52.  
 Rewme, *s.* realm, 1207; *pl.* rewmes, 52, 66, 425, remmes, 49.  
 Rewthe, 888, 1430, 2197, Rewghe, 3859, *s.* pity, compassion, sorrow; rewthe werkes, sorrowful deeds, 3453, 3894.  
 Reynede. *See* Regne.  
 Reyuere. *See* Reuare.  
 Rialle. *See* Reale.  
 Riatours, *s. pl.* ravagers, 2034.  
 Richely, *adv.* 173.  
 Richeste, *adj.* 147.  
 Rigge, *s.* back, 800. A.S. *hrycg*.  
 Rightene, *v. pl.* put right, 1525.  
 Rightewissly, *adv.* righteously, 1554.  
 Rightwis, *adj.* righteous, 3989.  
 Riotes. *See* Ryot.  
 Riotous. *See* Ryotous.  
 Riste, 1969, Ryste, 108, 423, *v.* rest; 3 *s.* rystez, 2170; *pret.* risted, 485, rystede, 53; *p.p.* riste, 2235, ryste, 1428.  
 Rittez, 2138, Rittis, 3753, *v. pl.* break, tear.  
 Roche, *s.* rock, 1146, 3601.  
 Rochelle, *s.* a kind of wine, 203.  
 Rode. *See* Ryde.  
 Rode, *s.* rood, cross, 3217, 3559. A.S. *ród*.  
 Rog, *s.* (?) crowd, 3272. *See* roge in Ihre.  
 Roggede, *v. pret.* shook, 784.  
 Rollede, *p.p.* enrolled, 2641.  
 Romawns, *s. pl.* romances, 3200.  
 Romede, *v. pret.* roared, 784.  
 Romyez, *v.* 3 *s.* roars, 888; *pret.* romyede, 1124.  
 Rongene. *See* Rynge.  
 Ronnene. *See* Ryne.  
 Roo, *s.* rest, peace, quiet, 1751, 3362, 4304. A.S. *row*.  
 Roo, *s.* wheel, 3374. Fr. *roue*, Lat. *rota*.  
 Roo, *s.* roc, 922, 4000. A.S. *rá*.  
 Roode. *See* Ryde.  
 Roselde, 2880, Rosselde, 2793, *adj.* (?) brandished, shaken. Cf. Sw. *ruskla*, to shake; E. *rustle*.  
 Rosers, *s. pl.* rosetrees, 923.  
 Rosse, *s.* rose, 3457.  
 Rosselde. *See* Roselde.  
 Rossete, *adj.* russet, 237.  
 Rostez, *s. pl.* roasts, 1049.  
 Roughte. *See* Rekke.  
 Rounge. *See* Rynge.  
 Rowelle, *s.* wheel, 3262. "*Roele, rouele, roelle, roue, petite roue, rond, cerele; de rotula.*" Burguy.  
 Rowm, 1454, Rowme, 391, 432, Rowmme, 3470, *adj.* roomy, spacious.  
 Rowte, *v.* sleep; lit. snore, 108.  
 Rowte, 719, 1763, Rowtt, 1656, Rowtte, 390, 456, *s.* company, troop.

Rowtte, *s.* road, way, 379.

Roy, 411, 1670, Roye, 3200, 3273, *s.* king. Fr. *roi*, Lat. *rex*.

Royaltez. *See* Realtee.

Rungene. *See* Ryngne.

Rusche, *v.* rush, fall; cast, hurl, 1339, thrust, 2880; 3 *s.* rusches, falls, 2241, 2794, ruschez, rushes, 392, ruysches, 2983; *pl.* rusches, 2550, ruysches, hurl, dash, 2913; *pret.* ruschede, 2792, 2879, ruschte, 120.

Rusclede, *adj.* (?) ruckled, wrinkled, 1096. Cf. *ruck* in Wedgwood.

Ruyd, 1096, Ruyde, 1049, 1057, 1332, *adj.* rude.

Ruydly, 785, 794, Ruydlyche, 1877, Rewdly, 2810, *adv.* rudely.

Ruysches, Ruysches. *See* Rusche.

Ryalle. *See* Reale.

Ryalltez. *See* Realtee.

Ryally, *adv.* royally, 1472, 3613.

Rybbez, 1134, Rybbys, 1151, *s.* *pl.* ribs.

Ryche, *adj.* 108, 833.

Rydde, *adj.* fierce, 4117. *See* *Rid* in Jamieson.

Ryde, *v.* ride, 1876; 3 *s.* ryddis, 3540; *pl.* ryddez, 2849, rydene, 2809; *pret.* rade, 294, 853, rode, 1953, roode, 920; *pret. pl.* redene, 485; *p.p.* redene, 2598, redyne, 52, 100.

Ryealle. *See* Reale.

Ryfe, 362, Rywe, 2439, *v.* rive, rend, split, pierce; 3 *s.* ryfez, 794, 1474, ryvys, 3824; *pl.* ryffes, 2913.

Ryghte, *adv.* straight, 889.

Ryghttene. *See* Reghttes.

Ryghttez, 894, 1439, Ryghtys, 610, *s. pl.*

Ryghtwise, *adj.* righteous, 866.

Ryndes, 3363, Ryndez, 921, 1884, *s. pl.* trees.

Ryne, *v.* run, 109, 3990; 3 *s.* rynnez, 1121, rynnys, 31, 62, 540; *pret.* rane, 1526, 2881, rynnyde, 2965, rynnyd, 920; *pret. pl.* ron-nene, 922; *i. p.* rynnande, 392, 795.

Rynge, *v.* ring, 4332; *p.p.* rungene, 462, rounge, 1587, ronge, 976.

Ryngne, Ryngnede, Ryngnes. *See* Regne.

Rynisch, *adj.* either Rhenish, or strange, foreign, 203. *See* *Runisch* in Glossary to *Alliterative Poems*.

Rynnande, Rynnez, Rynnyde, &c. *See* Ryne.

Rynsede, *p.p.* rinsed, 3375.

Ryot, 456, 785, Ryott, 341, Ryotte, 923, 1883, *v.* ravage; (with the reflexive pronoun) run riot; 3 *s.* ryottez, 619, riotes, 3172.

Ryotous, 379, 432, Riotous, 363, *adj.*

Ryotte, *s.* uncontrolled license, riot, 294, 412; *pl.* riotes, 388, ryotes, 3893.

Rype, *v.* search, 1877; 3 *s.* rypes, 3940.

Rysses, *v.* 3 *s.* rises, 3660.

Ryste, Rystede, &c. *See* Riste.

Ryues, *s. pl.* (?) 1764.

Ryvaye. *See* Reuaye.

Ryve (= aryve), *v.* land, 3896.

Ryvys, Rywe. *See* Ryle.

Sa, *adv.* so, 3796, 3870.

Sabylle, 771, Sable, 2027, *s.* sable, black.

Sadde, *adj.* satisfied, 847. Ger. *satt*.

Sade, *adj.* sad, 3948; *comp.* sad-dare, 3289.

Sadilles, 1801, Sadylls, 1855, *s. pl.* saddles.

Sadly, 331, 1685, 2466, Saddly, 1458, *adv.*

- Safe, *v.* save, 3051.
- Sagge, *adj.* sage, wise, 814.
- Saghetyle, *v.* become reconciled, 330.
- Saise, *v.* 3 *s.* says, 1162; *imp.* 2 *pl.* saise, 1267.
- Sakles, 3986, 3992, Sakeles, 3399, *adj.* innocent.
- Sale, *s.* hall, 82, 91, 134, 409.
- Salle, 1364. *Read* Sable.
- Salle, *v.* shall, 16, 105, shalt, 111, 152.
- Salue, *v.* salute; 3 *s.* saluz, 87; *pret.* saluzed, 82, saluzede, 953.
- Salue, *s.* salve; *pl.* salnez, 2691.
- Salue, *v.* heal, 932; *p.p.* saluede, 2907.
- Sandes, 513. Perhaps a mistake for *sandesman*.
- Sandes-mane, *s.* messenger, 1419; *pl.* sandismene, 266.
- Sare, *adv.* sore, sorely, 134, 2248.
- Satanase, *s.* Satan, 3812.
- Satilles, *v.* *pl.* settle, descend, 2465.
- Saughte, *s.* peace, reconciliation, 1007, 1548, 3052.
- Saule, 666, 1062, Saulle, 2192, Sawle, 1169, *s.* soul.
- Saunke, *s.* blood, 179.
- Sawghte, *adj.* at peace, reconciled, peaceable, 3194, 4042.
- Sawle. *See* Saule.
- Sawtere, 3316, Sawtire, 3421, *s.* psalter.
- Sawturore, *s.* saltire, one of the ordinaries in heraldry, 4182.
- Sayne, *v.* bless, cross (oneself), 969; *pret.* sayned, 1042, saynned, 966.
- Scathylle. *See* Skathelle.
- Schadande, *i. p.* shedding, flowing, 3845.
- Schafte, *s.* shaft (of a spear), 2169.
- Schaft-monde, *s.* 2546, 3843, 4232. "A measure, from the top of the extended thumb to the utmost part of the palm, which in a tall man is about six inches, or half a foot."—Bosworth's A.S. Dict. under *Scaft-mund*.
- Schake, *v.* shake, proceed, 1213, 1992.
- Schakke, *s.* sudden movement, 1759.
- Schalke = chalk, 1226, 1363.
- Schalke, *s.* man, 1098, 2170, *pl.* schalkes, 1857, schalkez, 2211.
- Schalle, *v.* shall, 7, 148, shalt, 102.
- Schalyde, *p.p.* scaled, 766.
- Schamely, *adv.* shamefully, 2616.
- Schamesdede, *s.* deed of shame, 3.
- Schanke, *s.* shank, leg, 3845; *pl.* schankez, 1099.
- Schape, *v.* shape, form, prepare, 342, 1324, 2588, 3400; *pret.* schoupe, 3599.
- Schappely, *adv.* fitly, 2333.
- Schappes, *v.* 3 *s.* shapes, destines, 1716.
- Schare. *See* Schere.
- Scharlette, *s.* scarlet, 3459.
- Scharpe, *s.* 3841.
- Scharpely, *adv.* sharply, smartly, 1212, 2429, 2456.
- Schathe. *See* Skathe.
- Schawe, 2406. *Read* Schewe.
- Schawe, *s.* wood, 1765; *pl.* schawes, 1723, 1760.
- Schaylande, *adj.* (?) scaly, 1098.
- Schede, 2922, Schedde, 3398, *v.* *pret.* shed, poured.
- Scheene, 1760, 2457, Schene, 2429, 3747, Schenne, 2676, *adj.* fair, beautiful.
- Scheftene, Scheftys. *See* Skyfte.
- Schelde, 914, 1110, Schilde, 3714, Schylde, 2984, *s.* shield; *pl.* scheldez, 595, scheldys, 2545.



Schelde, *v.* shield, 3.

Scheldyde, *adj.* having shields, 1856.

Scheltrone, 2106, 2922, Schiltrone, 1856, Sheltrone, 1992, *s.* troop, band; *pl.* schilttrounis, 1765, schilttrouns, 1813, 2210. The older form is *schiltrum*. A.S. *scyld*, shield, *truma*, troop.

Schenchipe, *s.* disgrace, 4299.

Schende, *v.* ruin, disgrace, confound, 2435.

Schene. *See* Scheene.

Schepe, *s.* sheep, 2922.

Schere, *v.* shear, cut, 2546; 3 *s.* scherys, 3600; *pret.* schare, 3843, scherde, 1856, 2545.

Scherenkene. *See* Schrenkys.

Schethede, *p.p.* sheathed, 3852.

Scheuerede, *v.* *pret.* shivered, split, 1813; *p.p.* scheueride, 3748.

Schewe, *v.* show, 191, 1183, appear, 1717; *inf.* schewene, 2457.

Schewynge, *s.* showing, manifestation, 3401.

Schifte, Schiftys. *See* Skyfte.

Schilde. *See* Schelde.

Schiltrone, Schilttrounis. *See* Scheltrone.

Schippemene, *s.* *pl.* shipmen, sailors, 1212.

Schire, 1760, 2169, Schyre, 1213, 3600, *adj.* bright.

Schirreues, *s.* *pl.* sheriffs, 725.

Scho, *pron.* she, 853, 860.

Schoderede, 3844, Schoderide, 2106, Schodirde, 4234, Schodyrde, 2169, *v.* *pret.* shuddered, shook, quivered.

Schokke, *v.* shock, jog, move or throw with violence, 4114; 3 *s.* schokkes, 3816, 3852, 4235; *pl.* schokkes, 1759.

Scholde, 1031, 1719, Schoulde, 3611, *v.* should.

Schone, *s.* *pl.* shoes, 3471.

Schone, 1717, 1719, Schoune, 314, *v.* shun, avoid, get or keep out of the way; 3 *s.* schownnes, 3599.

Schonte, Schontez. *See* Schountes.

Schore, *s.* score, 2344, 3577.

Schorte, at the, shortly, soon, 1325.

Schotande. *See* Schotte.

Schotene, *v.* *pl.* shut, 749.

Schotte, *v.* shoot, 1992; *pl.* schottes, 2426; *pret.* schotte, 1765; *i. p.* schotande, 1766.

Schotte, *s.* shot, shooting, 2105, 2428; *pl.* schotys, 3627.

Schotte-mene, *s.* *pl.* shooters, 2467.

Schouelle-fotede, *adj.* shovel-footed, 1098.

Schouene, 2333, Schoue, 2335, *v.* *pret.* *pl.* shaved.

Schoulders, *s.* *pl.* shoulders, 2546.

Schoune. *See* Schone.

Schountes, 3816, Schownttes, 3715, 3842, Schuntes, 1055, *v.* 3 *s.* turns aside, shrinks away, hesitates, delays; *pl.* schontez, 1759; *pret.* schonte, 2106, 2428, schounte, 736; *imp.* 2 *s.* schunte, 1324.

Schoupe. *See* Schape.

Schove, *v.* shove, thrust, 3847.

Schowande, *i. p.* (?) shuffling, 1099.

Schownnes. *See* Schone.

Schownttes. *See* Schountes.

Schragges, *s.* *pl.* jagged ends, 3473.

Schrede, *v.* *pret.* cut, 2211, 4167; *p.p.* schrede, 2688.

Schrede, 3991, Schreede, 767, *p.p.* clothed.

Schrede, 905, Schredys, 3473, *s.* *pl.* shreds.

Schrenkys, *v.* 3 *s.* shrinks, 4234; *pl.* scherenkene, 2105; *p.p.*

- schrenkede, wrinkled, 2211; *i. p.*  
schrenkande, wrinkling, 1857.
- Schrewe, *s.* wicked person, 2779.
- Schrifte, *s.* shrift, confession, 2588.
- Schrinkande, *i. p.* shrinking,  
wrinkling, 767.
- Schrowde, *s.* dress, 3628. A.S.  
*scrūd*, garment.
- Schryfe, *v.* confess, 3400.
- Schrympe, *s.* deformed creature,  
monster (applied to a dragon), 767.
- Schrynede, *p.p.* shrined, 3991.
- Schulde, *v.* should, 3183, 3791.
- Schuldrez, 1157, Schuldrys, 3294,  
Schoulders, 2546, *s. pl.* shoulders.
- Schunte, Schuntes. *See* Schountes.
- Schwede = schewede, showed,  
4233.
- Schyfte. *See* Skyfte.
- Schylde. *See* Schelde.
- Schynbawde, *s.* 3846, seems to  
mean the *greave* or shin-plate; but  
the form of the word leads one to  
think that it originally meant *shin-  
belt*, probably a piece of chain-ar-  
mour or other defence bound round  
the leg. *See* Glossary to *Syr Ga-  
wayne*, ed. Madden. Compare  
Eng. *baldrick* and Lat. *balteus*.  
"He, and his gambesoūns, glomede  
als gledys,  
With graynes of rubyes, that gray-  
thede were gaye  
And his schene schynbawdes,  
scharpe for to schrede."  
*The Awntyrs of Arthure*, ed.  
Madden, stanza xxxi.
- Schyre. *See* Schire.
- Scoulders, 766. *Read* Schoulders.
- Scrippe, *s.* 3474.
- Seche, Sechis. *See* Seke.
- See, *s.* seat, 3291, 3350.
- See, *s.* sea, 490, 1402.
- Seegge, *s.* seat, proper place,  
2478.
- Seegge. *See* Segge.
- Seese, *v. pl.* see, 1405.
- Segge, 134, 1043, Seegge, 1574,  
*s.* man; *pl.* seggez, 1420, 1422.  
A.S. *secg*.
- Segge, 355, *s.* siege.
- Seggede, *v. pret.* besieged, 3011.
- Segnourry, *s.* lordship, 528.
- Sekadrisses, *s. pl.* 2283. There  
is surely some mistake here; per-  
haps we ought to read *cokadrilles*  
= crocodiles (compare Span. *coco-  
drillo*) or *cokatrisses*, which may  
have the same meaning, since Ro-  
quefort gives, "*Cocatrice, cocatrix* :  
Crocodile." Either suits the allit-  
eration, gives some sense, and  
might by a slight mistake of the  
scribe be turned into *sekadrisses*,  
which gives no sense at all. Croco-  
diles in a Roman camp are not  
more out of place than camels and  
elephants are when crossing the  
Alps with coffins on their backs!  
*See* p. 69.
- Seke, *adj.* sick, 1574.
- Seke, 105, 937, 1296, Seche,  
3233, *v.* seek, make for, go (to-  
wards); 2 *s.* sechis, 3507; *pret.*  
soghte, 1041, soughte, 720, 2170;  
*inf.* sekene, 898; *p.p.* soghte, 1171.
- Sekere, 1173, 1458, Sekire, 4313,  
Sekyre, 478, 551, *adj.* sure, safe,  
trusty; *comp.* sekerare, 3289;  
*superl.* sekereste, 1492.
- Sekerly, 441, 969, Sekirly, 3499,  
Sekyrly, 439, 1420, *adv.* surely,  
certainly, safely.
- Sekire, *v.* ensure, 2585, 3804.
- Sektour, *s.* executor, 665.
- Selcouthe, 75, 1298, 3531, Sel-  
kouthe, 1948, *adj.* strange, rare.
- Seldene, *adv.* seldom, 1163.
- Sele, *s.* seal, 85.
- Selfene, 331, 338, Seluene, 1, 8,  
Seluyne, 10, 34, self.
- Selkouthe. *See* Selcouthe.

- Selkouthely, *adv.* strangely, 3252.
- Selkylde, 3356. Perhaps miswritten for 'Serkyld,' encircled.
- Seluene, Seluyne. *See* Selfene.
- Semblant, *s.* show, splendour, 75, 410.
- Semble, *v.* assemble, gather, meet, 63, 967; *pl.* sembles, 3748; *pret.* semblede, 409, 1457; *p.p.* sembyde, 70.
- Semes, 1672, Semez, 133, 1162, Semys, 1418, *impers. v.* seems; *pret.* semede, 123, semyde, 193. It is often used with the objective case of the personal pronouns: the semes = thou seemest, 1672; them semyde = they seemed, 193.
- Semliche, 3947, Semlyche, 655, Semly, 410, 1949, *adj.* seemly, comely, goodly.
- Semliche, 3316, Semlyly, 3787, *adv.* in a comely manner, well.
- Sen, 127, 142, Sene, 526, 952, *adv. or conj.* since.
- Sendelle, *s.* fine linen, 2299.
- Sengely, 2434, Sengilly, 471, 2592, Sengly, 3729, *adv.* singly, alone.
- Sent, *s.* scent, 1040.
- Sent, *s.* assent, consent, 1628, 2615, 3065.
- Sepulture, *s.* burial, 4340.
- Sere, *adj.* various, diverse, separate, 192, 607, 1576, 3195.
- Serfe, *v.* serve, 1220; *pret.* serfede, 892.
- Serfede, 1068. *See* Serues.
- Sergeaunt, *s.* servant, 632; *pl.* sergeantes, 1173.
- Serte, *s.* desert, 2926; *pl.* sertes, 513. Compare *serve* for *deserve*.
- Seruez, *v.* *pl.* serve, 1168.
- Serues, *v.* *pl.* deserve, 1315; *p.p.* seruede, 2590, serfede, 1068.
- Ses, *v.* 3 *s.* sees, 3941.
- Sesez, *v.* 3 *s.* seizes, 1500.
- Seside, *v.* *pret.* put in possession, 3065; *p.p.* sessede, 2608.
- Sessede, *v.* *pret.* ceased, 2132.
- Sesyne, *s.* seizin, 3588.
- Sete, 3315, Sette, 1305, *s.* seat.
- Seterdaye, *s.* Saturday, 1550, 3176.
- Sethene. *See* Sythene.
- Setille, *s.* settle, seat, 3270.
- Seuende, *adj.* seventh, 488.
- Seuenschoe, seven score, 3788.
- Seuenyghte, *s.* week, 153, 380, 3182.
- Sewes, *s.* *pl.* stews, pottages, 192.
- Sewe, *v.* follow, 2927; *pret.* sewede, 3288; *i. p.* sewande, 81.
- Sex, *adj.* six, 354, 380; sex sum = six in all, 471.
- Sexte, *adj.* sixth, 3316, 3416.
- Sextene, *adj.* sixteen, 81, 105.
- Sexti, Sixty, *adj.* sixty, 179, 210, 601.
- Sexti-faulde, *adj.* sixtyfold, 2299.
- Seyne, *s.* sign, 2055, 2870.
- Seyne, *p.p.* seen, 3985.
- Seyne, *adv.* afterwards, 188, 192, 282, 1591.
- Seyngnour, 3313, Seyn3owre, 2419, *s.* lord; *pl.* seynowres, 1577.
- Seynt, *s.* saint, 1169; *pl.* seyntez, 1163, 1168.
- Sheltrone. *See* Scheltrone.
- Sibb, 3984, Sybb, 645, 3891, Sybbe, 681, *adj.* related, akin.
- Siche. *See* Swylke.
- Siluere, *s.* 1165.
- Silueryne, *adj.* made of silver, 185.
- Singulere, *adj.* single, by himself, 172.
- Sir, 3288, Syr, 3312, Syre, 3134, *s.* lord.

- Sittande, *i. p.* becoming, suitable, 953, 1501.
- Sittandly, *adv.* becomingly, 159.
- Sittene, *p.p.* sat, 3291.
- Skalopis, *s. pl.* scallop-shells, 3474.
- Skape, *v.* escape, 1562.
- Skathe, 1643, 1841, 3119, Schathe, 292, *s.* hurt, damage.
- Skathelle, 1642, Scathylle, 32, *adj.* hurtful.
- Skathlye, *adj.* hurtful, 1562.
- Skayles, *v.* 3 *s.* scales, 3034.
- Skeyres, *v. pl.* scare, frighten, 2468.
- Skewe, *v.* eschew, escape, 1562.
- Skiftez. *See* Skyfte.
- Skilfulle, *adj.* reasonable, right, 1561.
- Skomfite, *s.* discomfit, 2335.
- Skomfite, *p.p.* discomfited, 1644.
- Skomfitoure, *s.* discomfiter, one who discomfits, 1644.
- Skomfytüre, *s.* discomfiture, 1561.
- Skorne, *v.* scorn, 1642; *pret.* skornede, 1840.
- Skornefulle, *adj.* 1840.
- Skotiferis, 3034, Skottefers, 2468, *s. pl.* shield-bearers. Compare Lat. *scutiferi*, squires.
- Skouerours, *s. pl.* explorers, scouts, 3118.
- Skoulkery, *s.* lurking, ambush, 1644.
- Skowtte-waches, *s. pl.* sentinels, 2468.
- Skrogges, 1641, Skroggez, 1642, *s. pl.* stunted bushes, shrubs. *Sc. scrog.*
- Skulker, *s.* 3119.
- Skyfte, 1643, Schifte, 1213, 1325, *v.* shift, dispose, manage; 3 *s.* skiftez, 1561, skyftys, 32; *pl.* skyftes, 3117, schiftys, 725, schef-
- tene, 3627, scheftys, 2456, schyfte, 3847; *imp.* 2 *s.* schyft, 1717.
- Skylle, *s.* reason, skill, 32.
- Skyrmys, *v. pl.* fight, skirmish, 2467.
- Slade, *s.* green valley, 2978.
- Slakes, *v.* 3 *s.* slackens, loosens, 3220.
- Slakkes, *s. pl.* (?) pools of water in slack or hollow places, 3719.
- Slale, *adj.* (?) 3117.
- Slaughte, *s.* slaughter, 2675.
- Slawe, *adj.* slow, dull, 4044.
- Slawyne, *s.* slavein, pilgrim's mantle, 3474.
- Slayne, *p.p.* slain, 1824, 2977.
- Sleghe, *adj.* sly, cunning, clever, 2978.
- Sleghte, 3220, Sleyghte, 3418, 4045, *s.* sleight, skill, craft.
- Sleghte, *p.p.* slipped, 2675.
- Slely, 3855, Sleyghly, 2975, Sleyghely, 4321, *adv.* sily, prudently, cleverly.
- Slepe, *v.* sleep, 4044.
- Sleppes, *v.* 3 *s.* slips, 2976; *pret.* sleppid, 3854.
- Slewe, *v. pret.* 3418.
- Slewthe, *s.* sloth, 3221.
- Sleyghly, Sleyghely. *See* Slely.
- Sleyghte. *See* Sleghte.
- Slode, *v. pret.* slid, 3854.
- Slomowre, *s.* slumber, 3221.
- Slomyre, *v.* slumber, 4044.
- Slongene, *p.p.* slung, 2978, 4321.
- Sloppes, *s. pl.* pools, 3923.
- Slote, 2254, Slotte, 2975, *s.* pit of the stomach.
- Slottede, *p.p.* stabbed in the pit of the stomach, 3853.
- Sloughe, 23, Slowghe, 4045, Slewe, 3418, *v. pret.* slew.
- Slowde, *s.* slush, sludge, 3719.

- Slowghe. *See* Sloughe.  
 Slydande, *i. p.* sliding, 2976.  
 Slyke, *adj.* such, 3719. *See* Swylke.  
 Slynge, *v.* 3 *s.* slings, throws, 3220, 3855.  
 Slytte, *s.* slit, 3853.  
 Slyttes, *v.* 3 *s.* slits, 2254, 2975.  
 Smyttes, 2564, Smyttez, 1148, *v.* 3 *s.* smites.  
 Snelle, *adj.* swift, 57.  
 Socoure, *v.* succour, 2276.  
 Socoure, 2317, Socure, 1438, *s.* succour.  
 Sodaynly, 80, 599, 1422, Sodaynliche, 3270, Sodaynly, 632, 1980, *adv.* suddenly.  
 Softe, *adj.* softening, melting, 3983.  
 Softene, *v.* soften, ease, 2691.  
 Soghte. *See* Seke.  
 Soiorne, 4027, Soiourne, 4042, *v.* sojourn.  
 Solauce, *s.* solace, recreation, 239, 659.  
 Solemply, 3196, 3805, Solempnely, 1948, Solempnylye, 525, *adv.* solemnly.  
 Solempnitee, *s.* solemnity, 514.  
 Som, *adj.* some, 3683.  
 Somercastelle, *s.* wooden tower, 3033.  
 Somme, *s.* sum, 448, 2347.  
 Somond, 1212, Somounde, 525, *v. pret.* summoned; *p.p.* somonde, 140, sommonde, 267.  
 Somouns, *s.* summons, 91, 104.  
 Sonde, *s.* something sent, 2511.  
 Sonde, *s.* sand, 3728, 3745.  
 Sondire, 2182, Sondre, 1123, Sodyre, 1388, 1482; in *s.* = asunder.  
 Sondirwise, *adv.* separately, 3529.  
 Sone, *s.* son, 1945.  
 Sone, 170, 1022, Sonne, 2222, *adv.* soon.  
 Songene, *v. pret. pl.* sang, 745, 2674.  
 Sonne, 1978, 2511, Sone, 4035, *s.* sun.  
 Sonondaye, *s.* Sunday, 501, 2482.  
 Soo, *adv.* so, 1841.  
 Sope, *s.* sup, hasty meal, 1890.  
 Soppe, *s.* crowd, company, troop, band, 1493, 2818, 3729.  
 Sore, *s.* disease, 932.  
 Sore, *adv.* sorely, 1173; *comp.* sorere, 1163.  
 Sorowe, *s.* 1138, 2224.  
 SORTE, *s.* troop, company, band, 63, 410, 1575; *pl.* sortes, 606.  
 Sothe, *adj.* true, 1686; for sothe, truly, 1087.  
 Sothe, *s.* truth, 3229.  
 Sothely, *adv.* truly, 172, 239, 319.  
 Sott, 1044, Sotte, 847, 1060, *s.* sot.  
 Soueraygne, *adj.* 1167.  
 Soueraygne, 1298, 1330, Soueraygne, 141, *s.* sovereign; *pl.* souerayngez, 1960.  
 Soughte. *See* Seke.  
 Souppe. *See* Sowpe.  
 Sowdane, *s.* soldan, sultan, 590, 1295; *pl.* sowdanes, 593.  
 Sowdeours, *s. pl.* hired warriors, mercenaries, 551, 593, 2925, 2938.  
 Sowe, *s.* some warlike engine, 3033. *See* Sow in Jamieson.  
 Sowmes, *s. pl.* sums, 1627.  
 Sownde, *adj.* 1577.  
 Sowpe, 1298, Souppe, 3805, *v.* sup; 3 *s.* sowppes, 1025; *pret.* sowpped, 409; *i. p.* sowpande, 1044.  
 Sowper, *s.* supper, 1022.

- Sowre, 1041. *Read* Sowrs, source.  
 Sowte. *See* Soyte.  
 Soyte, 81, 3931, Sowte, 3941, *s.* suit, company.  
 Spakely, *adv.* swiftly, quickly, 2063.  
 Spalddyd, *p.p.* split, 3699.  
 Spanne, *s.* span, 2060.  
 Spayre, *s.* the spare or thin part of the body, the waist, 2060.  
 Speeyalle, *adj.* 999.  
 Spede, *v.* fare, succeed, 2414, speed, hasten, 2416; *pret.* spede, 1794; *p.p.* spede, 3016.  
 Speke, *v.* speak, 2415; 3 *s.* spekes, 2063.  
 Spekes, *s. pl.* spokes (of a wheel), 3264, 3311.  
 Speltis, *s. pl.* thin streaks or splinters, 3264.  
 Spencis, *s. pl.* expenditure, 3163.  
 Spendyde, *v. pret.* spent, 235.  
 Spere, *s.* spear, 1794; *pl.* sperys, 1898.  
 Spere-lenghe, *adj.* spearlength, of the length of a spear, 3311.  
 Speryt, *s.* spirit, 4327.  
 Spille, *v.* perish, 2415; *pl.* spillis, destroy, 3159.  
 Spleene, *s.* 2061.  
 Splent, *s.* splint, 2061. "Splents. In ancient armour, several little plates that run over each other, and protected the inside of the arm." *Halliwel*. They were also worn on the leg (see Jamieson under *Splentis*), and probably on other parts of the body.  
 Splentide, *p.p.* splinted, adorned with splinters, 3264.  
 Sponene, *p.p.* spun, 999.  
 Spoures, 483, Spurres, 2416, *s. pl.* spurs.  
 Spraddene. *See* Sprede.  
 Sprangene. *See* Sprynges.  
 Sprede, *v.* spread, 3158; *pret.* sprede, 2062; *pret. pl.* spraddene, 3310.  
 Sprente, 2062, 3310, Sprentyde, 3700, *v. pret.* sprang, leapt.  
 Springande, Sprongene. *See* Sprynges.  
 Sproulez, *v.* 3 *s.* sprawls, 2063.  
 Sprynges, *v.* 3 *s.* springs, 3162; *pl.* spryngene, 3158; *pret. pl.* sprangene, 483; *i. p.* springande, 3265; *p.p.* sprongene, 1943, burst, 1794, spronngene, 3699.  
 Spycerye, *s.* 162.  
 Spytte, *s.* spite, 270.  
 Sqwyere, *s.* squire, 1179.  
 Stade, *p.p.* set, placed, 1926.  
 Stake, *v.* put on a stake, 1178.  
 Stale, *s.* company, troop, 377, 1355, 1435, 1932; *pl.* stales, 1980.  
 Stalkis, *v.* 3 *s.* 3466.  
 Stam, *s.* foreship, 3664.  
 Stamyne, *s.* some part of a ship, 3658.  
 Standerde, *s.* 2080.  
 Statte, *s.* state, rank, 157.  
 Stedde, *p.p.* beset, 2824, 4133.  
 Stede, *s.* stead, place, 1748, 2824.  
 Stede, *s.* steed, horse, 1355; *pl.* stedes, 1280, steds, 1488, 1647.  
 Stekes, *v. pl.* stick, stab, 3126; 3 *s.* stekys, 3822; *pret.* stekede, 1488.  
 Stele, *s.* steel, 1371, 1487.  
 Stelene, 1488, 2129, Stelyne, 1354, *adj.* steelen, made of steel.  
 Stepes, *v.* 3 *s.* steps, 1229.  
 Sterape, 2692, Sterepe, 916, *s.* stirrup; *pl.* sterapes, 3823.  
 Stere-bourde, 745, Stere-burde, 3665, *s.* starboard.  
 Sterenefulle, 3824, Sterynfulle, 2692, *adj.* stern, fierce.

- Steride, Steris. *See* Stire.
- Stertez, 1104, Sterttes, 1355, Stirttez, 1932, Styrttez, 1152, *v.* 3 *s.* starts; *pl.* stirttes, 2692; *pret.* sterte, 916.
- Steryne, 157, 377, 735, Sterynne, 3622, *adj.* stern; *superl.* sterynneste, 3872.
- Sterynty, *adv.* sternly, 745, 2130.
- Sterys. *See* Stire.
- Steuën, *s.* voice, 2531, 4269.
- Stewede, *v.* *pret.* enclosed, 1489. "Estuier: Serrer, mettre dans un étui, cacher, enfermer, renfermer, envelopper, emprisonner."—*Roquefort*.
- Stire, 2823, Styre, 4038, *v.* stir, move; 3 *s.* sterys, 917; *pl.* steris, 2923, 3658; *pret.* steride, 1793; *imp.* 2 *pl.* stirrez, 1748.
- Stirttes, Stirttez. *See* Stertez.
- Stiẏttelys, *v.* *pl.* arrange, 3622.
- Stodde, Stode. *See* Stondez.
- Stokes, *s.* *pl.* (?) estocs, or stabbing swords, 1436.
- Stokes, *v.* *pl.* stab, 2554. "*Estoquer, estoquier*: Frapper, pousser, casser, rompre, briser." *Roquefort*.
- Stokkes, *s.* *pl.* 3665.
- Stonays, *v.* *pl.* stuns, hits stunning blows, 2118; *p.p.* stonayede, 1933, 3873.
- Stondez, 2090, Stonndys, 3623, *v.* *pl.* stand; *pret.* stode, 1489, 2923, stodde, 4133.
- Stotais, 1435, Stotays, 3467, 4271, *v.* 3 *s.* becomes foolish, mad, dizzy, or stupid. "Estoutir, estoutoyer: Être fou, imprudent, avoir de la témérité, être insensé; *stultescere*." *Roquefort*. Burguy gives the forms "*estoteier, estouteier, estuteier, estoutoier, estotoier*," but with the meaning "*maltraiter*."
- Stour, 377, 1747, Stoure, 1488, Stowre, 2086, *s.* battle.
- Stownde, *s.* time, 3974; *pl.* stowndys, 3888.
- Stownntyng, *s.* stopping, delay, 491.
- Stowre. *See* Stour.
- Strake. *See* Stryke.
- Strandez, 598, 883, 947, 1227, 1337, Strandys, 3626, Strondes, 4067, *s.* *pl.* waters.
- Strates, 561, Straytez, 3009, *s.* *pl.* straits, narrow places.
- Strayte, 1933, Straytt, 1230, *adj.* strait, narrow.
- Streke, *adv.* straight, 1792, 3101.
- Strokez, Strekyne. *See* Stryke.
- Strekez, *v.* 3 *s.* stretches, 1229, 2085.
- Streme, *s.* stream, 755; *pl.* stremes, 1224.
- Strenghe, 258, 376, Strenghte, 796, *s.* strength; strong place, 1230, 1435; *pl.* strenghes, forces, 1475, 2242, strenghez, 1827. strengthis, 3322.
- Strenghely, *adv.* strongly, 4096.
- Strette, *s.* street, road, 3467.
- Streynez, *v.* 3 *s.* exerts, 917.
- Strondes. *See* Strandez.
- Stroye, 1927, Struye, 561, *v.* destroy; *pl.* stroyene, 3127; *p.p.* stroyede, 1933, struyede, 1205.
- Stryke, *v.* strike, smite; 3 *s.* strykez, 1124, strykkes, 1480; *pl.* strykkys, 1411, strekes, 3101; *pret.* strake, 2080, 2129; *pret.* *pl.* strekyne, 755, 3659.
- Studyande, *i. p.* studying, 3467.
- Stuffe, *v.* furnish, 1932; *pl.* stuffene, 2369; *pret.* stuffede, 3616.
- Sturdely, *adv.* sturdily, 1104.
- Stye, *s.* path, 3466.
- Styghtylle, *v.* order, arrange, 157.
- Stynte, *v.* cease, 3127.
- Styre. *See* Stire.

- Styrtez. *See* Stertez.  
 Subarbe, *s.* suburbs, 4043; *pl.* subarbis, 3122, subbarbes, 2466.  
 Subgettez. *See* Sugett.  
 Suerddes. *See* Swerde.  
 Sugett, 87, Sugette, 3138, *s.* subject; *pl.* subgettez, 2314.  
 Suggourne, *v.* sojourn, 153, 354, 1335; 3 *s.* suggeourns, 54, suggournez, 624.  
 Sulayne, *adj.* alone, 2592.  
 Sulde, *v. subj. pret.* should, 72, 213, 214.  
 Sundryre, *v.* part, separate, 7.  
 Suppawelle, *v.* support, 2818.  
 Supprisede, 2616, Supprisede, 1345, Supprysede, 3797, Supprysede, 1951, Suppryside, 1420, *p.p.* taken unawares, overtaken, surprised.  
 Surcott, 3252, Surcotte, 2434, *s.* surcoat.  
 Surepel, *s.* cover, 3317.  
 Surgyne, *s.* surgeon, 4311.  
 Surrawns, *s.* assurance, security, 3181.  
 Surs, *s.* rising, rise, 1978, 2511, 3468.  
 Suteleste, *adj.* subtlest, 808.  
 Suyche. *See* Swylke.  
 Suyte, 179, 210, 528, Suytte, 3139, *s.* suit.  
 Swafres, *v.* 3 *s.* staggers, 3970. *Sc. swaver*, to walk feebly. *Jamieson*.  
 Swalters, *v.* 3 *s.* (?) 3924.  
 Swange, *s.* loins, 1129.  
 Swangene, *v. pret. pl.* swung, 2146.  
 Swanke, *v. pret.* toiled, 2961, 3361.  
 Swape, *s.* blow, stroke, 314.  
 Swappes, 4244, Swappez, 1126, 1129, *v.* 3 *s.* smites, strikes; *pl.* swappene, 1464, swappez, 1465; *pret.* swappede, 1795.  
 Swarthe, *s.* sward, grassy ground, 1126, 1466, 2145, 2960.  
 Swathes, *s. pl.* 2508.  
 Swayne, *s.* 3360.  
 Swefene, *s.* dream, 812; *pl.* swefennys, 3228.  
 Swefnynge, *s.* dreaming, 759.  
 Swelte, *v.* die, 716, 813; 3 *s.* sweltes, 2961, faints, 3969; *pl.* swelltez, 1466; *pret.* swelte, 2982; *i. p.* sweltand, 2146, sweltande, 1465.  
 Sweperly, *adv.* quickly, nimbly, 1128, 1465. *Sc. swipper*, quick, swift, nimble. *Jamieson*.  
 Sweppene, *p.p.* swept, 2508.  
 Swerde, *s.* sword, 47, 715; *pl.* swerddez, 1253, suerddes, 314.  
 Swete, 3703, 4223, Swett, 2145, Swette, 3360, *s.* life.  
 Swetly, 3970, Swettly, 1297, *adv.* sweetly.  
 Sweyftly, *adv.* swiftly, 3703.  
 Sweys, *v.* 3 *s.* sways, 57; *pl.* 1467, 3676, 4273.  
 Swiche. *See* Swylke.  
 Swoghe, *s.* swaying motion, 759.  
 Swoghe, *s.* swoon, 1467.  
 Swoughe, *s.* whirr, 1127.  
 Swoune, *s.* swoon, 3969.  
 Swounes, *v.* 3 *s.* swoons, 1127; *i. p.* swounande, 1467, 2960.  
 Swowynges, *s.* sound, 931.  
 Swyer, *s.* squire, 2959, 3703.  
 Swykede, 1795, Swykkede, 3361, *v. pret.* deceived.  
 Swylke, 403, Swiche, 3000, Suyche, 529, Slyke, 3719, Siche, 967, 1031, Syche, 76, 226, *adj.* such.  
 Swym, *s.* swoon, 4246.  
 Swynge, *s.* swing, 3360, 3676, 4223.



- Swyre-bane, *s.* neckbone, 2959.  
 Swythe, *adv.* quickly, swiftly, 185, 409, 715, very, 1949; as swythe = immediately, 813.  
 Sybb, Sybbe. *See* Sibb.  
 Sybredyne, *s.* kindred, 691, 4145.  
 Syche. *See* Swylke.  
 Sydlyngs, *adv.* sidelong, sideways, 1039, 1043.  
 Sydys, *s. pl.* sides, 2148.  
 Syene. *See* Syne.  
 Syghande, 3794, Sygheande, 3891, *i. p.* sighing.  
 Syland, 1297, Sylande, 3794, 4340, *i. p.* flowing.  
 Syluerene, *adj.* silvern, made of silver, 1949.  
 Sylure, *s.* canopy, 3194.  
 Symple, *adj.* mean, 684, few, 967.  
 Syne, *s.* sin, 3315, 3986.  
 Syne, 85, 1182, 3216, Syene, 4083, Synne, 3435, *adv.* afterwards.  
 Synechalle, 1871, Syneschalle, 1910, *s.* seneschal.  
 Synglere, *s.* boar, 3123.  
 Syngne, *s.* sign, 3075.  
 Syngulere, *adj.* single, 826.  
 Synkande, *i. p.* sinking, 3705.  
 Synne. *See* Syne.  
 Syr, Syre. *See* Sir.  
 Syte, 1060, Sytte, 1305, *s.* grief, sorrow.  
 Sythene, 184, 1336, Sythine, 159, Sythynce, 56, 169, Sethene, 1977, *adv.* afterwards.  
 Sythis, *s. pl.* times, 2216.  
 Syttyne, *p. p.* sat, 511.  
 Tabylle, *s.* table, 53.  
 Tachementez, *s. pl.* attachments, 1568.  
 Tachesesede (?), 821.  
 Tacle, 3679, Takle, 2444, Takelle, 3618, *s.* tackle.  
 Taghte, 178, Tawghte, 3202, *adj.* taught, trained.  
 Tak, *v.* take, 144; take, 307, proceed, go; 3 *s.* tase, 1890, takes; *pl.* tas, 3203; *pref.* tuke, 328, 1359, 2242; *p. p.* takyne, 73, gone.  
 Tale, *s.* number, 317, 335, 2933, account, 4094.  
 Talmes, *v.* 3 *s.* falters, 2581. *Du. Talmen*, to loiter, linger, haggle, waver, act tediously, be irresolute or in suspense. *Sewell's Dictionary*.  
 Talounez, *s. pl.* talons, claws, 800.  
 Targe, *s.* round shield; *pl.* targez, 732. The targe was often emblazoned, hence at line 89, targe = arms on a seal.  
 Tarsse, *s.* kind of cloth, 3189.  
 Tarye, *v.* tarry, 1703.  
 Tas, Tase. *See* Tak.  
 Tauernez, *s. pl.* taverns, 1568.  
 Taulde, *p. p.* told, 2618.  
 Tawghte. *See* Taghte.  
 Temez, *v.* 3 *s.* empties, 1801.  
 Temperalle, *s.* 2409.  
 Tempeste, *v.* 2408.  
 Temporaltee, *s.* 1570.  
 Tende, *adj.* heedful, attentive, intent, 1916. *Sc. tent*.  
 Tende, *adj.* tenth, 73.  
 Tene = ten, 1421.  
 Tene, *s.* injury, wrong, grief, vexation, 1396, 1956. *A.S. teona*.  
 Tenefulle, *adj.* harmful, grievous, 4280.  
 Tenefully, *adv.* grievously, 272, 2345.  
 Tenes, *v. pl.* harm, vex, annoy, 264. *A.S. teonan*.  
 Tente, *s.* heed, attention, 3586, 4094.

- Tentyly, *adv.* heedfully, attentively, 3618.
- Teraunt, *s.* tyrant, wicked or cruel man, 842; *pl.* terauntez, 583, tirauntez, 1801, tyrauntez, 2408.
- Terez, *v.* 3 *s.* tears, 800; *pl.* terez, 1143.
- Teris, 3886, Terys, 3794, *s. pl.* tears.
- Tha, 77, 157, 377, Thaa, 1993, *pl. of the.*
- Thai, 1141, 1144, Thay, 1160, They, 22, *pron. n. pl.*; *gen.* thaire, 1143, 1396, theire, 13, 20, thiare, 160, 3191, thire, 19; *obj.* thaime, 396, thame, 329, 923, thaym, 2276, 2280, theme, 169, theym, 1886, theyme, 1889.
- Than, 1212, 2153, Thane, 64, 196, *adv.* then.
- Thar, 881, Thare, 60, 102, *adv.* there; thare = where, 59, 1185.
- Thare, *impers. v.* 403; hym thare = he needs.
- Thare-aftyre, *adv.* thereafter, after that, 1495, 2028.
- Thareby, 190, Thar-by, 1186, *adv.* thereby, beside.
- Thare-fore, *adv.* therefore, 2042.
- Thare-in, 1242, Thare-inc, 1254, *adv.* therein.
- Thas, 58, 432, Thase, 236, 434, *adj.* those.
- Thedyre, *adv.* thither, 2488.
- Thee, *s.* thigh, 1046; *pl.* theese, 1100.
- Theeffe, *s.* thief, 1150.
- Thees, Theis, Theise. *See* This.
- Then, 315, Thene, 1344, *conj.* than.
- Ther, *adv.* there, 884; where, 1131, 1219; there = where, 476.
- Ther-aftyre, *adv.* thereafter, 1115, according to it, 339.
- Ther-to, *adv.* thereto, also, 181.
- Ther-vndyre, *adv.* under it, 1156.
- Thes. *See* This.
- Thethene, *adv.* thence, 4345.
- Thewes, *s. pl.* virtues, good qualities, 21.
- Theyne = thine, 3403.
- Theys. *See* This.
- Thie = thee, 104.
- Thiere, Thire. *See* Thai.
- Thies, Thiese. *See* This.
- Thikke, *s.* thick, dense part of a crowd, 3755; *pl.* thykkys, 2216.
- Thir, Thire. *See* This.
- Thirlede, Thirleze. *See* Thyrlle.
- This, *pron. or adj.* 410; *pl.* thees, 154, 167, theis, 1604, theise, 2044, thes, 48, 1356, theys, 2810, thies, 104, 264, thiese, 2723, thise, 152, 263, thys, 52, thir, 1161, 1164, thire, 993.
- Thof. *See* Thoghe.
- Thoghe, 477, 1329, Thof, 2443, Thofe, 109, 460, Thoffe, 2688, *conj.* though.
- Thoghte. *See* Thynkes.
- Thole, *v.* suffer, endure, permit, 676, 4022, 4150.
- Thoos, 156, 158, Thos, 42, 2200, *pron.* those.
- Thorowe, Thorughe. *See* Thurghe.
- Thorowely, *adv.* thoroughly, 3294.
- Thorowowte, *prep.* throughout, right through, 2170, 2986.
- Thosande, 1400, Thosannde, 1537, Thowsande, 1421, *s.* thousand.
- Thourghe. *See* Thurghe.
- Thourghe-gyrde, *p.p.* smitten through, pierced, 3683.
- Thra, 3295, Thraa, 249, *adj.* vehement, eager; *superl.* thraeste, 3756.
- Thrange, *s.* throng, 2217.
- Thrawe, *s.* throe, pang, 1150.
- Threpide, 930, Threppede, 2216, *v. pret.* strove.

- Thrette, *v.* threaten, 3295 ; 3 *s.* thretys, 249.  
 Thretty, *adj.* thirty, 3295.  
 Thristis, *v. pl.* thrust, 3755.  
 Throly, *adv.* vehemently, 1150, 2217, 4332.  
 Thronge, *v.* press, 3755.  
 Throo, *adj.* vehement, 3294.  
 Throstilles, *s. pl.* throstles, 930.  
 Throwene, *p.p.* thrown, 3694.  
 Throwghe, Thrughe, Thrughte. *See* Thurghe.  
 Thryftye, *adj.* 317.  
 Thryngez, *v.* 3 *s.* presses, squeezes, 1150, 2217.  
 Thrystez, *v.* 3 *s.* thrusts, 1151.  
 Thryttene, *adj.* thirteen, 2216.  
 Thurghe, 1, 215, 499, Thourghe, 1792, 2253, Thorughe, 495, Thorowe, 5, 24, Throwghe, 1772, Thrughe, 1413, Thrughte, 390, *prep.* through. A.S. *þurh*.  
 Thurghe-girde, *p.p.* smitten through, 1461.  
 Thursse, *s.* giant, 1100. A.S. *þyrs*.  
 Thykkys. *See* Thikke.  
 Thynkes, 366, 1335, Thynkys, 350, Thynkkys, 2440, *impers. v.* seems ; seems good, 996 ; *pret.* thoghte, 495, 2479, thoughte, 3230.  
 Thyrle, *v.* pierce, 1413 ; 3 *s.* thirle, 2167 ; *pret.* thirlede, 1858, 3890 ; *p.p.* thyrlede, 2238, 2688.  
 Thyzandez. *See* Tydandis.  
 Tide, *s.* time, 3902 ; *pl.* tydez, 753.  
 Til, 6, 36, Tille, 10, 130, Tylle, 3608, *prep.* to.  
 Tiltine, *v. pl.* tilt, topple, 1144.  
 Tite, 3886, 3887, Tyte, 737, 841, Tytt, 744, Tytte, 1891, 2583, *adv.* quickly ; alls tite = as quickly, at once, immediately.  
 Titzet, *v.* 3 *s.* makes totter, 1801.  
 To, *adv.* too, 957, 1200.  
 To, *conj.* till, 3182.  
 To-briste, *v.* burst asunder, 3982.  
 To-geders, 1050, To-gedirs, 1000, To-gedyre, 2718, *adv.* together.  
 Togers, *s. pl.* clothes, 178.  
 Toges, *s. pl.* togas, 3189.  
 Toile, *s.* tussle, broil, 1802. *Sc. tailyie*.  
 Tolle, *s.* customs, 1568.  
 Tolowris, *s. pl.* (?) tool-makers, 3618.  
 To-morne, *adv.* to-morrow, 1587.  
 Tonges, *s. pl.* tongues (of a dragon's tail), 821.  
 Toppe, *s.* top, 1144, head, 801.  
 Toppe-castelles, *s. pl.* 3616.  
 To-rattys, *v. pl.* rend asunder, 2235.  
 Torfere, 1956, 3451, 3567, Tourfere, 2582, *s.* harm, mischief.  
 Tornys, 3015, Tournes, 1891, *v.* 3 *s.* turns ; *pret.* tornede, 3203, tournede, 1052.  
 To-ruscheez, *v. pl.* dash asunder, 1428.  
 To-stonayed, *p.p.* utterly stunned, 1436.  
 Tother, *adj.* other, 234, 3283. The first *t* is really part of the article, for *the tother* = that other, just as *the tone* = that one.  
 Toure, *s.* tower, 245, 1890 ; *pl.* toures, 39, towrez, 1569, towres, 3153.  
 Tourfere. *See* Torfere. •  
 Towche, *v.* touch, 2067, concern, tell ; 3 *s.* towchez, 800, 1570, 1591 ; *pret.* towchede, 770, towchide, 841 ; *i. p.* towchande, 263.  
 Towne, *adj.* trained, 178.  
 To-wrythes, *v.* 3 *s.* writhes, 3920.  
 Towyne, *v. pl.* draw, haul, 3655.

- Toylez, 732, Toyelys, 3616, *s. pl.*  
 (?) gear, tools.  
 Traise, *v.* 3 *s.* draws, 1629.  
 Traistely, 3568, Traystely, 1976,  
*adv.* safely, securely.  
 Traistez. *See* Trayste.  
 Trappede, *p.p.* covered with trap-  
 pings, 1757, 2150.  
 Trauaillede, *p.p.* who have toiled,  
 1947.  
 Trauaylande, 1684, Trauelande,  
 1630, *i. p.* travelling.  
 Trauayle, *s.* labour, 3566.  
 Traylede, *p.p.* 250.  
 Trayne, *s.* stratagem, 1630, 3901,  
 4192.  
 Trayne, *v.* entice, deceive, 1683.  
 Trays, *s.* trace, track, 4055.  
 Trayste, *v.* trust, 669; 3 *s.* traistez,  
 1987, 2870; *pret.* traystede, 1955,  
 3569.  
 Traystely. *See* Traistely.  
 Traytoure, *s.* traitor, 2173, 4055.  
 Trayuellede, *p.p.* toiled, laboured,  
 2357.  
 Trebutte, 114, 2611, Trebutte,  
 2344, Tribute, 271, Tributte, 2357,  
*s.*  
 Tremlande, *i. p.* trembling, 3899.  
 Trenchande, *adj.* trenchant, sharp,  
 3856.  
 Tresone, *s.* treason, treachery,  
 1629, 2017.  
 Tresoure, *s.* treasure, 668, 886,  
 991.  
 Trete, *s.* (?) row, 3655.  
 Trett, 250, Trette, 263, 878,  
 2932, *v.* treat; *p.p.* tetryd, 407,  
 tretide, 3191.  
 Treunt, *v.* steal a march, 1976;  
*pret.* treuntede, 3900; *p.p.* treunt,  
 2017.  
 Trew, 263, 992, Trewe, 879,  
 2932, *s.* truce.  
 Trewage, *s.* tribute, 2358.  
 Trewe, *adj.* true, 16.  
 Trewghe. *See* Trewthe.  
 Trewly, *adv.* truly, 2610.  
 Trewthe, 3437, Trewghe, 3929,  
*s.* truth.  
 Treyntis (?), 4056.  
 Trine. *See* Tryne.  
 Trippe, *v.* trip, move lightly, 3713.  
 Trisene, *v. pl.* trice (nautical term),  
 832.  
 Tristily, 407, Trystily, 2357, *adv.*  
 trustily, faithfully.  
 Tristly, 731, 1262, Trystly, 832,  
*adv.* confidently, boldly  
 Trofle, 2932, Trofalle, 1702, *v.*  
 trifle; *i. p.* trofelande, 1683.  
 Trome, *v.* troop, 3592. A.S.  
*truma*, a troop.  
 Trompede, *adj.* having trumpets,  
 3713.  
 Trompes, 1757, Tromppez, 1484,  
 1947, Troumppes, 4107, Troump-  
 pez, 1702, Trumpepez, 832, *s. pl.*  
 trumpets.  
 Trouflynge, *s.* trifling, 114.  
 Trouthe, 164, 1314, Trowthe,  
 1063, 1807, Trowhe, 3804, *s.* troth,  
 fidelity; *pl.* trowhes, 2325.  
 Trow, 89, Trowe, 250, 887, 1693,  
*v.* believe.  
 Trowhe. *See* Trouthe.  
 Trowmpyng, *s.* trumpeting, 3191.  
 Trufles, *s. pl.* trifles, 89.  
 Trumppede, *v. pret.* trumpeted,  
 407.  
 Trumpppez. *See* Trompes.  
 Trusse, *v.* truss, pack up, 3592,  
 stow; *inf.* trussene, 1976; *pl.*  
 trussez, 731, trvssene, 3655; *p.p.*  
 trussede, 1702.  
 Trvsselle, *s.* packs, bundles, 3655.  
 Tryede, *v. pret.* picked out, se-  
 lected, 1947. Fr. *trier*.

- Trymblyde, *v. pret.* trembled, 270.  
 Tryne, *v. go*, proceed; trine, 1757;  
   3 *s.* trynes, 3592, trynys, 4055,  
   trynnys, 3901; (?) *pret. pl.* tryne,  
   3192; *i. p.* trynande, 4189.  
 Trystily. *See* Tristily.  
 Trystly. *See* Tristly.  
 Tuke. *See* Tak.  
 Tumbellez, *v. pl.* tumble, 1143.  
 Tunge, *s.* tongue, 1250, 1891.  
 Turmenttez, *v.* 2 *s.* tormentest,  
   1954; 3 *s.* turmentez, 3153.  
 Tuskes, 1075, 3234, Tuskez, 791,  
   *s. pl.* teeth.  
 Twa, *adj.* two, 171, 335.  
 Twys, *adv.* twice, 716.  
 Tydandis, 3450, 3899, Tythdands,  
   264, Thyzandez, 1567, *s. pl.* tid-  
   ings.  
 Tyde, *v.* betide, happen, 879; 3  
   *s.* tyddes, 1703; *p.p.* tydd, 3654,  
   tydde, 3451.  
 Tydez. *See* Tide.  
 Tykes, *s. pl.* dogs, 3642, 4258.  
 Tylle. *See* Til.  
 Tymbyrde, *p.p.* built, devised,  
   3742.  
 Tymede, *v. pret.* happened, 3150.  
 Tyne, *v.* lose, 2933; 2 *s.* tynnez,  
   1954; *p.p.* tynt, 272, 770, tynte,  
   1917, 2345, = perished, 4281.  
 Tyrauntly, *adv.* like a tyrant, 271.  
 Tyseday, *s.* Tuesday, 3900.  
 Tyte, Tytt. *See* Tite.  
 Tythdands. *See* Tydandis.  
 Valyaunt, *adj.* valiant, 2093.  
 Vassallage, *s.* service, 2048.  
 Vawewarde, *s.* vanguard, 1981.  
 Velany, *s.* villany, 298, 326.  
 Vencows. *See* Venquyse.  
 Venemus, 299, Venymmos, 4124,  
   *adj.* venomous.  
 Venge, *v.* avenge, 867; *p.p.*  
   vengede, 298, 2264.  
 Venquyse, 1984, Vencows, 4297,  
   *v.* vanquish; *pret.* venqwiste, 2093;  
   *p.p.* venqueste, 3765, venquiste,  
   325, venqwyste, 2065.  
 Ventelde, *v. pret.* spread sail to  
   the wind, 737.  
 Venymmos. *See* Venemus.  
 Vernacle, *s.* a handkerchief said  
   to have the print of Christ's face  
   upon it, 297, 307.  
 Vernage, *s.* a kind of drink, 204,  
   3166.  
 Verrayely, 3765, Verreilly, 308,  
   *adv.* truly.  
 Verrede, *p.p.* spotted, 2573.  
 Vertely, *adv.* readily, 3168.  
 Vertous, Vertouous. *See* Vertu-  
   ouse.  
 Vertue, *s.* virtue, 215, 4297.  
 Vertuose, 204, Vertuus, 297.  
 Vertouous, 3055, Vertous, 5, *adj.*  
   virtuous.  
 Vescounte, Vescownte. *See* Vi-  
   counte.  
 Vesage, *s.* visage, 137, 3055.  
 Vesare, 910, Vesere, 3054, *s.*  
   visor.  
 Vesettez, *v.* 3 *s.* visits, 1726.  
 Vesselle, *s.* 3071.  
 Vestoure, *s.* clothing, 3071.  
 Vetaile, *s.* victuals, 3071.  
 Vetaile, *v.* victual, 353; 3 *s.*  
   vetailles, 3165.  
 Viage, *s.* journey, expedition,  
   2037, 2493.  
 Vice, *s.* fault, defect, 911.  
 Vicounte, 3167, Viscownte, 2047,  
   Vescounte, 2024, Vescownte, 1984,  
   Vyscownte, 2050, *s.*  
 Visez, *v.* 3 *s.* purposes, 3167.  
 Vmbeclappes, *v.* 3 *s.* embraces,  
   1779.

- Vmbegrippys, *v.* 3 *s.* grasps, 3758; *pret.* vmbegrippede, 3944.
- Vmbelappes, *v.* 3 *s.* surrounds, 1819; *pret.* vmbylappyde, 3785.
- Vmbreere, *s.* part of a helmet, the movable part which shelters the face, 943, 2247, 3952.
- Vn-abaiste, *adj.* unabashed, not cast down, 1378.
- Vnblysside, *adj.* unblest, not marked with the sign of the cross, 962.
- Vnblythely, *adv.* sadly, 1434.
- Vnbrydilles, *v. pl.* unbridle, 2509.
- Vnclede, *p.p.* unclothed, 4202.
- Vncouere, *v.* uncover, 2710; *pret.* vncouerde, 739.
- Vncouthe, 1902, 3449, Vncowthe, 3514, *adj.* unknown, strange.
- Vncowpylle, *v.* uncouple, 3999.
- Vndir-takande, *i. p.* enterprising, 2723.
- Vndone, *p.p.* 1722, 3752, 3966.
- Vndrone, 2840, 3077, Vndroune, 462, *s.*
- Vndyrtakynge, *s.* 3187.
- Vne-made, *adj.* unmade, 2507.
- Vnfaire, 303, 779, 1045, Vnfayre, 2171, *adv.* badly, ill, unpleasantly.
- Vnfaye, *adj.* unharmed, sound, 2796.
- Vnfers, *adj.* unfierce, tame, 4122.
- Vnfondyde, *adj.* untried, 2485.
- Vnfraistede, 2861, Vnfraystede, 2736, *adj.* untried.
- Vnfrelly, *adv.* (?) ignobly, 780.
- Vnlordly, *adj.* 1313; *adv.* 1267.
- Vnmete, *adj.* unmeet, 4070.
- Vnquellyde, *adj.* unkilld, 3810.
- Vnrekene, *adj.* (?) unpleasant, 3754.
- Vnresonable, *adj.* 3452.
- Vnryghttwyslye, *adv.* unrighteously, 329.
- Vnsaughte, 1910, Vnsawghte, 1306, 1457, 4140, *adj.*
- Vnsaughtely, 1501, Vnsaughtlyly, 1847, *adv.*
- Vnsekyrly, *adv.* unsafely, 966.
- Vnsemly, *adv.* unseemly, 1044.
- Vnsene, *adj.* unseen, 3114.
- VnslELY, *adv.* unskillfully, clumsily, 979.
- Vnsownde, *adj.* 3290, 3931, 3942.
- Vnsparely, 3160, Vnsparyly, 235, *adv.* unsparingly.
- Vntenderly, 1144, Vntendirly, 2575, *adv.*
- Vntrewe, *adj.* untrue, faithless, 4227.
- Vntrewely, *adv.* dishonestly, 886.
- Vnuenquiste, *adj.* unvanquished, 2049.
- Vnwemmyde, *adj.* unspotted, spotless, 3801.
- Vnwittily, *adv.* unwisely, 3802.
- Vnwynly, *adv.* unjoyfully, unpleasantly, 955, 1302, 1481, 3562.
- Vnwyse, *adj.* 3817.
- Voide, 309, Voyde, 215, 2049, 2094, *v.* pass out, pass away; 3 *s.* voydes, retreats, 3764, voydez, withdraws, 1974; *pl.* voydez, quit, 3168.
- Voute, 137, Vowt, 3054, *s.* mien. Lat. *vultus*.
- Voyde, *adj.* empty, vain, 10, (?) open, 911.
- Voyde, Voydes, Voydez. See Voide.
- Vpbrayde, *v.* 1930.
- Vpceynes, *s. pl.* (?) 3675.
- Vpe = up, 1119, 1877.
- Vrayllede, *p.p.* 2568. Perhaps for "*Vervelled*, or *Varvelled* :— having small rings attached." *Boutell's Heraldry*, p. 88.

- Vse, *v.* practise, 1843.
- Vtas, *s.* 625. "The eighth day, or the space of eight days, after any festival." *Halliwell*.
- Vttere, *adv.* further out, 2438.
- Vtters, *v.* 3 *s.* dismisses, 418.
- Vttirly, *adv.* 3966.
- Vys, 3617, Vyse, 2424, *s.* screw. Crossbows were drawn back by means of a screw.
- Wache, *v.* watch, 547; *inf.* wachene, 613; *p.p.* wachede, 1613.
- Wache, *s.* watch, 2499; *pl.* waches, 1356.
- Wafulle, *adj.* woeful, sorrowful, 950, 955.
- Wagande, *i. p.* wagging, waving, 3660.
- Wage, *s.* pay, 302.
- Wage, 547, Wagge, 333, 1615, *v.* hire, engage; wage, stake, 2967.
- Wagene, *v.* wager, 2445.
- Wakkens, 2370, Wakkenyse, 257, Waknez, 806, *v.* 3 *s.* awakes; wakenysse, wakens, 3562; *pret.* wakenyde, awoke, 3392.
- Walde, *v. pret.* would, 339, 342, wouldest, 876, 1035.
- Wale, *s.* gunwale, 740.
- Wale, *v.* choose, 181.
- Wale, *adj.* choice, 2148.
- Wale, *adj.* eddying, surging, 741, 763.
- Walkande, *i. p.* walking, 762, 3479.
- Walkyne, *s.* welkin, sky, 787.
- Walle, *s.* wave, 493. Ger. *welle*.
- Walopande, *i. p.* galloping, 2147, 2827.
- Walowes, *v. pl.* wallow, roll, 1142; *pret.* walewede, 3838.
- Walsche, *adj.* Welsh, 320, 2044.
- Wandrethe, 323, 2370, Wandredreth, 384, *s.* woe, sorrow.
- Wandsomdly, *adv.* (?) sorrowfully, 4012.
- Wandrys, *v.* 3 *s.* wanders, 798; *i. p.* wanderande, 763.
- Wane, *adj.* wan, dusky, dark, 492. A.S. *wan*.
- Wane. See Wyne.
- Wapene, 1106, Wapyne, 1119, *s.* weapon; *pl.* wapynez, 2137, wapyns, 312.
- War. See Ware.
- Warantizez, *s. pl.* guarantees, 1614.
- Wardane, 3523, Wardayne, 650, 2494, *s.* warden.
- Warde, *s.* ward, 2480, custody, 1613.
- Wardede, *p.p.* guarded, 1614.
- Wardrop, 4203, Wardrope, 901, 2622, *s.* wardrobe.
- Ware = where, 1054.
- Ware, *v. pret. pl.* were, 18, 177; *subj. pret.* 1 *s.* warre, 2647; 2 *s.* ware, 964; 3 *s.* ware, 73, war, 976; *pl.* ware.
- Ware, 19, Warre, 1973, 2045, *adj.* wary, cautious, aware. A.S. *wær*.
- Warely, *adv.* cautiously, 4026.
- Waresche, *v.* be healed, recover, 2186.
- Warlawe, 948, 958, Warlow, 1140, Werlanghe, 3771, *s.* warlock, wizard; also, a wicked man; *pl.* warlaws, 613.
- Warnes, *v.* 3 *s.* refuses, denies, 700.
- Warpe, 150, Werpe, 9, *v.* throw, cast; *pl.* warpes, 2746; warpes awaye = make off; *pret.* warpe, 901.
- Was, *v. pret. pl.* were, 1415.
- Wasterne, *s.* desert place, wilderness, 3233. See *Wasturne* in *Al-literative Poems*, B. 1674. A.S. *wæstern*.
- Wate. See Wiet.

- Wathe, *s.* way, path, 3233. See *Wopez* in *Alliterative Poems*, A. 151. A.S. *wāðu*.  
 Wathe, *s.* harm, hurt, 2668. See *Wope* in *Alliterative Poems*, B. 855.  
 Wathely, *adv.* badly, 2090, 2186.  
 Watte. See *Wiet*.  
 Watyre, *s.* water, 1299, 1358.  
 Watyre-mene, *s. pl.* mariners, 741.  
 Wauerynge, *s.* 2224.  
 Wawarde, *s.* vanguard, 1767. See *Avanttwarde*.  
 Wawhte, (?) 3480.  
 Waxe, *v.* grow, 4322.  
 Wayfare, *s.* course, 1797.  
 Wayfe, *v.* wander, stray, 960.  
 Waykly, *adv.* weakly, 697.  
 Wayte, *v.* watch, look out for, 164, 1807; 3 *s.* wayttes, 2979; *inf.* wayttene, 1973.  
 Weches, *s. pl.* witches, 613.  
 Wedde, *p.p.* wedded, 700.  
 Wedes, 1365, Wedez, 168, 500, Wedys, 2429, *s. pl.* weeds, garments.  
 Wedirwyns. See *Wyderwyne*.  
 Wedowe, *s.* widow, 950, 4285; *pl.* wedewes, 3154.  
 Weende. See *Wende*.  
 Weife. See *Wif*.  
 Weilde. See *Welde*.  
 Weile. See *Wele*.  
 Weisely. See *Wyesyly*.  
 Wekryly, *adv.* watchfully; hence, in a lively manner, briskly, 2104. A.S. *wacorlice*, watchfully.  
 Welde, 3090, Weilde, 650, *v.* rule; possess, 2967.  
 Wele, *s.* riches, wealth, 401, 653, weal, 4100.  
 Wele, 170, 230, 321, Weile, 1788, *adv.* well.  
 Welle, *s.* spring, well, 540, 882.
- Welle, *v.* spring up, bubble up, boil; 3 *s.* wellys, flows, 3819; *pret.* wellyde, 3377; *p.p.* wellyde, boiled, 1736.  
 Welte, *v. pret.* overturned, 3152.  
 Welters, 1140, Welterys, 890, *v.* 3 *s.* rolls; *pl.* welters, 1142; *i. p.* welterande, 2147.  
 Welthes, *s. pl.* 3157.  
 Wende. See *Wene*.  
 Wende, 302, 1299, Weende, 2445, 2493, *v.* go; 2 *s.* weynde, 450; 3 *s.* wendes, 614, wende, 701, weyndes, 2185; *pret.* went, 1301.  
 Wene, *v.* think, suppose; 2 *s.* wenes, 1806, wenez, 963; *pret.* wende, 2121.  
 Wenges, 768, Wengez, 819, 926, *s. pl.* wings.  
 Wepede, *v. pret.* wept, 1920; *i. p.* wepand, 2679, 3561.  
 Werdes, 3889, Weredes, 385, *s. pl.* fates, destinies  
 Werdez. See *Werlde*.  
 Were, *adv.* where, 3692.  
 Were, 22, 33, 257, Werre, 516, 621, *s.* war.  
 Weredes. See *Werdes*.  
 Weres = veers (?), 3054.  
 Weries. See *Wery, v.*  
 Werke, *s.* work; *pl.* werkes, 3, 19.  
 Werkkes, *v.* 3 *s.* aches, 2689; *i. p.* werkand, 1797, 2148.  
 Werlaughe. See *Warlawe*.  
 Werlde, *s.* world, 5, 708; *gen. sg.* werdez, 674.  
 Werpe. See *Warpe*.  
 Werraye, 546, Werreye, 657, *v.* make war, war upon; *pl.* werrayes, 3447; *pret.* werrayede, 2045, 2215; *i. p.* werrayande, 2089, werreyand, 2599.  
 Werre. See *Were*.



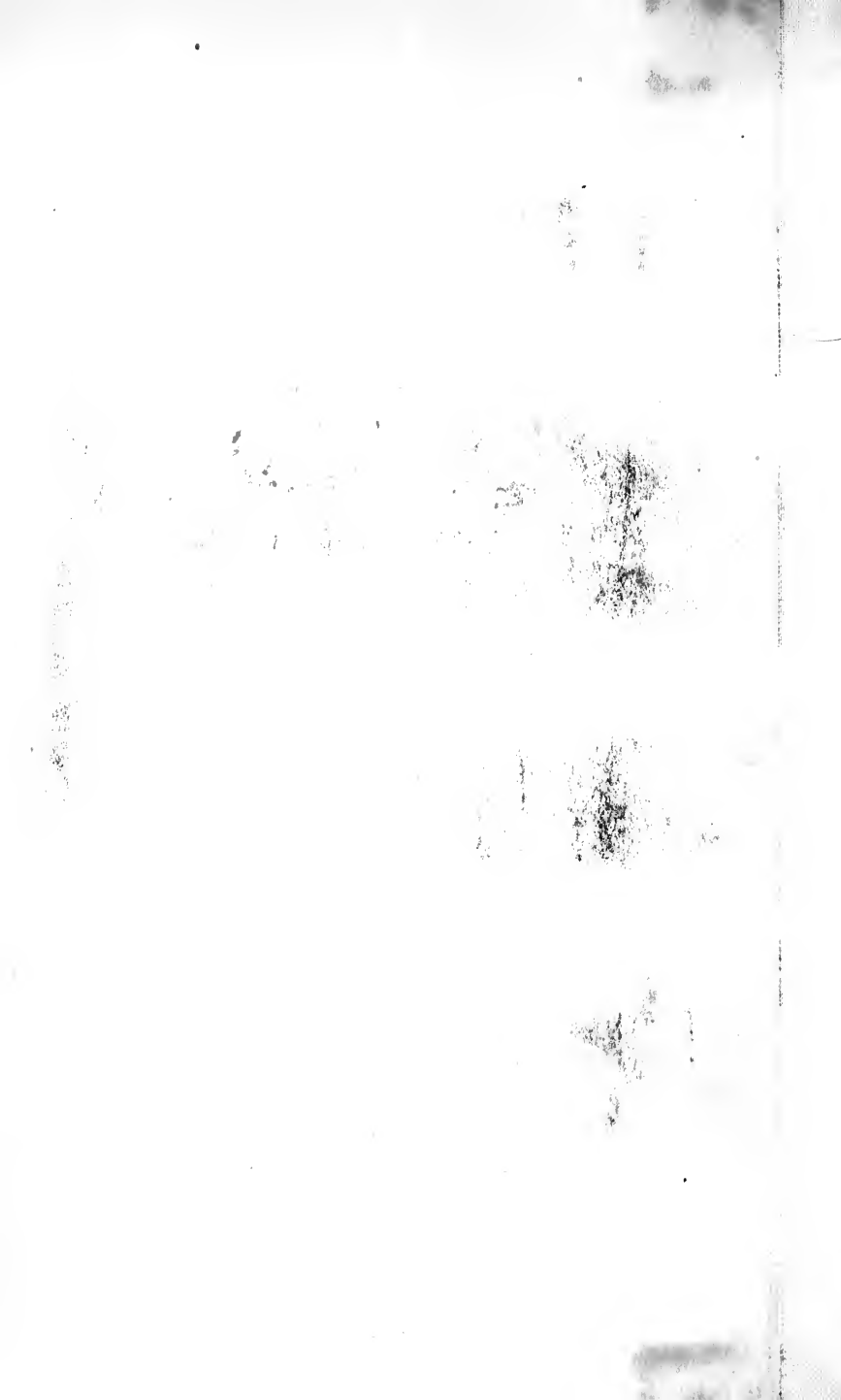
- Werryde, *v. pret.* wore, 3872;  
*p.p.* werede, worn, 2930.
- Wery, 699, 3155, Werye, 4286,  
*v. curse*; 3 *s.* weries, 3888; *p.p.*  
 weryd, 959.
- Wery, *adj.* weary, 492, 3392.
- Weryede, *p.p.* wearied, 796.
- Wesche, *v. pret.* washed, 231;  
*p.p.* weschene, 1301.
- Wetene, Wette. *See* Wiet.
- Wette, *v. pret.* wetted, 2332.
- Weyffe. *See* Wif.
- Weyndes, Weyndez. *See* Wende.
- Weyne = wine, *s.* 161.
- Weysse. *See* Wiese.
- Whame, 1202, Whayme, 770,  
*pron.* whom.
- Whanne. *See* Wyne.
- Whare, *adv.* where, 107, 302.
- Whare = were, 174, 529.
- Whas = was, 76, 634.
- Whayme. *See* Whame.
- Whedire, 3231, Whedyr, 2533,  
 Whedyre, 962, *adv.* whither.
- Whedyre, *conj.* whether, 1717.
- Whene, 2044, Whenne, 63, *adv.*  
 when.
- Whethire, *pron.* which (of two),  
 350.
- Whilde = wild, *adj.* 3232, 3446.
- Whilke, *pron.* which, 4194.
- Whilles, 1335, 1570, Whills,  
 1705, Whils, 1737, Whylez, 1597,  
*conj.* whilst; whilles, 1197, whills,  
 3908, whyles, 2132, 2511, until.
- Whilome, *adv.* sometimes, 1145.
- Whitte = white, *adj.* 3260.
- Whoo = who, 1322.
- Whydyrewyns. *See* Wyderwyne.
- Whyeseste. *See* Wiese.
- Whyne, why—not, 703. Whyne  
 myghte I dye = O that I might  
 die!
- Wieffe. *See* Wif.
- Wielde, *s.* (?) 2689.
- Wiese, 3035, Weysse, 2514,  
 Wyes, 149, Wyese, 1972, Wyesse,  
 2745, *adj.* wise; *superl.* wyseste,  
 290, whyseste, 532.
- Wiet, 420, Wette, 948, Wyt,  
 953, *v.* know, know of; 1 *s.* wate,  
 4203, watte, 533, 2224; 2 *s.* wate,  
 3393, watte, 692, 3549; *pl.* wotte  
 (*properly a sg. form*), 4100; *pret.*  
 wiste, 3231, wist, 4204, wyste,  
 339, 891; *p.p.* wetene, 2966,  
 wytene, 869.
- Wif, 993, Weife, 652, Weyffe,  
 674, Wieffe, 3550, Wyefe, 3575,  
 Wyf, 986, Wyfe, 955, Wyffe, 3082,  
*s.* woman, wife; *pl.* wyfes, 294.
- Wightenez. *See* Wyghtnesse.
- Wile, *v.* get away by stealth, 3908.
- Wilfully, *adv.* 151, 3835.
- Wille, *s.* wildness, madness, 3836.
- Willed, *p.p.* strayed, astray, 3230.
- Wilne, *v.* desire; 2 *s.* willnez,  
 2224, wilnez, 3479, wynlez, 961;  
 3 *s.* wynlez, 384. A.S. *wilnian*.
- Wirche. *See* Wirke.
- Wirchipe, 2187, Wyrchip, 10,  
 Wyrchipe, 150, *s.* honour; *pl.* wyr-  
 chippis, 22.
- Wirchipe, Wyrchipe, 397, *v.*  
 honour; 3 *s.* wyrscappez, 1059;  
*p.p.* wirchipid, 320, wyrchipide,  
 257, 685.
- Wirchipfulle, 1356, 2231, Wyr-  
 chipfulle, 333, 650, *adj.* worship-  
 ful, honourable.
- Wirke, 339, 2187, Wyrke, 149,  
 Wirche, 3008, Wyrche, 130, 1030,  
 1384, *v.* work, perform, do; 2 *s.*  
 wirkkes, 2432; 3 *s.* wyrkez, 1267,  
 wyrkkes, 1468; *pl.* wyrkes, 663;  
*pret.* wroghte, 1796; *pret. pl.*  
 wroghtene, 2137; *p.p.* wroghte,  
 2622, 3495.
- Wist, Wiste. *See* Wiet.
- Wit, *v.* depart, 708. A.S. *witan*.

- With-owtene, 997, With-owttyne, 114, 139, Wythowttyne, 225, 491, *prep.* without; except, 849.
- Withstondene, *v. pl.* withstand, 1747; *p.p.* 1926.
- With-thy, *conj.* provided, on condition, 2587, 2591.
- Witter, *v.* certify, assure, 1239.
- Witterly, 3549, Wytterly, 324, *adv.* plainly, clearly, certainly.
- Wlonke, *adj.* proud, splendid, gay, 3154, 3338. A.S. *wlanc*, *wlonc*.
- Wode, 1266, 1281, Wodde, 1359, 2219, *s.* wood; *pl.* woddez, 1974. A.S. *wudu*.
- Wode, *adj.* mad, raging, 3837. A.S. *wód*.
- Wodely, *adv.* madly, 2827.
- Wodewyse, *adv.* madly, 3817.
- Wokes, *s. pl.* weeks, 354. A.S. *wuce*.
- Wold, 3835, Wolde, 1282, *v. pret.* would. *See* Walde.
- Wolfes, 3446, Woluez, 3232, *s. pl.* wolves.
- Wolf-heuede, *s.* wolf's head, 1093.
- Wombe, *s.* belly, 768. A.S. *wamb*.
- Wonde, 3494, Woonde, 1615, *v.* hesitate; 3 *s.* wondis, 3833. A.S. *wandian*, to fear, be awe-struck.
- Wonde, *s.* wound; *pl.* wondes, 1469, 2148.
- Wonde, *v.* wound; 3 *s.* wondes, 2090; *pret.* wondide, 2231; *p.p.* wondede, 1853, wonddede, 1558, wondyde, 1415, 1434.
- Wondirliche, 3377, Wondyrlyche, 1357, *adv.* wonderfully.
- Wondsome, *s.* misery, 3836.
- Wondyre, *s.* 1166, 1342; *adv.* 2515.
- Wone, *s.* dwelling, abode, 1300, 2472, 4204.
- Wonene. *See* Wyne.
- Wonne, *v.* dwell, 3910; 3 *s.* wonnys, 3551.
- Wonne, Wonnene, Wonnynne. *See* Wyne.
- Wonnynge, *s. pl.* dwellings, habitations, 3157.
- Wonrydez, *s. pl.* sorrow, grief, 707. *See* Wandrethe.
- Woo, *s.* woe, 2684, 3393.
- Woonde. *See* Wonde.
- Worde, *v.* 3393.
- Worme, *s.* reptile, 796, 798.
- Worows, *v.* 3 *s.* worries, kills, 958.
- Worthe, *v.* become, be, 959 992, 1306.
- Wortheliche, 2669, Worthilyche, 695, Worthily, 2191, *adj.* worthy.
- Worthethy = worthy, 1302.
- Worthily, 2231, Worthilye, 2547, *adv.*
- Wotte. *See* Wiet.
- Wraite, *v. pret.* wrote, 3904.
- Wrakfulle, *adj.* vengeful, 3818.
- Wrange, *adj.* wrong, left, 1480.
- Wraythe. *See* Wrythe.
- Wreche, 1273, Wriche, 1064, Wryche, 2778, *s.* wretch; *pl.* wreches, 1446.
- Wrechyde, *adj.* wretched, 5.
- Wreke, *s.* vengeance, 3839.
- Wreke, *v.* avenge, 321, 385; 3 *s.* wrekes, 2213; *inf.* wrekene, 151; *p.p.* wrokene, 2968, wrokyne, 2225.
- Wrethe, *s.* wrath, 151, 321, 385.
- Wrethe, *s.* fold, wreath, 1093.
- Wrethide, *v. pret.* angered, 2191.
- Wriche. *See* Wreche.
- Wristeles. *See* Wrystille.
- Wroghte, Wroghtene. *See* Wirke.
- Wrokene, Wrokyne. *See* Wreke.
- Wrothely, *adv.* fiercely, 1141, 1480, 2214.

- Wrotherayle, *s.* misery, wretchedness, ruin, 3154.
- Wryche. *See* Wreche.
- Wryngene, *v. pl.* wring, 3155; *p.p.* wryngande, 950, 2679.
- Wrystille, *v.* wrestle, 1141; 3 *s.* wristeles, 890.
- Wrythe, *v.* twist, writhe, turn about, 4322; wrythes, 1920, wrythis, 2214; *pl.* wrythyne, 1141; *pret.* wraythe, 1093.
- Wy, 164, 695, Wye, 2669, *s.* man, person; *pl.* wyes, 56, 336, wyese, 1300, 2656, wysse, 685. A.S. *wiga*, warrior; *wig*, war.
- Wyderwyne, *s.* adversary, 2045; *pl.* wedirwyns, 3818, wedirwynes, 3834, whydyrewyns, 2215. A.S. *wiðerwinna*.
- Wye, *v.* weigh (anchor), 740.
- Wyefe, Wyf, Wyfe, Wyffe. *See* Wif.
- Wyes, Wyese. *See* Wy.
- Wyes, Wyese, Wyesse. *See* Wiese.
- Wyesly, 1974, Weisely, 1613, 2599, *adv.* wisely.
- Wyghte, *s.* wight, man, person, 959.
- Wyghte, *adj.* vigorous, strong, 1140; *comp.* wyghttere, 964; *superl.* wyghteste, 290, 336, 532.
- Wyghtly, *adv.* vigorously, 553, 740.
- Wyghtnesse, 258, 516, 796, Wightenez, 1806, *s.* vigour, strength.
- Wykkyde, *adj.* evil, 3232.
- Wylde, *s.* wild animals, 181, 657.
- Wylde fyre, *s.* 797.
- Wylez, *s. pl.* wiles, 1504.
- Wylily, *adv.* in a wily manner, craftily, cunningly, 2746.
- Wylnez. *See* Wilne.
- Wynche, *v.* wink, wince, 2104.
- Wyndowes, *s. pl.* some part of a helmet, probably the *windhole* or *aventail*, 911.
- Wyne, *v.* win, gain, conquer; *wynne*, 516; *wyne* to hir speche, get to speak to her, 3908; *wyne* awaye, get away, 468; *pret.* wane, 33, 115, whanne, 22; *p.p.* wonnene, 1214, wonnyne, 26, 618, wonene, 3001, wonne, 887, 1805.
- Wynly, *adv.* pleasantly, 671, 2185, 3338.
- Wynlyche, *adj.* pleasant, 181.
- Wyrche. *See* Wirke.
- Wyrchip, Wyrchipfulle, &c. *See* Wirchipe, &c.
- Wyrke, Wyrkkes. *See* Wirke.
- Wysse, *v.* direct, guide, teach, 9, 813; 3 *s.* wysse, governs, 671.
- Wysse. *See* Wy.
- Wyste, Wyt, Wytene. *See* Wiet.
- Wythowttyne. *See* With-owtene.
- Wythsytte, *v.* resist, 104.
- Wytt, 741, Wytte, 149, *s.* wit.
- Wytterly. *See* Witterly.
- Yare, 1901. *Read* Thare.
- Yche, Ylke. *See* Ilke.
- Ynewe, Ynowe. *See* Inowe.
- Yryne. *See* Irene.
- Yschewes, *v.* 3 *s.* issues, 610.
- Ythez, *s. pl.* waves, 741, 747, 763.
- ȝa, *adv.* yea, 993, 1033.
- ȝaldsones, *s. pl.* (?) 3809.
- ȝalowere, *adj. comp.* yellower, 3283.
- ȝapely, *adv.* quickly, 1502.
- ȝates, 2471, ȝatez, 2039, *s. pl.* gates.
- ȝe, *pron.* ye, 12, 226.
- ȝee, 3911. Perhaps a mistake for *ȝeres*, sobs. A.S. *giscian*, to sob.

- 3effe, *conj.* if, 2859.  
 3elde, *v.* to yield, 1502; 3 *s.* 3eldes, 3809; *p.p.* 3oldene, 2334, 2482.  
 3eldene, *p.p.* 1870. Probably a mistake for '3oldene.'  
 3eme, *v.* keep, guard; 3 *s.* 3emes, 430, 3emez, 938; *pl.* 3emes, 647.  
 3erde, *s.* yard, 3254, 3280.  
 3ere, *s.* year, 522, 552.  
 3ermys, (?) laments, 3911. A.S. *gyrmian*, to roar.  
 3erne, *v.* yearn, desire, lust after; 2 *s.* 3ernez, 1502; 3 *s.* 3ernes, 1032; *p.p.* 3ernede, 2343.  
 3erne, *adv.* earnestly, eagerly, 1794, 3325, 4189.  
 3if, 340, 3ife, 1502, 3iff, 104, 3iffe, 4153, *conj.* if.  
 3if, 1567, 3ife, 1668, 3iffe, 2323, *v.* give.  
 3is, 2324, 3ise, 2585, *adv.* yes.  
 3it, 1128, 3itt, 1140, 3itte, 2109, *yet.*  
 3ofe, 1938, 2854. *Read* 'thofe,' *though.*  
 3oldene. *See* 3elde.  
 3ole, *s.* Yule, 2628.  
 3olke, *s.* yolk, 3283.  
 3omane, *s.* yeoman, 2628.  
 3on, 2935, 3one, 299, 336, 341, *adj.* yon.  
 3ondire, 3809, 3ondyr, 2720, *adv.* yonder.  
 3our, 95, 153, 222, 3owre, 630, 683, *pron.* your.  
 3ow, 15, 16, 3owe, 1266, *pron.* you.





PR            Early English Text  
1119        Society  
A2           [Publications]  
no.8        Original series

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPH

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

---

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

---

